

# Index

## **A. EZRA MERKIN**

Madoff feeder funds, **20:18**

## **ABBREVIATIONS**

Generally, **1:2**

## **ABSOLUTE LIABILITY**

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

## **ACCESS INTERNATIONAL**

Madoff feeder funds, globalization,  
**20:21**

## **ACCOUNTANTS AND ACCOUNTING PRACTICES**

Generally, **8:405 et seq.**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Administrative regulation, **13:84**

**Aider-Abettors** (this index)

**Audit Committees** (this index)

Backdating of stock options, account-  
ing violations, **18:4, 18:7**

Chinese walls

Generally, **7:343 et seq.**

Evolution of rule, **7:344**

Operation, **7:345**

Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
(FCPA), **19:5, 19:9**

Fraudulent accounting, **13:112**

Injunctions, fraudulent accounting,  
**13:112**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**

Misrepresentation

Generally, **8:406**

Injunctions, fraudulent accounting,  
**13:112**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**

Violations in generally accepted  
accounting principles  
(GAAP). See **Indirect-  
Impersonal Dealing** (this  
index)

## **ACCOUNTANTS AND ACCOUNTING PRACTICES —Cont'd**

Omissions, **8:408**

Participation in misrepresentation by  
others, **8:407**

Parties and privity

Generally, **8:404 et seq.**

See also **Private Actions** (this  
index)

Private actions, materiality and  
GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**

Rule 10b-5 liability

Generally, **8:404 et seq.**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et  
seq.**

Concerted action, **8:294**

Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et  
seq.**

Inducement, **8:295**

Injunction suits, **8:303**

Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**

Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**

Participants generally, **8:292**

Participants in violations generally,  
**8:294**

Pleading

Generally, **8:319 et seq.**

Affirmative conduct, **8:321**

Aiding-abetting, **8:324**

Choice of parties, **8:320**

Conspiracy, **8:325**

No affirmative conduct, **8:322**

Participation, **8:323**

Special elements, **8:326**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:156 et seq.**

SEC rulemaking authority as to, **3:5**

Whistleblower bounty program, orig-  
inal information, **22:10**

## ACCREDITED INVESTORS

Crowdfunding, JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**

## ACQUISITIONS

See also **Mergers** (this index)

Agreements

Disclosure not required, **7:261**

Disclosure required, **7:260**

Cybersecurity, **26:2**

Definitions, **7:250**

Disclosure of inside information re

Generally, **7:248 et seq.**

Agreements

Disclosure not required, **7:261**

Disclosure required, **7:260**

Company, trading by, **7:256**

Definitions, **7:250**

Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**

Leaks, **7:255**

Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**

Plans, **7:211, 7:214**

Preliminary negotiations

Misleading statements, **7:253**

No statement made, **7:252**

Other situations, **7:254**

Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**

Rumors, **7:255**

Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**

Target response to tender offers, **7:258**

When disclosure required

Generally, **7:251 et seq.**

Agreements, disclosure of, **7:260**

Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**

Negotiated, **7:248**

Nonnegotiated

Generally, **7:267**

See also **Tender Offer Fraud** (this index)

Preliminary negotiations

Misleading statements, **7:253**

No statement made, **7:252**

## ACQUISITIONS—Cont'd

Preliminary negotiations—Cont'd

Other situations, **7:254**

Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**

Target response to tender offers, disclosure of, **7:258**

## ACTIONS IN CONCERT

Generally, **8:294**

**Aider-Abettors** (this index)

**Madoff Ponzi scheme** (this index)

**Parties** (this index)

## ACTUAL KNOWLEDGE

Generally, **8:165**

See also **Knowledge** (this index)

Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:166**

## ADMINISTRATIVE

### ENFORCEMENT

Generally, **13:80 et seq.**

Accountings, SEC, **13:84**

Actual knowledge, scienter, **8:175**

Advantages and disadvantages

CFTC, **13:244**

SEC, **13:95**

SROs, **13:301**

**Aider-abettors**

Generally, **8:327 et seq., 8:368 et seq.**

Absence of benefit, **8:366**

Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**

Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**

Definitions, **8:349**

Elements, **8:352, 8:369**

Extent of benefit, **8:367**

Fact patterns, **8:370**

High conscious intent, **8:358**

Injunctions, **8:371**

Janus Capital, preparation for or assistance to another, **8:336 et seq.**

Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**

Nature of benefit, **8:367**

Origins of doctrine, **8:351**

Presence of benefit, **8:365**

Primary violations, **8:355**

## INDEX

### ADMINISTRATIVE

#### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

- Aider-abettors—Cont'd
  - PSLRA, **8:347**
  - Requirements, **8:352**
  - SEA § 20(f), **8:348**
  - Substantial assistance
    - Generally, **8:359 et seq.**
    - Extraordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Inaction, **8:363**
    - Ordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Proximate cause, **8:360**
    - Silence, **8:363**
    - Timing, **8:361**
  - Violations, **8:370**
- Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:79, 13:234, 13:293**
- Ancillary relief
  - CFTC
    - Generally, **13:242**
    - Injunctions and, **13:250**
  - Civil penalties, **13:108 et seq.**
  - Injunctions** (this index)
  - Insider trading charges, **7:419, 7:437**
- SEC
  - Generally, **13:93**
  - Civil penalties, **13:108**
  - Injunctions and, **13:107 et seq.**
  - SROs, **13:299**
  - WorldCom, **13:109**
- Asset freezes, **13:100**
- Audit committee standards,
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:458**
- Bar orders. Collateral bars against individuals, below
- Bounties to informants, **7:445**
- Burden of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**
- Causation, **10:1**
- Cease and desist orders
  - CFTC, **13:239**
  - Likelihood of future violation, **13:239**
  - Permanent, **13:85**
  - SEC, **13:85, 13:86**
  - Temporary, **13:86**

### ADMINISTRATIVE

#### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

- CFTC
  - Generally, **13:235 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:244**
  - Ancillary relief
    - Generally, **13:242**
    - Injunctions and, **13:250**
  - Cease and desist orders, **13:239**
  - Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
  - Cryptocurrencies, **25:8**
  - Duration of orders, **13:243**
  - Evidence, **13:236**
  - Proof standards, **13:236**
  - Scienter, **13:237**
  - Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**
- Character of proceedings
  - CFTC, **13:235**
  - SEC, **13:80**
  - SROs, **13:295**
- Civil penalties
  - See also **Civil Penalties** (this index)
  - Ancillary relief, **13:108**
  - CFTC, **13:238**
  - Injunctions** (this index)
  - Insider trading charges, **7:420**
  - SEC, **13:83**
- Collateral bars against individuals
  - Generally, **13:87**
  - Corporate office orders, **13:88**
  - Injunctions including, **13:117**
- Collateral effects of orders
  - CFTC, **13:241**
  - SEC, **13:92**
  - SROs, **13:298**
- Compliance orders, SEC, **13:82**
- Conspiracies, **8:312**
- Constructive knowledge and scienter, **8:186**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **8:373 et seq.**
  - See also **Control Person Liability** (this index)
  - Insider trading charges
    - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**

## ADMINISTRATIVE

### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

- Control person liability—Cont'd
  - Insider trading charges—Cont'd
    - All control persons, **7:453**
    - Amount of liability, **7:459**
    - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
    - B test, **7:456**
    - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
    - Failure to act, **7:455**
    - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
    - Knowledge
      - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
      - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
    - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
    - Reckless disregard
      - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
      - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
    - Requirements, **7:452**
    - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
    - Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
    - A test, **7:453**
  - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:329**
  - Criminal enforcement
    - See also **Criminal Enforcement** (this index)
    - Compared, **13:95**
  - Disgorgement, **13:84**
  - Disposition of penalties, **7:445**
  - Double jeopardy limitations, insider trading charges, **7:443**
  - Duration of orders
    - CFTC, **13:243**
    - SEC, **13:94, 13:300**
  - Equitable relief generally, **13:118**
  - Evidence
    - CFTC, **13:236**
    - SEC, **13:91**
    - SROs, **13:297**
  - Implied liability
    - See also **Implied Liability** (this index)

## ADMINISTRATIVE

### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

- Implied liability—Cont'd
  - Contraction era, **3:81, 3:82**
  - Expansion era, **3:61, 3:62**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP violations, **7:65, 7:71**
- Informal enforcement actions
  - CFTC, **13:233**
  - SEC, **13:78**
  - SROs, **13:292**
- Informants, awards to, **7:445**
- Injunctions** (this index)
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
  - See also **Investigations** (this index)
- Judge or jury
  - Insider trading charges, **7:421, 7:446**
  - Penalty actions, **7:446**
- Jurisdiction
  - Generally, **11:2 et seq.**
  - See also **Jurisdiction** (this index)
- Limitation of SEC actions, **13:89, 13:90, 13:184 to 13:189**
- MD&A predictions and projections, disclosure requirements, **7:13**
- Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:578**
- Monetary penalties
  - CFTC, **13:238**
  - SEC, **13:83, 13:108**
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- National Securities Markets Improvement Act (NSMIA), **3:199**
- Orders
  - Collateral effects of
    - CFTC, **13:241**
    - SEC, **13:92**
    - SROs, **13:298**
  - Compliance orders, **13:82**
- Penalty actions
  - Generally, **7:438**
  - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
  - Amount of penalty
    - Control persons, **7:459**
    - Court-imposed, **7:439**

## INDEX

### ADMINISTRATIVE

#### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

Penalty actions—Cont'd

Bounties, **7:445**

Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**

Court imposed penalties, **7:439**

Disposition of penalties, **7:445**

Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**

Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**

Informants, awards to, **7:445**

Judge or jury, **7:446**

Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**

Persons liable

Generally, **7:447**

Aider-abettors, **7:449**

Control person liability, above

Employers, **7:450**

Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**

Tipsters, **7:448**

Traders, **7:448**

Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**

Settled penalties, **7:444**

Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**

Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**

Procedural fairness, SROs, **13:296**

Proof standards

CFTC, **13:236**

SEC, **13:91**

SROs, **13:297**

Quantum of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**

Quasi-judicial jurisdiction of SEC, **10:1**

Reliance, **10:1**

Respondeat superior liability, insider trading charges, **7:450**

Rule 10b-5, implied liability, **3:62**, **3:82**

Sanctions

SEC, **13:81**, **13:82**

Statutory, **7:417**

### ADMINISTRATIVE

#### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, audit committee standards, **8:458**

Scienter

Generally, **10:1**

Actual knowledge, **8:175**

CFTC, **13:237**

Constructive knowledge, **8:186**

Diligence, lack of, **8:235**

Negligence, **8:235**

Touting, **8:98**

Unreasonable conduct, **8:235**

SEA § 16(b), **7:159**

SEC

Advantages and disadvantages, **13:95**

Ancillary relief

Generally, **13:93**

Injunctions and, **13:107 et seq.**

WorldCom, **13:109**

Asset freezes, **13:100**

Backdating stock options, investigations, **18:6**, **18:8**

Cease and desist orders

Permanent, **13:85**

Temporary, **13:86**

Character of proceedings, **13:80**

Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**

Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:329**

Discovery rule rejected for limitation of actions, **13:90**

Duration of orders, **13:94**

Enforcement Manual 2010 revisions, **20:15**

Equitable relief generally, **13:118**

Evidence, **13:91**

Limitation of actions, **13:89**, **13:90**

Proof standards, **13:91**

Role in, **10:1**

Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), **3:216**

SROs

Generally, **13:294 et seq.**

Advantages and disadvantages, **13:301**

Ancillary relief, **13:299**

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd**

**SROs—Cont'd**

- Character of proceedings, **13:295**
- Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:329**
- Duration of orders, **13:300**
- Evidence, **13:297**
- Procedural fairness, **13:296**
- Proof standards, **13:297**
- Standards, **13:297**
- Summary proceedings, **13:302**
- State laws, **13:318, 13:328**
- State regulators, **3:210**
- Summary proceedings, SROs, **13:302**
- Tender offer challenges, **6:138**
- Tipping, **7:159**
- Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT ACTION**

- Whistleblower bounty program, successful action, **22:14**

**ADMISSION OF WRONGDOING**

- Compromise and settlement, **13:166 et seq.**

**ADVERTISING**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**ADVISERS**

- See also **Analysts** (this index)
- Insider trading liability, **7:652**

**AFFINITY FRAUD**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

**AFFIRMATIVE DEFENSES**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)

**AGGREGATE ACCOUNTING**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**AGREEMENT PLANNING**

- See **Transaction Planning** (this index)

**AIDER-ABETTORS**

- Generally, **8:327 et seq.**
- Absence of benefit, **8:366**

**AIDER-ABETTORS—Cont'd**

- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Administrative enforcement
  - Generally, **8:368 et seq.**
  - Elements, **8:369**
  - Fact patterns, **8:370**
  - Injunctions, **8:371**
  - Violations, **8:370**
- Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**
- Conspirators compared, **8:292**
- Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**
- Criminal enforcement, **8:372**
- Definitions, **8:349**
- Elements, **8:352**
- Extent of benefit, **8:367**
- Extraordinary actions, **8:362**
- High conscious intent, **8:358**
- Inaction, **8:363**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:98**
- Injunctions, **8:371**
- Insiders, **8:339, 8:340**
- Insider trading, **7:449**
- Janus Capital
  - Federal securities laws, applicability, **8:336 to 8:345**
  - Impact of Janus decision, **8:337**
  - Insiders, liability for statements of their corporations, **8:339, 8:340**
  - Legal entity, liability for statements of another, **8:338**
  - Observations and tentative conclusions, **8:342 et seq.**
  - Preparation for or assistance to another, **8:336 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), **8:345**
  - SEC enforcement actions, applicability, **8:343**
  - Shield function, **8:341**
  - State law, applicability to, **8:344**
- Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**
- Legal entity, liability for statements of another, Janus Capital, **8:338**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, breach of fiduciary duty, **20:5**
- Nature of benefit, **8:367**
- Ordinary actions, **8:362**

## INDEX

### **AIDER-ABETTORS—Cont'd**

- Origins of doctrine, **8:351**
- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:327 et seq.**
  - See also **Parties** (this index)
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:324**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Preparation for or assistance to another, Janus Capital, **8:336 et seq.**
- Presence of benefit, **8:365**
- Primary violations, **8:355**
- Privity
  - Implied liability, **8:279**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:269**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:279**
  - Sales fraud, **8:269**
- Proximate cause, **8:360**
- PSLRA, **8:347**
- Requirements, **8:352**
- Rule 10b-5 liability
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Conspirators compared, **8:292**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Janus Capital, Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), **8:345**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
  - Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**
- SEA § 20(f), **8:348**
- Silence, **8:363**
- State law, applicability of Janus Capital, **8:344**
- Substantial assistance
  - Generally, **8:359 et seq.**

### **AIDER-ABETTORS—Cont'd**

- Substantial assistance—Cont'd
  - Extraordinary actions, **8:362**
  - Inaction, **8:363**
  - Ordinary actions, **8:362**
  - Proximate cause, **8:360**
  - Silence, **8:363**
  - Timing, **8:361**

### **ALLEGATIONS**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)

### **ALTERNATE ACCOUNT STATEMENTS**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### **ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION**

- See **Arbitration** (this index)

### **AMERICAN LAW INSTITUTE (ALI)**

- Federal Securities Code, **1:23**
- Integration of fraud rules, proposals for, **3:52**
- IPA, current status, **3:154**

### **AMERICAN STOCK EXCHANGE (ASE)**

- Broker-dealer supervision requirements, **14:174**
- Liabilities under SRO rules
  - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
- See also **Self Regulatory Organizations** (this index)

### **AMICUS CURIAE**

- Agency participation in private litigation
  - CFTC, **13:234**
  - SEC, **13:79**
  - SROs, **13:293**
- Wells Submissions** (this index)
- Whistleblowers, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:21**

### **ANALOG DEVICES INC.**

- Backdating of stock options, **18:1, 18:10**



**ANALYSTS**

Full disclosure regulations, **7:528**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:168**

**ANCILLARY RELIEF**

Generally, **13:93**  
Administrative enforcement  
CFTC, **13:242**  
SEC, **13:93**  
SROs, **13:299**  
CFTC injunctions and, **13:250**  
Criminal enforcement  
CFTC references, **13:260**  
SEC references, **13:130**  
**Disgorgement** (this index)  
**Injunctions** (this index)  
Insider trading actions, **7:490**  
**Rescission** (this index)  
**Restitution** (this index)  
SEC injunctions  
Generally, **13:107 et seq.**  
For detailed treatment  
See **Injunctions** (this index)

**ANNUAL REPORTS**

Generally, **6:242**  
Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:211**

**ANNUITIES**

Flexible fund annuities as securities,  
**5:25**  
Variable annuities as securities, **5:23**

**APPEARANCE**

**Arbitration** (this index)

**APPLE INC.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:8**

**APPRAISALS AND APPRAISAL RIGHTS**

Generally, **6:192, 6:193**  
Exclusive appraisal rights, **6:192**

**APPROVAL**

SEC investigations, use of wiretap,  
**13:151**

**ARBITRATION**

Generally, **15:1 to 15:77**  
AAA arbitration, **15:8**

**ARBITRATION—Cont'd**

Agreements. Pre-dispute agreements,  
below  
Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**  
Appearance  
Hearings, **15:25**  
Sanctions for noncompliance with  
arbitral orders, **15:63**  
Aspects, **15:60**  
Awards  
Generally, **15:50 et seq.**  
Challenging awards, below  
Equities, awards based on, **15:75**  
Madoff feeder funds, awards  
against, **20:18**  
Payment, **15:64**  
Power of arbitrator to grant, **15:57**  
Refusal to vacate, **15:59**  
Sanctions for noncompliance.  
Sanctions, below  
Briefs, **15:47**  
Broker as hostile witness  
Claimants' case, **15:30**  
Respondents' case, **15:40**  
Broker-dealer disputes  
Clearing brokers, **15:72**  
Correspondent introducing  
brokers, **15:72**  
Equities, awards based on, **15:75**  
Failure to supervise, **15:73**  
Introducing brokers, **15:72**  
Litigation and arbitration  
compared, **15:6**  
Predispute agreements, **15:5**  
Punitive damages, **14:111, 15:74**  
Securities law, arbitral extensions,  
**15:71 et seq.**  
Splitting the baby, **15:75**  
SRO arbitration, **15:8**  
**Transaction Planning** (this index)  
Unsuitability, **15:73**  
Witnesses, brokers as, **15:30,**  
**15:40**  
Challenging awards  
Generally, **15:51 et seq.**  
Authority, award exceeding, **15:57**  
Common law grounds, **15:59**  
Correction, **15:58**



## INDEX

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

#### Challenging awards—Cont'd

Corruption, **15:54**  
Evident partiality, **15:55**  
Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(1), **15:54**  
Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(2), **15:55**  
Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(3), **15:56**  
Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(4), **15:57**  
Federal Arbitration Act § 11, **15:58**  
Fraud, **15:54**  
Grounds, **15:53 et seq.**  
Jurisdictional, **15:57**  
Misconduct, **15:56**  
Modification, **15:58**  
Partiality, **15:55**  
Power of arbitrator, award exceeding, **15:57**  
Procedure, **15:52**  
Refusal to vacate, **15:59**  
Undue influence, **15:54**

#### Claimants' case

Attorneys' fees, **15:38**  
Briefs, **15:47**  
Broker as hostile witness, **15:30**  
Closing, **15:46**  
Costs, **15:38**  
Cross-examination, defending against, **15:33**  
Damages, **15:35**  
Direct examination of witnesses, **15:31, 15:43**  
Evidence rules, **15:32**  
Expert witnesses  
Generally, **15:34**  
Cross examination, **15:42**  
Interest, **15:38**  
Mitigation of damages, **15:35**  
Presentation, **15:29**  
Punitive damages, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**  
Summation, **15:46**

#### Claims

Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**  
Considerations before filing, **15:12**

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

#### Claims—Cont'd

Filing, **15:13**  
Preparing, **15:13**  
Responding to, **15:14**

#### Class actions, **15:67**

#### Clearing brokers, **15:72**

#### Considerations before filing claims, **15:12**

#### Consolidation, **15:18**

#### Correction, challenging awards, **15:58**

#### Correspondent introducing brokers, **15:72**

#### Corruption challenges to awards, **15:54**

#### Court cases, **15:3, 15:71**

#### Cross-examination

##### Claimants' case, **15:33**

##### Respondents' case, **15:41, 15:44**

#### Customer, defined, **15:10**

#### Damages

##### Attorneys' fees, **15:38**

##### Costs, **15:38**

##### Interest, **15:38**

##### Mitigation of damages, **15:35**

##### Punitive damages, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**

#### Definition of customer, **15:10**

#### Development of securities industry arbitration, **15:4**

#### Disciplinary authority

##### References to by arbitration, **15:62**

##### Relationship to arbitration, **15:61**

#### Disciplinary sanctions

##### Arbitral awards, failure to pay, **15:64**

##### Noncompliance with arbitral orders for production of documents or appearance, **15:63**

#### Discovery, **15:15, 15:63**

#### Equities, awards based on, **15:75**

#### Evidence, prejudicial material offered in, **15:19**

#### Evidence rules, **15:32**

#### Exchange arbitration systems, **15:8**

#### Expert witnesses

##### Claimants' experts, **15:34**

**ARBITRATION—Cont’d**

- Expert witnesses—Cont’d
  - Cross examination, **15:42**
  - Respondents’ experts, **15:45**
- Expungement, **15:70**
- Failure to supervise, **15:73**
- Filing claims
  - Generally, **15:13**
  - Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**
- Fraud challenges to awards, **15:54**
- Hearings
  - Generally, **15:26 et seq.**
  - Adjournments, **15:23**
  - Appearances, **15:25**
  - Awards, **15:50 et seq.**
  - Briefs, **15:47**
  - Broker as hostile witness, **15:30, 15:40**
  - Claimants’ case, **15:29**
  - Closing, **15:46**
  - Cross-examination
    - Claimants’ case, **15:33**
    - Respondents’ case, **15:41, 15:44**
  - Direct examination
    - Claimants’ case, **15:31**
    - Respondent’s case, **15:43**
  - Evidence rules, **15:32**
  - Expert witnesses
    - Claimants’ experts, **15:34**
    - Cross examination, **15:42**
    - Respondents’ experts, **15:45**
  - Failure to appear, **15:25**
  - Opening statements, **15:28**
  - Posthearing procedures, **15:48 et seq.**
  - Prehearing procedures, **15:11 et seq.**
  - Records of proceedings, **15:24**
  - Reopening, **15:49**
  - Respondents’ case, **15:39 et seq.**
  - Sequestration of witnesses, **15:27**
  - Situs of, **15:20**
  - Summation, **15:46**
  - Implied liabilities under SRO rules, **14:72**
  - Introducing brokers, **15:72**
  - Joinder, **15:18**
  - Jurisdictional challenges, **15:57**

**ARBITRATION—Cont’d**

- Limitation of actions, **15:9**
- Litigation compared, **15:6**
- Madoff feeder funds, awards against, **20:18**
- Margin rules, applicability in, **14:61**
- McMahon case, **15:3, 15:71**
- Mediation, **15:69**
- Mitigation of damages, **15:35**
- Modification, challenging awards, **15:58**
- Orders, noncompliance sanctions
  - Appearance, **15:63**
  - Production of documents, **15:63**
- Partiality challenges to awards, **15:55**
- Payment, disciplinary sanctions for failure to pay arbitral awards, **15:64**
- Pleadings, **15:21**
- Posthearing procedures
  - Generally, **15:48 et seq.**
  - Reopening the hearing, **15:49**
- Pre-dispute agreements
  - Generally, **15:5**
  - Clearing brokers, **15:72**
  - Development, **15:4**
  - Transaction planning, **12:11**
  - Validity, **15:3, 15:71**
- Prejudicial material offered in evidence, **15:19**
- Preparing claims, **15:13**
- Procedures
  - Generally, **15:11 et seq.**
  - AAA arbitration, **15:8**
  - Adjournments, **15:23**
  - Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**
  - Awards, **15:50 et seq.**
  - Briefs, **15:47**
  - Consolidation, **15:18**
  - Cross-examination
    - Claimants’ case, **15:33**
    - Respondents’ case, **15:41, 15:44**
  - Discovery, **15:15, 15:63**
  - Evidence rules, **15:32**
  - Exchange arbitration systems, **15:8**
  - Filing claims, **15:13**
  - Hearings, above
  - Joinder, **15:18**

## INDEX

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

- Procedures—Cont'd
  - Jurisdictional challenges, **15:57**
  - Pleadings, **15:21**
  - Posthearing process, **15:48 et seq.**
  - Prehearing, **15:11 et seq.**
  - Prejudicial material offered in evidence, **15:19**
  - Preparing claims, **15:13**
  - Reopening the hearing, **15:49**
  - Respondents' case, **15:39 et seq.**
  - Responding to claims, **15:14**
  - Selection of arbitrators, **15:16**
  - Sequestration of witnesses, **15:27**
  - Severance, **15:18**
  - Situs of hearing, **15:20**
  - SRO arbitration, **15:8**
- Production of documents, disciplinary sanctions for noncompliance with arbitral orders, **15:63**
- Punitive damages
  - Generally, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**
  - Broker-dealer liability, **14:111**
- Records of proceedings, **15:24**
- Respondents' case
  - Generally, **15:39 et seq.**
  - Briefs, **15:47**
  - Broker as hostile witness, **15:40**
  - Closing, **15:46**
  - Cross-examination, defending against, **15:41, 15:44**
  - Expert witnesses, **15:45**
  - Summation, **15:46**
- Responding to claims, **15:14**
- RICO claims, **15:66**
- Rodriguez case, **15:3, 15:71**
- Sanctions
  - Appearance, **15:63**
  - Payment, **15:64**
  - Production of documents, **15:63**
- Securities law, arbitral extensions, **15:71 et seq.**
- Selection of arbitrators, **15:16**
- Sequestration of witnesses, **15:27**
- Severance, **15:18**
- Six-year eligibility rules, **15:9**
- SRO arbitration, **15:8**
- SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:72**

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

- Successful and unsuccessful cases, **15:7**
- Suitability rules, **14:205**
- Transaction planning, **12:11**
- Undue influence challenges to awards, **15:54**
- Unsuitability, **15:73**
- Validity of arbitration provisions, **15:3, 15:71**
- Witnesses
  - Broker as hostile witness, **15:30, 15:40**
  - Cross-examination
    - Claimants' case, **15:33**
    - Respondents' case, **15:41, 15:44**
  - Direct examination
    - Claimants' case, **15:31**
    - Respondent's case, **15:43**
  - Evidence rules, **15:32**
  - Expert witnesses
    - Claimants' experts, **15:34**
    - Cross examination, **15:42**
    - Respondents' experts, **15:45**
  - Sequestration, **15:27**

### ARGUMENTS

- Rajaratnam criminal case. **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)

### ARREST

- Criminal inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam, **21:4**

### ASE

- See **American Stock Exchange** (this index)

### ASSET MANAGEMENT UNIT

- SEC investigations, **20:12**

### ASSETS

- Disclosure requirements
  - Generally, **6:261 et seq., 6:267**
- Assets
  - Reasons, **6:273**
  - Value of assets, below
- Existence of assets, **6:262**

**ASSETS—Cont'd**

- Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
  - Misrepresentations of value of assets
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
- Value of assets
  - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - Firm offers, **6:265**
  - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Freezes, SEC, **13:100**
- Insider use of information about, **7:206**
- Sales. See **Mergers** (this index)

**ATTORNEY-CLIENT PRIVILEGE**

- Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:8**

**ATTORNEY GENERAL ERIC SCHNEIDERMAN OF NEW YORK**

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336**

**ATTORNEYS**

- Generally, **8:409 et seq.**
- Actions against attorneys by SEC.
  - SEC actions against, below
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Aider-Abettors** (this index)
- Backdating of stock options, **18:7, 18:11**
- Chinese walls
  - Generally, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Evolution of rule, **7:344**

**ATTORNEYS—Cont'd**

- Chinese walls—Cont'd
  - Operation, **7:345**
- Conflicts of interest
  - CFTC investigations, **13:207**
  - SEC investigations, **13:15**
  - SRO investigations, **13:277**
- Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
- Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
  - See also **Investigations** (this index)
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:7, 18:11**
  - CFTC cases, **13:219**
  - SEC cases, **13:27**
  - SRO cases, **13:281**
- Issuers, advisers to as insiders, **7:569**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, compliance counsel, **20:5**
- Misrepresentations
  - Generally, **8:411**
  - Bond counsel issuing improper legal opinion, SEC actions against, **8:442**
  - Participation, **8:410**
- Multiple clients
  - CFTC investigations, **13:207**
  - SEC investigations, **13:15**
  - SRO investigations, **13:277**
- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:409 et seq.**
  - See also **Parties** (this index)
- “PIPE” schemes, SEC actions against, **8:443**
- Privileges
  - Generally, **13:31 et seq.**
  - Attorney-client
    - Generally, **13:36**
    - Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**
  - CFTC investigations, **13:223**
  - Claiming, strategic considerations, **13:61 to 13:65**
  - SEC investigations, **13:31 et seq.**
  - Self incrimination
    - Generally, **13:32**
    - Waiver, **13:33**

## INDEX

### ATTORNEYS—Cont'd

#### Privileges—Cont'd

SRO investigations, **13:285**

Waiver, **13:33, 13:37 et seq.**

Work product, **13:55, 13:59**

Professional conduct rules, **8:425**

“Pump-and-dump” schemes, SEC actions against, **8:443**

Regulation, **8:424 et seq.**

#### Right to counsel

CFTC investigations, **13:206**

SEC investigations, **13:14**

SRO investigations, **13:276**

#### Rule 10b-5 liability

Generally, **8:409 et seq.**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**

Concerted action, **8:294**

Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**

Inducement, **8:295**

Injunction suits, **8:303**

Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**

Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**

#### Misrepresentations

Generally, **8:411**

Participation, **8:410**

Observations, **8:412**

Participants generally, **8:292**

Participants in violations generally, **8:294**

#### Pleading

Generally, **8:319 et seq.**

Affirmative conduct, **8:321**

Aiding-abetting, **8:324**

Choice of parties, **8:320**

Conspiracy, **8:325**

No affirmative conduct, **8:322**

Participation, **8:323**

Special elements, **8:326**

#### Sarbanes-Oxley Act

Generally, **3:156 et seq., 3:165, 8:424 et seq.**

Follow-up reporting obligations, **8:427**

Reporting obligations, **8:426**

### ATTORNEYS—Cont'd

#### Sarbanes-Oxley Act—Cont'd

SEC, reporting to, **8:432 et seq.**

SEC actions against attorneys, below

#### SEC

Actions against attorneys. SEC actions against, below

Reporting obligations, **8:432 et seq.**

Rulemaking authority as to, **3:5**

#### SEC actions against

Generally, **8:436 et seq.**

Auditors, furnishing false information to, **8:440**

Backdating of stock options, **18:11**

Financial or accounting fraud, **8:440**

Form 8-K, **8:439**

Form 10, **8:439**

Form 10-K, **8:439**

Form 10-Q, **8:439**

Form 13D, **8:439**

Form ADV, **8:439**

Form BD, **8:439**

Forms 12b-25, **8:445**

Manipulating stock option exercise dates, **8:444**

Offering circulars, **8:439**

Participating in preparation and filing of false and misleading forms, **8:439**

“PIPE” schemes, involvement, **8:443**

Prospectuses, **8:439**

Proxy statements, **8:439**

“Pump-and-dump” schemes, involvement, **8:443**

Reflections, **8:448**

Trading on inside information, **8:447**

Unethical and obstructive professional conduct, **8:446**

Unregistered distributions of securities, activities in connection with, **8:441**

Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**

**ATTORNEYS—Cont'd**

Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). SEC, above  
 Securities professionals as insiders, **7:572**  
 SRO investigations, right to counsel in, **13:276**  
**Wells Submissions** (this index)

**ATTORNEYS' FEES**

Generally, **9:18**  
 Arbitrations, **15:38**  
 Broker-dealer liability, **14:53**  
 Contribution, **9:75**  
 Enforcement investigations, **13:39, 13:45, 13:58**  
 Transaction planning, allocations, **9:75**

**AUCTION RATE SECURITY (ARS) LITIGATION**

Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, generally, **13:322 et seq.**  
 Criminal aspects, **13:330**  
 Government regulatory suits, **13:329**  
 Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**  
 Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**  
 Securities and market, **13:325**  
 Seller management liability, **13:330**  
 State law, private litigation, **13:328**  
 Violations, **13:326**

**AUDIT COMMITTEES**

Generally, **8:449 et seq.**  
 See also **Directors, Corporate** (this index)  
 Backdating of stock options, resignations and firings, **18:7**  
 Financial experts, Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities, **3:166**

**AUDITORS**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP violations, **7:70**  
 Injunctions, ancillary relief, **13:113**  
 Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act oversight standards, **8:453**

**AUDIT RECORDS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act actions based on, **3:171**

**AVERAGE ANNUAL RETURNS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**AWARDS**

**Arbitration** (this index)

**BACKDATING OF STOCK OPTIONS**

Generally, **18:1 et seq.**  
 Accounting rules, violations, **18:4**  
 Acquisitions, mergers, and underwritings, effect on, **18:12**  
 Analog Devices Inc., **18:1, 18:10**  
 Annual, quarterly, or periodic reports, false or misleading statements, **18:3**  
 Apple Inc., **18:8**  
 Bed Bath and Beyond, response to inquiry, **18:8**  
 Brooks Automation Inc., **18:1**  
 Bullet-dodging, **18:1**  
 Comverse Technology Inc., **18:1, 18:11**  
 Derivative actions by stockholders, **18:10**  
 DOJ investigations, **18:6, 18:8**  
 Employee recruitment incentive, **18:10**  
 End of options backdating, **18:15**  
 Exchange delisting, **11:9**  
 Expired option exercise, **18:1**  
 False and misleading financial statements, **18:3**  
 Falsifying corporate books and records, **18:3**  
 Federal securities laws, violations, **18:3**  
 Fictitious or untimely names, **18:1**  
 Forward-dating, **18:1**  
 Hedge funds, delayed filings of financial statements, **18:9**  
 In-house general counsel, criminal prosecution, **18:11**  
 Internal accounting controls, failure to implement system, **18:3**

## INDEX

### BACKDATING OF STOCK

#### OPTIONS—Cont'd

“In-the-money” options

Accounting rules, violations, **18:4**

Individual circumstances caveat,  
**18:2**

“Reloading,” **18:1**

Investigations and actions by govern-  
ment, **18:6, 18:8**

IRC violations, **18:5**

Legal backdating, **18:2**

Manipulating option exercise dates,  
**18:14**

McAfee, Inc., **18:11**

Mercury Interactive Corp., **18:1,**  
**18:10**

Micrel recruitment incentive, **18:10**

Monster Worldwide Inc., **18:7, 18:11**

Private litigation, **18:10**

Proxy solicitation involving false and  
misleading statements, **18:3**

Recklessness or intent to defraud,  
**18:3**

“Reloading” with “in-the-money”  
options, **18:1**

Resignations and firings, **18:7**

Restatements and delayed filings of  
financial statements, **18:9**

Reyes conviction, **18:16**

Secret slush fund of backdated  
options, **18:2, 18:3**

Sloppy, careless, or mistaken  
backdating, **18:2**

Springloading, **18:1**

Springloading and bullet dodging,  
**18:13**

Sycamore Networks Inc. employee  
hire date practices, **18:10**

Tax law implications and violations,  
**18:5**

UnitedHealth Group Inc., **18:1, 18:5,**  
**18:8, 18:10**

Violations of federal securities laws,  
**18:3**

Vitesse Semiconductor Corp., **18:1**

Wider ramifications, **18:6**

### “BACK-OFFICE” EMPLOYEES

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**

### BAD FAITH

Generally, **8:210 et seq.**

See also **Good Faith** (this index)

Burden of proof, **8:219**

Effect of good or bad faith generally,  
**8:216 et seq.**

Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**

Insufficiency, **8:215**

Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**

Proof, **8:220**

Scienter

Generally, **8:210 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:219**

Effect of good or bad faith gener-  
ally, **8:216 et seq.**

Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**

Insufficiency, **8:215**

Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**

Proof, **8:220**

Sufficiency, **8:214**

Sufficiency, **8:214**

Versions of scienter, relations among,  
**8:211**

### BAIL IN SECURITIES PROSECUTIONS

**Insiders and Insider Trading** (this  
index)

### BALANCE SHEETS

Off-balance sheet transactions,  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:413**

### BANCO SANTANDER

Madoff feeder funds, globalization,  
**20:21**

### BANKERS

**Investment Bankers** (this index)

### BANKS

Tender offer regulation, **6:29**

### BASIC CASE

Private actions, loss causation in  
Supreme Court decision, **8:565**

### BED BATH AND BEYOND

Backdating of stock options, response  
to inquiry, **18:8**



**BELIEF**

- Defendant's belief
  - Rule 10b-5 fraud, **8:240**
- Scienter
  - Burden of proof, **8:74, 8:77**
  - Expert parts of registration statements, **8:76 et seq.**
  - Proof, **8:75, 8:78**
- Defendant's knowledge and belief
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:141**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
- Proxy fraud
  - Generally, **8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Scienter, **8:141**
- Tender offer fraud
  - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:134**
  - Proof, **8:135**
- Intent** (this index)
- Knowledge** (this index)
- Proxy fraud, defendant's knowledge and belief
  - Generally, **8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Scienter
  - See also **Scienter** (this index)
  - Defendant's belief
    - Burden of proof, **8:74, 8:77**
    - Expert parts of registration statements, **8:76 et seq.**
    - Proof, **8:75, 8:78**
- Tender offer fraud, defendant's knowledge and belief
  - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:134**
  - Proof, **8:135**

**BESPEAKS CAUTION DOCTRINE**

- Generally, **8:2**
- Nondisclosure liability, **8:2**
- Safe harbor for predictions and projections, **7:22**

**BIRNBAUM RULE**

- Generally, **5:70**

**BIRNBAUM RULE—Cont'd**

- Interrelations of fraud rules generally, **3:50**
- Supreme Court's dispositions, **5:71**

**BITCOIN**

- Background, **25:3**

**BLACKOUTS**

- Insider trading, director and officer trading during, **7:161**

**BLANK CHECK COMPANIES**

- Penny stock sales, **14:145**

**BLOCKCHAIN**

- Cryptocurrencies** (this index)

**BLUE CHIP CASE**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:560**

**BLUE SKY LAWS**

- See **State Law** (this index)

**BONDS**

- Actions on, SLUSA limitations, **3:211**
- Municipal securities, suitability rules, **14:193**

**BOOK VALUE**

- Value indicators generally, **5:162**

**BORAK DECISION**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:557**

**BOUNTY PROGRAMS**

- Whistleblowers** (this index)

**BREACH OF FIDUCIARY DUTY**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**BREAKPOINT DISCOUNTS**

- Mutual fund violations, sales charges, **17:15**

**BRIBERY**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), undisclosed payments to foreign government officials, **19:1 et seq.**

**BRIEFS**

- SEC proceedings, **1:13**

## INDEX

### **BRIEFS—Cont'd**

Wells Submissions (this index)

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

Generally, **14:1 et seq.**

See also **Direct-Personal Dealing**  
(this index)

Accumulation of stock, manipulation  
by, **7:134**

Aider-abettor liabilities, **7:449**

Arbitration

See also **Arbitration** (this index)

Clearing brokers, **15:72**

Correspondent introducing  
brokers, **15:72**

Equities, awards based on, **15:75**

Failure to supervise, **15:73**

Introducing brokers, **15:72**

Litigation compared, **15:6**

Punitive damages, **14:111, 15:74**

Securities law, arbitral extensions,  
**15:71 et seq.**

Splitting the baby, **15:75**

SRO arbitration procedures, **15:8**

Suitability rules, **14:205**

Unsuitability, **15:73**

Witnesses, brokers as, **15:30,**  
**15:40**

Attorneys' fees, **14:53**

Awareness of MNPI

Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**

Possession distinguished, **7:349**

Bar orders against individuals, **13:87**

Blank check companies, **14:145**

Broker's knowledge, **14:41**

Burden of proof

Express actions, **14:42**

Insider trading charges, **7:366**

Business judgment standard, **7:50**

Capping, **7:136**

Causation, **14:91 et seq.**

Chinese walls

Generally, **7:343 et seq.**

Evolution of rule, **7:344**

Operation, **7:345**

**Churning** (this index)

Circular trading, **7:135**

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

Class actions

SA § 11, **14:18**

SA § 12, **14:57**

Clearing brokers, **15:72**

Collateral bar orders against  
individuals, **13:87, 13:88**

Commissions, **5:133**

Connection requirement

Commissions, **5:133**

Kickbacks, **5:133**

Contraction era, compensatory dam-  
ages in, **14:105**

Control, churning, **14:113**

Control person liability

Generally, **7:451 et seq., 8:373 et**  
**seq., 8:394 et seq.**

All control persons, **7:453**

Amount of liability, **7:459**

Broker-dealer control persons,  
**7:456**

B test, **7:456**

Contribution to violation, **7:458**

Failure to act, **7:455**

Investment adviser control  
persons, **7:456**

Knowledge

Failure to have preventive poli-  
cies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Penalties, **7:440**

Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**

Private actions against, **7:486,**  
**7:512**

Reckless disregard

Failure to have preventive poli-  
cies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Requirements, **7:452**

Respondeat superior liability,  
**7:450**

Substantial contribution to viola-  
tion, **7:458**

A test, **7:453**

Cornering the market, **7:134**

Correspondent introducing brokers,  
**15:72**

## **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

### **—Cont'd**

- Costs in express actions, **14:53**
- Criminal prosecutions
  - Generally, **7:460 et seq.**
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
  - Restitution, **7:465**
  - RICO, **7:464**
  - Securities violations, **7:462**
- Cross trading
  - Generally, **14:128**
  - Manipulation, **7:135**
- Crowdfunding, **14:215**
- Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**
- Damages
  - Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**
  - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
  - SA § 11, **14:15**
- Debt securities markups, **14:163**
- Defenses to insider trading charges
  - Amount defined, **7:355**
  - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
  - Burden of proof, **7:369**
  - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
  - Date defined, **7:357**
  - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
  - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Instructions defense, **7:352**
  - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
  - Price defined, **7:356**
  - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
  - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
  - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
- Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1**
- Disclosures
  - Corrections, **6:312**
  - Markup and markdown practices, **14:149**
- Due diligence defense
  - Generally, **14:5**

## **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

### **—Cont'd**

- Due diligence defense—Cont'd
  - Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:52**
  - SEC view, **14:9**
- Equities, arbitration awards based on, **15:75**
- Excessive trading
  - Generally, **14:114 et seq.**
  - See also **Churning** (this index)
  - Benchmark for, **14:116 et seq.**
  - Commission ratios, **14:119 et seq.**
  - Cross trading, **14:128**
  - Frequency of trades, **14:122**
  - In-and-out trading, **14:122**
  - Loss ratio, **14:126**
  - Number of trades, **14:122**
  - Quality of securities purchased, **14:127**
  - Six, rule of, **14:116 et seq.**
  - Turnover rate, **14:115**
- Expert testimony, churning, **14:132**
- Express actions
  - Generally, **14:2 et seq.**
  - Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
  - Broker as defendant
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:20**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:28**
  - Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
  - Burden of proof, **14:42**
  - Class actions
    - SA § 11, **14:18**
    - SA § 12, **14:57**
  - Costs, **14:53**
  - Damages
    - Generally, **14:46, 14:51**
    - SA § 11, **14:15**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - Interest, **14:48**
  - Limitation of actions
    - Generally, **14:17**
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
  - Misrepresentations, **14:39**
  - Offerors, brokers as
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**

## INDEX

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Express actions—Cont'd  
Omissions, **14:39**  
In pari delicto defense, **14:21**  
Privity, **14:34**  
Proximate cause, **14:35**  
Punitive damages, **14:54**  
Purchaser, plaintiff as  
SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**  
SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**  
Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**  
Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**  
Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**  
SA § 11  
Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**  
Court cases, **14:6**  
Damages, **14:15**  
Due diligence defense  
Generally, **14:5**  
SEC view, **14:9**  
Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**  
Later filings, effect of, **14:10**  
Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**  
Participating underwriters, **14:13**  
Policy considerations, **14:12**  
Reasonable investigation defense  
Generally, **14:5**  
Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**  
SEC Rule 176, **14:8**  
Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**  
SEC Rule 176, **14:7**  
SEC Rule 412, **14:7**  
SEC view of due diligence techniques, **14:9**  
Underwriters  
Generally, **14:4**  
Due diligence, **14:14**  
SA § 12(a)(1)  
Generally, **14:19 et seq.**  
Broker as defendant, **14:20**

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Express actions—Cont'd  
SA § 12(a)(1)—Cont'd  
Class actions, **14:57**  
Exemptions from SA § 5, **14:24**  
Limitation of actions, **14:25**  
Offerors, brokers as, **14:22**  
In pari delicto defense, **14:21**  
Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:23**  
Sellers, brokers as, **14:22**  
Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**  
SA § 12(a)(2)  
Generally, **14:27 et seq.**  
Attorneys' fees, **14:53**  
Broker as defendant, **14:28**  
Broker's knowledge, **14:41**  
Burden of proof, **14:42**  
Class actions, **14:57**  
Costs, **14:53**  
Damages, **14:46, 14:51**  
Interest, **14:48**  
Limitation of actions, **14:56**  
Misrepresentations, **14:39**  
Offerors, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**  
Omissions, **14:39**  
Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**  
Privity, **14:34**  
Proximate cause, **14:35**  
Punitive damages, **14:54**  
Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:44**  
Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**  
Reasonable care, **14:43**  
Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**  
Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**  
Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**  
SEA § 10(b) and, overlap between, **14:55**  
Sellers, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**  
Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**  
Tax considerations, **14:48**  
Tender, **14:49**  
Transactional coverage, **14:58**  
Sellers, brokers as  
SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

Express actions—Cont'd  
 Sellers, brokers as—Cont'd  
   SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**  
 Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**  
 Tax considerations, **14:48**  
 Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**  
 Failure to supervise, **15:73**  
 Fiduciary criteria and insider liability  
   Generally, **7:561 et seq.**  
   Contraction era, **7:576**  
   Creation  
     Generally, **7:567**  
     Advisers to issuers, **7:569**  
     Business associates of issuers, **7:570**  
     Law characterizing relation, **7:573**  
     Position with issuer, **7:568**  
     Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**  
     Securities professionals, **7:572**  
   Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**  
   Expansion era, **7:574**  
   Issuers, **7:565**  
   Market insiders, **7:575**  
   Suitability, **14:202, 14:206**  
   With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**  
 Flexible fund annuities, **5:24**  
 Front running manipulation  
   Generally, **7:139 et seq.**  
   Court cases, **7:142**  
   SEC interpretations  
     Generally, **7:140**  
     Decisions, **7:142**  
   SRO interpretations  
     Generally, **7:140**  
     Criticisms, **7:141**  
     Decisions, **7:142**  
     Insider trading, **7:168**  
 Full disclosure regulations, analysts' roles, **7:528**  
 Good faith, **7:53**  
 Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

Implied actions  
 See also **Implied Liability** (this index)  
 Margin rules  
   Generally, **14:59**  
   Arbitration, use in, **14:61**  
   Court cases, **14:60**  
   SEA § 7, **14:59**  
 Rule 10b-5  
   Generally, **14:73 et seq.**  
   Causation, **14:91 et seq.**  
   Connection requirement, **14:94**  
   Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**  
   Damages, **14:95 et seq.**  
   Elements of action, **14:74**  
   Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**  
   Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**  
   Justifiable reliance, **14:89**  
   Market misrepresentations, **14:78**  
   Market nondisclosures, **14:79**  
   Materiality, **14:82**  
   Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**  
   Mitigation of damages, **14:102**  
   Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**  
   Opinions, **14:81**  
   Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**  
   Predictions, **14:81**  
   Proximate cause, **14:92**  
   Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**  
   Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**  
   Recommendations, **14:81**  
   Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**  
 Rescission  
   Chasins measure, **14:97**  
   Lost profits, **14:101**  
   Nye measure, **14:101**  
   Rolf measure, **14:100**  
 Restitution, **14:104**  
 Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**  
 SRO rules  
   Generally, **14:62 et seq.**  
   Arbitration, **14:72**  
   Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**

## INDEX

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Implied actions—Cont'd
  - SRO rules—Cont'd
    - Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**
    - Contraction era, **14:71**
    - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
    - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
- In-and-out trading, **14:122**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Information release guidelines, **7:54**
- Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:213 et seq., 7:557 et seq.**
  - See also **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)
- Access criteria, **7:560**
- Acquisitions, **7:214**
- Administrative enforcement
  - Generally, **7:415 et seq., 7:416 et seq.**
  - Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**
  - Civil penalties, **7:420**
  - Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq.**
  - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Injunctive actions
  - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
  - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
  - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Judge or jury, **7:421**
- Sanctions, **7:417**
- Aider-abettors, **7:449**
- Burden of proof
  - Generally, **7:366**
  - Defenses, **7:369**
  - Institutions, **7:367**
- Buyers, **7:563**
- Congressional intent, **7:559**
- Connection with requirement
  - Market transactions, **7:370**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
  - Tender offers, **7:371**
- Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Insider trading—Cont'd
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - Failure to act, **7:455**
  - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
  - Knowledge
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Penalties, **7:440**
  - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
  - Reckless disregard
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Requirements, **7:452**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - A test, **7:453**
- Criminal enforcement, **7:465**
- Damages, **7:488**
- Defenses, burden of proving, **7:369**
- Disgorgement, **7:465**
- Expansion era, **7:560**
- Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**
- Issuers, applicability to, **7:565**
- Judge or jury
  - Criminal proceedings, **7:467**
  - SEC penalty actions, **7:446**
- Martha Stewart case
  - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Acquittal, **7:411**
  - Background of case, **7:404**
  - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
  - Indictment, **7:405**
  - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Martha Stewart case—Cont'd
    - Intent inference test, **7:410**
    - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
    - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
    - Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**
    - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - Opposite side traders
    - Damages, **7:522**
    - Elements of action, **7:518**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
    - Suits by, **7:504**
  - Parties, **7:363**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **7:364**
    - Scienter, **7:398**
  - Policies, preventive
    - Generally, **7:468 et seq., 7:470**
    - Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**
    - Education, **7:473**
    - Information policies and procedures, **7:474**
    - Investment advisers, **7:470**
    - Nature of policies and procedures, **7:472**
    - Organizations, requirements for, **7:471**
    - Procedures, **7:476**
    - Sanctions for violations, **7:477**
    - Tipping policies, **7:475**
    - Trading policies, **7:475**
  - Private actions
    - Generally, **7:478 et seq., 7:491 et seq.**
    - Amount of liability, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**
    - Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**
    - Background, **7:501**
    - Causation, **7:517**
    - Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Private actions—Cont'd
    - Control persons, actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
    - Convertibles traders, suits by, **7:508**
    - Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**
    - Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**
    - Express causes of action, **7:478 et seq.**
    - Fiduciary theory, **7:498**
    - Implied causes of action, **7:491 et seq., 7:493 et seq.**
    - Market, relation of parties to, **7:493 et seq.**
    - Misappropriation theory, **7:499**
  - Opposite side traders
    - Damages, **7:522**
    - Elements of action, **7:518**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
    - Suits by, **7:504**
  - Option traders, suits by, **7:507**
  - Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**
  - Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**
  - Parties plaintiff
    - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**
    - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
  - Relation to other liabilities, **7:489, 7:524**
  - Reliance, **7:516**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:500**
  - Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**
  - Same side traders
    - Damages, **7:523**
    - Elements of action, **7:519**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
    - Suits by, **7:505**
  - Standing, **7:520**
  - Tippers, actions against, **7:485, 7:511**



## INDEX

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Insider trading—Cont'd  
Private actions—Cont'd  
Traders  
Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**  
Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**  
Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**  
Who can sue, generally, **7:502**  
Who may sue  
Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**  
Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**  
Proof, **7:368**  
Publicity, **7:216**  
Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**  
Recommendations, **7:215**  
Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**  
Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**  
RICO, **7:414, 7:464**  
Same side traders  
Damages, **7:523**  
Elements of action, **7:519**  
Relations of parties to market, **7:495**  
Suits by, **7:505**  
Scienter  
Generally, **7:372 et seq.**  
Fiduciary theory  
Tippers, **7:381**  
Trading insiders, **7:377**  
Trading tippees, **7:385**  
Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**  
Martha Stewart case  
Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
Acquittal, **7:411**  
Background of case, **7:404**  
Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
Indictment, **7:405**  
Inferences from evidence, **7:409**  
Intent inference test, **7:410**  
Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Insider trading—Cont'd  
Scienter—Cont'd  
Martha Stewart case—Cont'd  
Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**  
Misappropriation theory  
Tippers, **7:382**  
Trading insiders, **7:378**  
Trading tippees, **7:386**  
Pleading, **7:398**  
Proof, **7:399 et seq.**  
Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**  
Rule 14e-3, **7:412**  
Tippers  
Generally, **7:379 et seq.**  
Proof, **7:401**  
Trading insiders  
Generally, **7:375 et seq.**  
Proof, **7:400**  
Trading tippees  
Generally, **7:383 et seq.**  
Proof, **7:402**  
SEC efforts to define, **7:559**  
SEC penalty actions  
Generally, **7:438**  
Aider-abettors, **7:449**  
Amount of penalty  
Control persons, **7:459**  
Court-imposed, **7:439**  
Bounties, **7:445**  
Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**  
Court imposed penalties, **7:439**  
Disposition of penalties, **7:445**  
Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**  
Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**  
Informants, awards to, **7:445**  
Judge or jury, **7:446**  
Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**  
Persons liable  
Generally, **7:447**  
Aider-abettors, **7:449**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
 SEC penalty actions—Cont'd  
   Persons liable—Cont'd  
     Employers, **7:450**  
     Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**  
     Tippers, **7:448**  
     Traders, **7:448**  
   Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**  
   Settled penalties, **7:444**  
   Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**  
   Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**  
 Sellers, **7:563**  
 Tender offers, **7:214**  
 Third parties, applicability to, **7:566**  
 Tippers, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
 Unfairness criteria, **7:560**  
 Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**  
 Institutional investors, suitability rules, **14:190**  
 Insurance, **9:76**  
 Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**  
 Intent, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:53**  
 Interrelations of fraud rules  
   Generally, **3:37 et seq.**  
   Birnbaum rule, **3:50**  
   Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**  
   Causation, **3:48**  
   Defenses to private actions, **3:51**  
   Displacing provisions, **3:53**  
   Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**  
   Exempt offerings, **3:46**  
   Implied and express private actions, **3:50**  
   **Implied Liability** (this index)  
   Integration proposals, **3:52**  
   Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**  
   Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

Interrelations of fraud rules—Cont'd  
 Parties subject to rule, **3:49**  
 Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**  
 Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**  
 Public offerings, **3:40**  
 Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**  
 Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**  
 Transactions covered, **3:38**  
 Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**  
 Unregistered offerings, **3:46**  
 Introducing brokers, **15:72**  
 Joint and several liability, **9:31**  
 Jurisdiction, generally, **11:15**  
 Justifiable reliance, **14:89**  
 Kickbacks, **5:133**  
 Limitation of actions  
   Generally, **11:45 et seq.**  
   See also **Limitation of Actions** (this index)  
   Express actions  
     SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**  
     SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**  
 Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**  
 Manipulation  
   Generally, **7:118 et seq.**  
   Accumulation of stock, **7:134**  
   Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**  
   Capping, **7:136**  
   Circular trading, **7:135**  
   Cornering the market, **7:134**  
   Cross trading, **7:135**  
   Definition, **7:119**  
   Depressing prices, **7:124**  
   Federal securities laws, **7:120**  
 Front running  
   Generally, **7:139 et seq.**  
   Court cases, **7:142**  
   SEC interpretations  
     Generally, **7:140**  
     Decisions, **7:142**  
   SRO interpretations  
     Generally, **7:140**  
     Criticisms, **7:141**  
     Decisions, **7:142**

## INDEX

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Manipulation—Cont'd  
Front running—Cont'd  
SRO interpretations—Cont'd  
Insider trading, **7:168**  
Marking the close, **7:131**  
Matched orders, **7:121**  
Painting the tape, **7:132**  
Parking  
Generally, **7:143 et seq.**  
Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**  
Control fights, use in, **7:146**  
Definitions, **7:144**  
Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**  
Record keeping violations, **7:149**  
Tax evasion uses, **7:150**  
Pegging, **7:136**  
Raising prices, **7:124**  
Rule 10b-5  
Generally, **7:130 et seq.**  
Accumulation of stock, **7:134**  
Capping, **7:136**  
Circular trading, **7:135**  
Control, **7:138**  
Cornering the market, **7:134**  
Cross trading, **7:135**  
Domination, **7:138**  
Front running manipulation, above  
Marking the close, **7:131**  
Painting the tape, **7:132**  
Parking, above  
Pegging, **7:136**  
Short selling, **7:137**  
Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**  
SEA § 9(a)(1), **7:121**  
SEA § 9(a)(2)  
Generally, **7:122 et seq.**  
Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**  
Depressing prices, **7:124**  
Purpose, **7:125**  
Raising prices, **7:124**

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Manipulation—Cont'd  
SEA § 9(a)(2)—Cont'd  
Series of transactions, **7:123**  
SEA § 9(a)(3), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(4), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(5), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(6), **7:127**  
SEA § 9(b), **7:128**  
SEA § 9(e), **7:129**  
Short selling, **7:137**  
Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**  
Wash sales, **7:121**  
Margin rules  
Generally, **14:59**  
Arbitration, use in, **14:61**  
Court cases, **14:60**  
Parking to avoid, **7:148**  
SEA § 7, **14:59**  
Market insiders, **7:575**  
Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**  
Market reaction as public/nonpublic test of information, **7:281**  
Marking the close, **7:131**  
Markup and markdown practices  
Generally, **14:148 et seq.**  
Basis  
Generally, **14:150 et seq.**  
Contemporaneous defined  
NASD criteria, **14:161**  
SEC criteria, **14:156**  
Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**  
Dominating market makers, **14:154**  
Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**  
Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**  
Market-makers, retail, **14:153**  
Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**  
NASD criteria, **14:157 et seq.**  
Non dominating market makers, **14:160**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

- Markup and markdown practices
  - Cont'd
- Basis—Cont'd
  - Non market makers
    - NASD criteria, **14:159**
    - SEC criteria, **14:152**
  - Retailer market makers, **14:153**
  - SEC criteria, **14:150 et seq.**
- Debt securities markups, **14:163**
- Disclosure, **14:149**
- Five percent policy, **14:162**
- Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
- Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
- Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
- Matched order manipulations, **7:121**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **14:82**
  - Public disclosure and, **7:280**
- Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities
  - Generally, **7:577**
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Close family relationships, **7:587**
  - Connection element, **7:597**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
  - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
  - Enforcement actions, **7:578**
  - Family relationships, **7:587**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**
  - Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**
  - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**
- Misrepresentations
  - Generally, **7:5, 7:46 et seq.**
  - See also **Forward Looking Information** (this index)
  - Analyst projections, **7:9**
  - Business judgment standard, **7:50**
  - Company projections, **7:8**
  - Due diligence, **7:52**
  - Earnings, **7:47**
  - Express actions, **14:39**
  - Good faith, **7:53**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
  - Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**
  - Information release guidelines, **7:54**
  - Intent, **7:53**
  - Negligence, **7:52**
  - Predictions, **7:46**
  - Predictions and projection disclosure obligations
    - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
  - Capital resources, **7:15**
  - Liquidity, **7:14**
  - With MD&A requirement
    - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
    - Private actions, **7:17**
  - Operation results, **7:16**
  - Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
  - Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**

## INDEX

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
  - Predictions and projection disclosure obligations—Cont'd
  - Safe harbor—Cont'd
  - PSLRA—Cont'd
    - Motion practice, **7:43**
    - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
    - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
    - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
    - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
    - Scope of Act, **7:24**
    - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
    - Update duty, **7:45**
  - Readily available cautionary statements
    - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
    - SEC filings, **7:33**
    - Timing, **7:32**
    - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
    - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
  - SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
  - With SEC encouragement, **7:12**
  - Without SEC rule, **7:11**
- Public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**
- Scienter, **7:53**
- Standards for preparation of information, **7:49**
- Suitability rules, **14:198**
- Violations, criteria for determining, **7:49**
- MNPI
  - Nonpublic information, below
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- Negligence
  - Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:52**
  - Suitability claims, **14:203**
- Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Nonpublic information—Cont'd
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Proxy statements, **7:287**
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
- Law and fact questions, **7:314**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
- Media disclosures
  - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
  - Particular media, **7:299**
  - Timing, **7:297**
- Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Motion practice, **7:311**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Pleading, **7:310**
- Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
- Proof, **7:313**
- Proxy statements, **7:287**
- Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**
- Quantum of proof, **7:312**
- Rumors, **7:301**
- Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
- Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
- Omissions
  - Express actions, **14:39**
  - Public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

On basis of inside information, trades made, **7:348**  
 Opinions, **14:81**  
 Opposite side traders  
     Damages, **7:522**  
     Elements of action, **7:518**  
     Relations of parties to market, **7:494**  
     Suits by, **7:504**  
 Options, suitability rules, **14:192**  
 Organization of treatise, **4:1**  
 Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**  
 Painting the tape, **7:132**  
 In pari delicto defense, **14:21**  
 Parking  
     Generally, **7:143 et seq.**  
     Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**  
     Control fights, use in, **7:146**  
     Definitions, **7:144**  
     Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**  
     Record keeping violations, **7:149**  
     Tax evasion uses, **7:150**  
 Participating underwriters, **14:13**  
 Pegging, **7:136**  
**Penny Stock Sales** (this index)  
 Personal and impersonal dealings, **4:1**  
 Pleading  
     Generally, **11:104 et seq.**  
     See also **Pleading** (this index)  
     Churning, **14:131**  
     Insider trading charges, **7:364**  
     Nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**  
 Possession of MNPI  
     Generally, **7:316**  
     Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**  
     Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**  
     Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**  
     Connection with transaction, **7:681**  
     Individuals, proof for, **7:342**  
     Knowing possession, **7:320**  
     Mere possession, **7:319**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

Possession of MNPI—Cont'd  
     Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**  
     Precautions against trading, **7:346**  
     Proof, **7:322 et seq.**  
 Rule 10b-5  
     Generally, **7:318 et seq.**  
     Access, proof of, **7:323**  
     Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**  
     Burden of proof, **7:321**  
     Contact, proof of, **7:324**  
     Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**  
     Knowing possession, **7:320**  
     Mere possession, **7:319**  
     Organizations, proof for, **7:326**  
     Proof, **7:322 et seq.**  
     Trading, proof of, **7:325**  
     Use inferred from possession, **7:328**  
 Rule 14e-3  
     Generally, **7:340 et seq.**  
     Burden of proof, **7:341**  
     Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**  
     Individuals, proof for, **7:342**  
     Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**  
     Precautions against trading, **7:346**  
     Standard of proof, **7:341**  
 Standard of proof, **7:341**  
 Use compared, **7:317**  
 Predictions, **7:7, 14:81**  
 Privity  
     Express actions, **14:34**  
     Implied liability, **8:276**  
     SA § 12(2), **8:266**  
     SA § 17(a), **8:276**  
     Sales fraud, **8:266**  
     SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:286**  
 Procedure, **14:130 et seq.**  
 Proof of churning, **14:132**  
 Proximate cause  
     Generally, **14:92**  
     Express actions, **14:35**

## INDEX

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

- Public or nonpublic character of information. Nonpublic information, *above*
- Punitive damages
  - Generally, **14:106 et seq., 15:74**
  - Arbitration, **14:111**
  - Express actions, **14:54**
- Purchaser, plaintiff as
  - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**
- Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
- Quantum of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**
- Reasonable investigation defense
  - Generally, **14:5**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - SA § 11, **14:11**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**
  - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
- Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**
- Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
- Recommendations
  - Generally, **14:81**
  - Suitability rules, **14:186**
- Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
- Remedies** (this index)
- Rescission
  - Chasins measure, **14:97**
  - Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**
  - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Lost profits, **14:101**
  - Nye measure, **14:101**
  - Rolf measure, **14:100**
- Respondeat superior liability, insider trading, **7:450**
- Restitution, **14:104**
- Retirement accounts, suitability and fiduciary duty, **14:206**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**
  - Application to, **3:27**
  - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **14:94**
  - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
  - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Elements of action, **14:74**
  - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
  - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
  - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
  - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
  - Materiality, **14:82**
  - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
  - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Proximate cause, **14:92**
  - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
- Rescission
  - Chasins measure, **14:97**
  - Lost profits, **14:101**
  - Nye measure, **14:101**
  - Rolf measure, **14:100**
- Restitution, **14:104**
- Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
- Rumors, **7:301**
- SA § 11
  - Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **14:6**
  - Damages, **14:15**
  - Due diligence defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - SEC view, **14:9**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - Later filings, effect of, **14:10**
  - Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**
  - Participating underwriters, **14:13**
  - Policy considerations, **14:12**
  - Reasonable investigation defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
    - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**



**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

- SA § 11—Cont'd
  - Reasonable investigation require-  
ment, **14:11**
  - SEC Rule 176, **14:7**
  - SEC Rule 412, **14:7**
  - SEC view of due diligence  
techniques, **14:9**
  - Underwriters' due diligence, **14:14**
- SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**
- Sales fraud, privity, **8:266**
- Same side traders
  - Damages, **7:523**
  - Elements of action, **7:519**
  - Relations of parties to market,  
**7:495**
  - Suits by, **7:505**
- Scalping, **12:3**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:139 et seq., 14:83 et  
seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
  - Churning, **14:129**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Misrepresentation claims,  
consideration of, **7:53**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
  - Pleading, **8:145**
  - Proof, **8:142**
  - SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**
- SEC investigations, integration of  
broker-dealer and investment  
management examinations,  
**20:13**
- SEC supervisory authority over bro-  
ker-dealers, **10:1**
- Securities types
  - Generally, **5:9 et seq.**
  - Alternative government regulation,  
**5:35**
  - Certificates of deposit, **5:28**
  - Characteristics of instrument in  
commerce, **5:39**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

**—Cont'd**

- Securities types—Cont'd
  - Common elements in defining a  
security, **5:32 et seq.**
  - Context clause, **5:18**
  - Cooperative apartment corporation  
shares, **5:26**
  - Court cases, **5:20 et seq.**
- Employee benefit plans
  - Generally, **5:42 et seq.**
  - Contributory plans
    - Involuntary, **5:46**
    - Voluntary, **5:48**
  - Defined plans, **5:49**
  - Distinguishing contributory  
from noncontributory, **5:52**
  - Distinguishing voluntary from  
involuntary plans, **5:51**
  - ERISA, preemptive effect of,  
**5:43**
  - ESOPs, **5:48**
  - Involuntary contributory plans,  
**5:46**
  - Involuntary noncontributory  
plans, **5:45**
  - Noncontributory plans
    - Involuntary, **5:45**
    - Voluntary, **5:47**
  - Pension plans, **5:49**
  - Sales, **5:44**
  - Voluntary contributory plans,  
**5:48**
  - Voluntary noncontributory  
plans, **5:47**
- Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
- Expectations of public, **5:40**
- Flexible fund annuities, **5:25**
- Fractional interests in mineral  
rights, **5:21**
- Guarantees, **5:15**
- Howey test, **5:22**
- Interest, **5:14**
- International Brotherhood of  
Teamsters case, **5:27**
- Investment risk as factor, **5:34**
- Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**
- Judicial decisions, **5:20 et seq.**

## INDEX

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Securities types—Cont'd

Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**

Marine Bank case, **5:28**

Marketing as factor, **5:33**

Motivations of purchasers, **5:37**

Motivations of sellers, **5:38**

9 month notes, **5:17**

Notes, **5:30**

Oil and gas interests

Generally, **5:16**

Fractional interests, **5:21**

Passive or active purchasers, **5:36**

Pension plans, employee interests  
in, **5:27**

Perceptions of public, **5:40**

Reeves v. Ernst & Young case,  
**5:30**

Relative importance of elements,  
**5:41**

SA § 2(1)(a) definition

Generally, **5:10**

Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**

Guarantees, **5:15**

Interest, **5:14**

9 month notes, **5:17**

Oil and gas interests, **5:16**

SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12**  
**et seq.**

SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**

SEA § 3(A)(10)

Generally, **5:10**

Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**

Guarantees, **5:15**

Interest, **5:14**

9 month notes, **5:17**

Oil and gas interests, **5:16**

SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et**  
**seq.**

SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**

State law definitions, **5:19**

Statutory definitions, **5:10 et seq.**

United Benefit Life Ins Co case,  
**5:24**

United Housing Foundation, Inc  
case, **5:26**

Variable annuities, **5:23**

### BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Sellers, brokers as, express actions,  
**14:22, 14:29 et seq.**

Short selling manipulation, **7:137**

SRO rules

Generally, **14:62 et seq.**

Arbitration, **14:72**

Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**

Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**

Contraction era, **14:71**

Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**

Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**

Substantial factor in sale, broker as,  
**14:35**

Successive activity price manipula-  
tions, **7:133**

Suitability rules

Generally, **14:183 et seq.**

See also **Suitability** (this index)

Arbitration, **14:205**

Consumer fraud claims, **14:204**

Damage claims, **14:196 et seq.**

Disciplinary actions, **14:194**

Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**

Fiduciary duty, **14:206**

FINRA Rule 2090, know your  
customer, **14:191**

FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**

FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187,**  
**14:188**

Fraud claims, **14:199**

Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**

Institutional investors, **14:190**

Investment strategy, **14:188**

Know your customer, **14:191**

Misrepresentation, claims based  
on, **14:198**

Municipal securities, **14:193**

NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**

NASD Rule 2310(c), **14:187**

NASD rules generally, **14:185**

Negligence, **14:203**

Options, **14:192**

Private damage claims, **14:196 et**  
**seq.**

Recommendations to customers,  
**14:187**

## **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

### **—Cont'd**

- Suitability rules—Cont'd
  - Retirement accounts, **14:206**
  - Rule 10b-5 claims, **14:197 et seq.**
  - SEA § 10(b) claims, **14:197 et seq.**
  - SEC rules, **14:195**
  - SRO rules, **14:184**
  - State law claims
    - Generally, **14:200 et seq.**
    - Consumer fraud, **14:204**
    - Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**
    - Negligence, **14:203**
    - Statutory violations, **14:201**
  - Supervisory duties
    - Generally, **14:164 et seq.**
    - Amex requirements, **14:174**
    - Branch office managers, **14:178**
    - Chief executive officers, **14:180**
    - Compliance officers, **14:181**
    - Court cases, **14:176**
    - Deficiencies, **14:175**
    - General counsel, **14:182**
    - Heads of functional areas, **14:179**
    - Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**
    - Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
    - NASD requirements, **14:172**
    - NYSE requirements, **14:173**
    - Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**
    - Safe harbor programs, **14:175**
    - Sanctions, **14:175**
    - SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**
    - SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
    - SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**
    - SEA § 19, **14:170**
    - SEA § 20(a), **14:167**
    - SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**
  - Tippee liability
    - Generally, **7:623, 7:631**
    - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
    - Dirks background, **7:625**
    - Family benefit to, **7:630**
    - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
    - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**

## **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

### **—Cont'd**

- Tippee liability—Cont'd
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Nonpublic information, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**
  - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
  - Tip defined, **7:624**
- Transaction Planning** (this index)
- Unsuitability, **15:73**
- Use of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Burden of proof, **7:331**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
  - Possession compared, **7:317**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**
  - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
  - Standard of proof, **7:331**
  - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
  - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Wash sales manipulation, **7:121**
- What is a Security** (this index)
- BROOKS AUTOMATION INC.**
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:1**

## INDEX

### BURDEN OF PROOF

Actual knowledge, **8:178**  
Bad faith, **8:219**  
Broker-dealer liability, **14:42**  
Causation, **5:98**  
Constructive knowledge, **8:189**  
Diligence, lack of, **8:238**  
Fraud on the market theory (FOMT),  
**8:548**  
Implied liability, **8:255**  
Insider trading charges, **7:366**  
Intent, **8:201**  
Manipulation, **8:104**  
Motive, **8:208**  
Negligence, **8:238**  
Proportionate liability, **9:63**  
Proxies and proxy solicitations, **8:127**  
Recklessness, **8:227**  
Scienter  
Generally, **8:66, 8:77, 8:84**  
Actual knowledge, **8:178**  
Bad faith, **8:219**  
Constructive knowledge, **8:189**  
Diligence, lack of, **8:238**  
Intent, **8:201**  
Motive, **8:208**  
Negligence, **8:238**  
Proxies and proxy solicitations,  
**8:127**  
Recklessness, **8:227**  
SEC, false reports to, **8:148**  
Tender offer fraud, **8:134**  
Unreasonable conduct, **8:238**  
SEC, false reports to, **8:148**  
Securities Act Section 17(a), **8:84**  
Tender offer fraud, **8:134**  
Unfair terms, **5:153**  
Unreasonable conduct, **8:238**

### BUSINESS ASSOCIATES

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### BUSINESS JUDGMENT

#### STANDARD

Misrepresentation claims,  
consideration of, **7:50**  
Timely disclosure of inside information,  
**7:241**

### BUSINESS PRIORITY

ESG, **29:1**

### BUYER-SELLER

#### REQUIREMENTS

Generally, **5:110 et seq., 8:582**  
Broad interpretation, **5:117**  
Broker-dealer liability  
SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**  
SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**  
Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**  
Control, sales of, **5:113**  
Definition, **5:111**  
Direct-impersonal dealing, **6:182**  
Direct-personal dealing  
Generally, **5:110 et seq.**  
Broad interpretation, **5:117**  
Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**  
Control, sales of, **5:113**  
Definition, **5:111**  
Forced sales, **5:120**  
Injunction suits, **5:122**  
Interpretation of requirement,  
**5:117**  
Issuances, **5:121**  
Liquidations, **5:119**  
Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**  
Mergers, **5:118**  
Modified view, **5:117**  
Pleading, **5:126**  
Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**  
Forced sales, **5:120**  
Injunction suits, **5:122**  
Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**  
Issuances, **5:121**  
Liquidations, **5:119**  
Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**  
Mergers, **5:118**  
Modified view, **5:117**  
Pleading, **5:126**  
Reliance, **8:582**  
Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**

### BUYOUTS

**Investment Bankers** (this index)

### CAPPING

Manipulation, **7:136**

## CASE OPINIONS

See **Court Decisions** (this index)

## CASH FLOW

Disclosures, **6:260**

## CAUSATION

Generally, **5:89 et seq.**

Administrative enforcement actions,  
**10:1**

Broker-dealer liability, **14:91 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **5:98**

Damage causation. See **Damages**  
(this index)

Definition, **5:90**

Direct-personal dealing

Generally, **5:89 et seq.**

Loss causation, **5:91**

Meaning, **5:90**

Transaction causation, **5:92**

Fraud on the market

Generally, **8:520 et seq.**

See also **Reliance** (this index)

Indirect-impersonal dealing, curtail-  
ing scheme to defraud, **7:76**

Insider trading actions, **7:517**

Loss causation

Generally, **5:91**

See also other entries throughout  
this topic

Scienter, SA § 17(b), touting, **8:93**

Substitute for buyer-seller require-  
ment, **5:123**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, cause  
investigation, **20:5**

Materiality, pleading and proof,  
**5:107**

Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et  
seq.**

Misconduct, relation to securities  
transaction generally, **3:48**

Modified view, **5:95**

Pleading

Generally, **8:571 et seq.**

Materiality, **5:107**

Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**

Policies, **5:97**

**Private Actions** (this index)

## CAUSATION—Cont'd

Proof

Materiality, **5:107**

Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

Proxy solicitation as element,  
**5:108**

Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**

Reasons, **5:97**

Reliance

Generally, **8:484 et seq.**

See also **Reliance** (this index)

Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**

Transaction causation, **5:92, 8:484**

Ute presumption, **8:484**

Voting

Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**

## CEA

See **Commodities Exchange Act**  
(this index)

## CEASE AND DESIST ORDERS

CFTC, **13:239**

Likelihood of future violation,  
**13:239**

Permanent, **13:85, 13:239**

SEC

Permanent, **13:85**

Temporary, **13:86**

Temporary, **13:86**

## CERTIFICATES OF DEPOSIT

Security, treatment as, **5:28**

## CFTC

See **Commodity Futures Trading  
Commission** (this index)

## CHADBOURNE & PARKE LLP v. TROICE

Post-Chadbourne cases, **3:220 to  
3:222**

Securities Litigation Uniform Stan-  
dards Act (SLUSA), **3:217 et  
seq.**

## CHARGES

Mutual fund violations, sales prac-  
tices, **17:15**

## INDEX

### **CHARGES—Cont'd**

SEC investigations, investor recovery, **13:55**

### **CHARITABLE FOUNDATIONS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

### **CHIASSON/NEWMAN CASES**

Court decisions, **7:387 et seq.**

### **CHICAGO BOARD OPTIONS EXCHANGE (CBOE)**

Suitability rules, **14:192**

### **CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6, 20:8**

### **CHINESE WALLS**

Generally, **7:343 et seq.**

Evolution of rule, **7:344**

Operation, **7:345**

### **CHINESE WAY OF DOING BUSINESS**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:11**

### **CHURNING**

Generally, **14:112 et seq.**

Control, **14:113**

Damages, **14:136**

Defenses, **14:133 et seq.**

Definition, **14:138**

Elements of action, **14:113 et seq.**

Excessive trading

Generally, **14:114 et seq.**

Benchmark for, **14:116 et seq.**

Commission ratios, **14:119 et seq.**

Cross trading, **14:128**

Frequency of trades, **14:122**

In-and-out trading, **14:122**

Loss ratio, **14:126**

Number of trades, **14:122**

Quality of securities purchased, **14:127**

Six, rule of, **14:116 et seq.**

Turnover rate, **14:115**

Expert testimony, **14:132**

In-and-out trading, **14:122**

Pleading, **14:131**

Procedure, **14:130 et seq.**

### **CHURNING—Cont'd**

Proof, **14:132**

Scienter, **14:129**

State law actions, **14:137 et seq.**

### **CIRCUITS**

See **Court Decisions** (this index)

### **CIRCULAR TRADING**

Manipulation through, **7:135**

### **CIVIL PENALTIES**

Generally, **7:438 et seq.**

See also **Securities and Exchange Commission** (this index)

Administrative enforcement generally

CFTC, **13:238**

SEC, **13:83**

Ancillary relief, **13:108 et seq.**

CFTC, **13:238**

Financial test, **13:238**

**Injunctions** (this index)

SEC

Administrative enforcement, **13:83**

Ancillary relief, **13:108**

### **CLASS ACTIONS**

Generally, **8:515 et seq.**

Backdating of stock options, private litigation, **18:10**

Blockchain, **24:9**

Certification

Generally, **8:516**

Materiality of alleged misrepresentation, proof, **8:550**

Misrepresentation cases, **8:517**

Omission cases, **8:518**

**Covid-19 Pandemic** (this index)

Cryptocurrencies, **24:9**

Cybersecurity, **26:6, 26:7**

Damages, **9:13**

Derivative suits compare, **3:212**

Desirability of class actions, **8:526**

Discovery limitations, **3:203**

Initial coin offerings, **24:9**

Jurisdictional means, **11:42**

Limitation of actions

Generally, **11:96 et seq.**

Tolling, **11:97**

**CLASS ACTIONS—Cont’d**

- Mass-type actions, SLUSA limitations, **3:206**
- Private, ESG, **29:3**
- Related class-type actions, SLUSA limitations, **3:205**
- Reliance, **8:515 et seq.**
- SA § 11, **14:18**
- SA § 12, **14:57**
- SA § 17(b), touting, **8:90**
- SLUSA limitations on state actions
  - Generally, **3:201 et seq.**
  - Abolition of state claims, **3:202**
  - Administrative actions by states, **3:210**
  - Administrative enforcement, **3:216**
  - Bonds, actions on, **3:211**
  - Congressional intent, **3:201**
  - Covered class actions, **3:204**
  - Criminal enforcement, **3:216**
  - Derivative suits, **3:212**
  - Discovery limitations, **3:203**
  - Government enforcement, **3:216**
  - Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
  - Indenture contract actions, **3:211**
  - Individual fraud claims, **3:215**
  - Mass-type actions, **3:206**
  - Permitted class actions, **3:208 et seq.**
  - Private rights, effect on, **3:215**
  - Recklessness, **3:214**
  - Related class-type actions, **3:205**
  - Scienter, **3:214**
  - Scope, **3:204 et seq.**
  - Securities covered by SLUSA, **3:207**
  - State governments, actions by, **3:210**
  - Utility of class actions, **8:526**

**CLOSING ARGUMENTS**

- Insiders and inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:25**

**COHMAD SECURITIES CORPORATION**

- Madoff feeder funds, **20:22**

**COLLATERALIZED DEBT OBLIGATIONS (CDOS)**

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:331.10**

**COMMODITIES EXCHANGE ACT (CEA)**

- Section 6(b), **13:194**
- Section 8, **13:193**
- Section 14(b), **13:196**
- Section 16(a), **13:193**
- USCA cross reference table, **App I**

**COMMODITIES FRAUD**

- Joint and several liability, **9:46**
- Suitability rules, **14:192**

**COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION (CFTC)**

- Generally, **1:15**
- Administrative Enforcement** (this index)
- Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:234**
- Ancillary relief, **13:250**
- Authority to investigate
  - Generally, **13:192**
  - Publishing data, restrictions on, **13:193**
- Cease and desist orders, **13:239**
- Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
- Conferences with staff, **13:218**
- Conflicts of interest in investigations, **13:207**
- Counsel investigations, **13:219**
- Criminal enforcement references
  - Generally, **13:254 et seq.**
  - See also **Criminal Enforcement** (this index)
- Cryptocurrencies** (this index)
- Decisions, **1:15**
- Deregulation. Progressive deregulation, below
- Discovery
  - Generally, **13:224 et seq.**
  - Document subpoenas, **13:225**
  - FOIA requests, **13:226**
  - Production requests, **13:227**



## INDEX

### COMMODITY FUTURES

#### TRADING COMMISSION

##### (CFTC)—Cont'd

- Document production, **13:217**
- Documents, third party access to, **13:224 et seq.**
- Enforcement actions. See **Administrative Enforcement** (this index)
- Exempt transactions, see also Progressive deregulation, below
- Factors influencing outcome of investigations, **13:264**
- FOIA requests, **13:226**
- Informal enforcement actions, **13:233**
- Informal warnings, **13:230**
- Information given by agency, **13:204**
- Injunctions** (this index)
- Interrogations, generally, **13:221**
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
  - See also **Investigations** (this index)
- Justice Department references
  - Generally, **13:254 et seq.**
  - See also **Criminal Enforcement** (this index)
- Orders
  - Cease and desist orders, **13:239**
  - Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
  - Duration of orders, **13:243**
  - Formal orders of investigation, **13:208 et seq.**
  - Validity challenges, **13:212**
- Outcomes of investigations, **13:228 et seq.**
- Progressive deregulation
  - See also Exempt transactions, above
- Pronouncements, **1:15**
- Public reports of investigations, **13:232**
- Reports of investigations, **13:232**
- Requests for information, **13:203**
- Right to counsel in investigations, **13:206**
- Risk disclosure requirements, **6:289**
- Securities law and preemption. Jurisdiction, above

### COMMODITY FUTURES

#### TRADING COMMISSION

##### (CFTC)—Cont'd

- Staff conferences, **13:218**
  - State authorities, references to, **13:231**
  - State investigations, **13:197**
  - Subpoena power, **13:200**
  - Subpoenas
    - Generally, **13:213 et seq.**
    - Content, **13:214**
    - Document production, **13:217**
    - Document subpoenas, **13:225**
    - Evaluation, **13:215**
    - Responses, **13:217**
    - Validity challenges, **13:216**
  - Testimony
    - Generally, **13:220 et seq.**
    - Interrogations, **13:221**
    - Preparing witnesses, **13:220**
    - Transcripts, **13:222**
  - Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**
  - Transcripts
    - Generally, **13:222**
    - Third party access to, **13:224 et seq.**
  - Warnings, **13:230**
  - Wells submissions, **13:265**
- ### COMMON LAW FRAUD
- Commodities fraud generally, **1:24**
  - Conspirators, **8:261**
  - Corrections, disclosure, **6:291**
  - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:59**
  - Direct-personal dealing
    - Generally, **5:2**
    - Theories and sources of liability, **5:54**
  - Disclosures, **6:291**
  - Fraud on the market theory, **8:531**
  - Insider trading liability, **7:153**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:20**
  - Joint tortfeasors, **8:261**
  - Materiality, **8:6**
  - Parties, **8:259**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:60**
  - Privity, **8:259**

**COMMON LAW FRAUD—Cont'd**

Reliance, **8:487**  
 Securities fraud generally, **1:22**  
 Special facts and common law fraud,  
**3:19**  
 State law, **3:185**

**COMMUNICATIONS**

**Disclosure** (this index)  
**Letters** (this index)  
**Supplementary Communications**  
 (this index)

**COMPARATIVE FAULT**

**Contribution** (this index)  
 Indemnification, **9:76**  
 Insurance, **9:76**  
**Proportionate Liability** (this index)

**COMPENSATION**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, affiliated  
 individuals, **20:5, 20:6, 20:9**  
 Private actions, materiality, **8:43**

**COMPLIANCE COUNSEL**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**COMPLIANCE PERSONNEL**

Whistleblower bounty program, orig-  
 inal information, **22:9**

**COMPLIANCE PROGRAMS**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
 (FCPA), **19:14**

**COMPROMISE AND  
 SETTLEMENT**

Admission of wrongdoing, **13:166 et  
 seq.**  
 Contribution, **9:72**  
**Foreign Corrupt Practices Act**  
 (FCPA) (this index)  
 Indemnification, **9:76**  
 Insider trading penalty actions, **7:444**  
 Insurance, **9:76, 13:183**  
 Investigations  
     Investment bankers global settle-  
     ment, ancillary relief, **13:110**  
     SEC, **13:154 to 13:157, 20:15**  
     SROs, **13:305**  
     State agency, **13:321**

**COMPROMISE AND**

**SETTLEMENT—Cont'd**

Investment bankers global settlement,  
 ancillary relief, **13:110**  
 Madoff fraud, Picower settlement,  
**20:24**  
 Mediation, **15:69**  
**Negotiations** (this index)  
 No-action letters, SEC, **1:12**  
 Penalty actions, **7:444**  
 Releases of Rule 10b-5 liability,  
**12:11**  
 Restitution to defrauded investors,  
     SEC role in  
         In court, **10:3**  
         Out of court, **10:2**  
 SEC cases, **1:9**  
 SEC role in, **10:2, 10:3**  
 State agency investigations, **13:321**  
 Uncontested court decisions, **1:17**

**COMPULSORY DISCLOSURE**

See **Disclosure** (this index)

**COMPUTER PROGRAMMERS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:7**

**COMVERSE TECHNOLOGY INC.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:1,**  
**18:11**

**CONCEALMENT**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**CONCERTED ACTION**

Generally, **8:294**  
**Aider-Abettors** (this index)  
**Conspiracies and Conspirators**  
 (this index)  
**Parties** (this index)

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

Generally, **5:145**  
 Arms length transactions  
     Generally, **5:144**  
     Reasons and policies, **5:149**  
 Corporate officers, **8:417**  
 Directors, **8:417**  
 Direct-personal dealing  
     Generally, **5:53 et seq., 5:141 et  
     seq.**

## INDEX

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof
    - Causation requirements, **5:98**
    - Unfair terms, **5:153**
  - Buyer-seller requirements
    - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
    - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
    - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
    - Control, sales of, **5:113**
    - Definition, **5:111**
    - Forced sales, **5:120**
    - Injunction suits, **5:122**
    - Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
    - Issuances, **5:121**
    - Liquidations, **5:119**
    - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
    - Mergers, **5:118**
    - Modified view, **5:117**
    - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
  - Causation requirements
    - Generally, **5:89 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **5:98**
    - Loss causation, **5:91**
    - Loss causation as substitute for buyer-seller requirement, **5:123**
    - Meaning, **5:90**
    - Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
    - Modified view, **5:95**
  - Pleading
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
    - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
    - Policies, **5:97**

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
    - Causation requirements—Cont'd
      - Proof
        - Materiality, **5:107**
        - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
        - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
        - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
      - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
      - Reasons, **5:97**
      - Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
      - Transaction causation, **5:92**
    - Voting
      - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
      - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
  - Common law theories and sources, **5:54**
  - Connection requirement
    - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
    - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Court cases, **5:135**
  - Definition, **5:128**
  - Injunction suits, **5:138**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
  - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
  - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
  - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:140**
  - Policies, **5:139**
  - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
  - Control, sales of, **5:113**
  - Court cases
    - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

**—Cont'd**

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
  - Court cases—Cont'd
    - Connection requirement, **5:135 et seq.**
  - Unfairness
    - Generally, **5:183 et seq.**
    - Fair terms, **5:185**
    - SEC decisions, **5:186**
    - Unfair terms, **5:184**
- Deception requirement
  - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
  - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
  - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
  - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
  - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
  - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
  - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
  - Meaning, **5:80**
  - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:88**
  - Policies, **5:87**
  - Reasons, **5:87**
  - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
  - Strict view, **5:81**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
- Fairness. Unfair terms, below
- Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
- Injunction suits
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**
  - Connection requirements, **5:138**
- Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
- Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
- Mismanagement exception
  - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
  - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
  - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
  - Meaning, **5:73**
  - Pleading, **5:78**
  - Policies, **5:77**

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

**—Cont'd**

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
  - Mismanagement exception
    - Cont'd
    - Reasons, **5:77**
    - Strict view, **5:74**
- Obstacles
  - Generally, **5:56 et seq.**
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Application to other provisions, **5:69**
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq., 5:71**
  - Causation requirements
    - Loss causation, **5:91**
    - Meaning, **5:90**
    - Transaction causation, **5:92**
  - Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
- Deception requirement
  - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
  - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
  - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
  - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
  - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
  - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
  - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
  - Meaning, **5:80**
  - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
  - Policies, **5:87**
  - Reasons, **5:87**
  - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
  - Strict view, **5:81**
- Decline of, **5:58**
- Federal comparison, **5:55**
- Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
- Interrelation of, **5:59**
- Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
- Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
- Mismanagement exception
  - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**

## INDEX

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Obstacles—Cont'd
  - Mismanagement exception—Cont'd
    - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
    - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
    - Meaning, **5:73**
    - Policies, **5:77**
    - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
    - Reasons, **5:77**
    - Strict view, **5:74**
  - Operation of, **5:57 et seq.**
  - Policies, **5:60**
  - Reasons for, **5:60**
  - Rise of, **5:58**
  - Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Pleading
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**
  - Causation requirements, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Company as buyer seller, **5:126**
  - Connection requirement, **5:140**
  - Deception requirement, **5:88**
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Mismanagement exception, **5:78**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Unfair terms, **5:152**
- Sources, common law, **5:54**
- Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
- Theories, common law, **5:54**
- Unfair terms
  - Generally, **5:142 et seq.**
  - Actual control, **5:156**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Book value, **5:162**
  - Burden of proof, **5:153**
  - Business decisions as value determiners, **5:171**

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**
- Conflict transactions
  - Generally, **5:145**
  - Reasons and policies, **5:150**
- Control, proof of, **5:155**
- Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**
- Control sales, **5:191**
- Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**
- Definition, **5:143**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
  - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
- Discounts, control, **5:166**
- Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
- Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**
- Full disclosure, effect of
  - Generally, **5:146**
  - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
- Influence, proof of, **5:155**
- Investment bankers
  - Generally, **5:172 et seq.**
  - Controlled company bankers, **5:175**
  - Controlling company bankers, **5:177**
  - Dual representation bankers, **5:176**
  - No banker transactions, **5:178**
  - Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**
  - Prior relations of, **5:182**
  - Qualities of bankers, **5:173**
  - Roles of bankers, **5:174**
  - Successive bankers, **5:179**
  - Trials, bankers for, **5:180**
- Legal decisions as value determiners, **5:170**
- Liquidation value, **5:163**

## CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Market prices as value indicators, **5:160**
  - Pleading, **5:152**
  - Policies, **5:148 et seq.**
  - Potential control, **5:156**
  - Premiums, control, **5:166**
  - Proof of elements, **5:154**
  - Range of fairness, **5:143**
  - Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**
  - Shareholder votes, effect of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**
  - Time factors in value determination, **5:165**
  - Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
  - Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
  - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- Reasons and policies, **5:150**

## CONFLICTS OF LAW

- Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases, **11:31**

## CONGRESS

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), actions against members of Congress, **19:12**

## CONGRESSIONAL INTENT

- Concurrent history, **3:92**
- Implied liability
  - Contraction era, **3:76**
  - Expansion era, **3:56**
- Insiders, scope of regulations, **7:559**
- Interpretation, use of legislative history in
  - Concurrent history, **3:92**

## CONGRESSIONAL INTENT

### —Cont'd

- Interpretation, use of legislative history in—Cont'd
  - Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **3:68**
  - Later history, **3:93**
  - Occasions for use, **3:91**
  - Statutory structure, **3:94**
- Later history, **3:93**
- Merger regulation
  - Generally, **6:154 et seq.**
  - Information statement rules, **6:156**
  - Proxy rules, **6:155**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:157**
  - SEA § 14(a), **6:155**
  - SEA § 14(c), **6:156**
- Private Securities Litigation Reform Act (PSLRA), **3:214**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **3:14 et seq.**
  - Deceptive devices, **3:17**
  - Manipulative devices, **3:17**
  - Private enforcement rights, **3:16**
  - Scienter, **8:158**
  - Scope of coverage, **3:15**
  - Securities Act and, **3:10**
  - Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:158**
- Scienter, **8:158**
- SEA
  - Generally, **3:11**
- Rule 10b-5 history
  - Generally, **3:14 et seq.**
  - Deceptive devices, **3:17**
  - Manipulative devices, **3:17**
  - Private enforcement rights, **3:16**
  - Scope of coverage, **3:15**
  - Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**
- Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), **3:201, 3:214**
- Statutory structure, **3:94**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
  - Disclosure, **6:17**
  - Fairness, **6:19**
  - Investor protection, **6:17**

## INDEX

### CONGRESSIONAL INTENT

#### —Cont'd

Tender offers—Cont'd  
Target management protection,  
**6:18**

### CONNECTION WITH REQUIREMENT

Generally, **5:127 et seq.**  
Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**  
Commissions, **5:133**  
Definition, **5:128**  
Direct-impersonal dealing  
Generally, **6:183 et seq.**  
Rule 10b-5, **6:185**  
Rule 14a-9, **6:183**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:184**  
Direct-personal dealing  
Generally, **5:127 et seq.**  
Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**  
Commissions, **5:133**  
Court cases, **5:135**  
Injunction suits, **5:138**  
Kickbacks, **5:133**  
Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**  
Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**  
Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**  
Pleading, **5:140**  
Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**  
Reasons, **5:139**  
Strict view, **5:129**  
Third party misconduct, **5:132**  
Injunction suits, **5:138**  
Insider trading  
Generally, **7:676 et seq.**  
Inducing action, **7:682**  
Investment decision, influencing, **7:682**  
Market transactions, **7:370**  
Misappropriation theory, **7:597, 7:680**  
Non-participation in pertinent transactions, **7:677**  
Possession vs use, **7:681**  
Price, affecting, **7:682**

### CONNECTION WITH REQUIREMENT—Cont'd

Insider trading—Cont'd  
Purchase, inducing, **7:682**  
Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**  
Rule 14e-3, **7:371**  
Tender offers, **7:371**  
Touching test, **7:678**  
Kickbacks, **5:133**  
Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**  
Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**  
Merger challenges  
Generally, **6:183 et seq.**  
Rule 10b-5, **6:185**  
Rule 14a-9, **6:183**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:184**  
Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:597**  
Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**  
Pleading, **5:140**  
Policies, **5:139**  
Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**  
Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**  
Reasons, **5:139**  
Strict view, **5:129**  
Third party misconduct, **5:132**  
Touching test, **7:678**

### CONSISTENCY OF RETURNS

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

### CONSOLIDATION OF ACTIONS

SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**

### CONSPIRACIES AND CONSPIRATORS

Generally, **8:304 et seq.**  
Actions in concert, **8:294**  
Affirmative conduct  
Generally, **8:305 et seq.**  
No affirmative conduct, **8:310**  
Aider-abettors compared, **8:292**  
Common law fraud, **8:261**  
Control sales, **8:307**  
Injunctions, **8:312**  
**Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)  
**Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)



**CONSPIRACIES AND  
CONSPIRATORS—Cont'd**

Misrepresentations, **8:305**

Nondisclosures, **8:306**

Other violations, **8:309**

Overt acts

Generally, **8:305 et seq.**

No overt act, **8:310**

Parties and privity

Generally, **8:304 et seq.**

See also **Private Actions** (this index)

Pleading

Generally, **8:325**

Affirmative conduct, **8:321**

Aiding-abetting, **8:324**

Choice of parties, **8:320**

No affirmative conduct, **8:322**

Participation, **8:323**

Special elements, **8:326**

Privity

Implied liability, **8:280**

SA § 12(2), **8:270**

SA § 17(a), **8:280**

Sales fraud, **8:270**

Relations to other actors, **8:311**

Rule 10b-5 liability

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**

Aider-abettors compared, **8:292**

Concerted action, **8:294**

Inducement, **8:295**

Injunction suits, **8:303**

Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**

Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**

Participants generally, **8:292**

Participants in violations generally, **8:294**

Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**

SEC decisions, **8:312**

**CONSTRUCTIVE FRAUD**

Generally, **8:242**

**CONSTRUCTIVE KNOWLEDGE**

Generally, **8:180**

See also **Knowledge** (this index)

**CONSTRUCTIVE KNOWLEDGE  
—Cont'd**

Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:181**

**CONTRACTION ERA**

See also **Expansion Era; Implied Liability** (this index)

Compensatory damages in, **14:105**

Fiduciary criteria

Generally, **7:561 et seq.**

Contraction era, **7:576**

Creation

Generally, **7:567**

Advisers to issuers, **7:569**

Business associates of issuers, **7:570**

Law characterizing relation, **7:573**

Position with issuer, **7:568**

Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**

Securities professionals, **7:572**

Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**

Information possession criteria, **7:574**

Issuers, **7:565**

Market insiders, **7:575**

With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**

Implied liabilities under SRO rules, **14:71**

Implied private actions under 10b-5

Generally, **3:74 et seq.**

See also **Implied Liability** (this index)

Administrative enforcement, supplement to, **3:81**

Administrative interpretation, **3:82**

Congressional intent, **3:76**

Cort v Ash, **3:95**

Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose, **3:88**

Judicial restraint, **3:85**

Legislative history, uses of, **3:90 et seq.**

Modes of interpretation, **3:86 et seq.**

Negative implication, **3:87**

## INDEX

### CONTRACTION ERA—Cont'd

- Implied private actions under 10b-5
  - Cont'd
  - Policies, **3:75**
  - Policy effectuation, **3:80**
  - Practicality, **3:83**
  - Reasons, **3:75**
  - Statutory jurisdictional grant, **3:79**
  - Statutory literalism, **3:89**
  - Statutory tort, **3:77**
  - Supplement to administrative enforcement, **3:81**
  - Vexatiousness, **3:84, 3:85**
  - Voidability, statutory, **3:78**
- Information possession criteria of insider liabilities, **7:576**
- Insider trading by issuers, **7:646**
- Overlapping remedies
  - Generally, **3:102 et seq.**
  - Comparison of elements of express and implied rights, **3:105**
  - Defense strategies, **3:103**
  - Exclusions, effect of, **3:108**
  - Falsity vs scheme, **3:106**
  - Nullification test, **3:104**
- SA § 11
  - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
  - Documents excluded, **3:113**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
  - Securities excluded, **3:110**
  - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
  - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
- SA § 12(2)
  - Generally, **3:116 et seq.**
  - Commercial paper, **3:119**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:121**
  - Documents excluded, **3:122**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**
  - Government securities, **3:118**
  - Municipal securities, **3:117**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**
  - Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**

### CONTRACTION ERA—Cont'd

- Overlapping remedies—Cont'd
  - SA § 12(2)—Cont'd
  - Substantive elements, **3:124**
- SEA § 9
  - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
  - Documents excluded, **3:130**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
  - Government securities, **3:127**
  - Municipal securities, **3:127**
  - OTC securities, **3:126**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**
  - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
  - Substantive elements, **3:132**
- SEA § 18
  - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
  - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
  - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
  - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
  - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
  - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
  - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
  - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
  - Scienter, **3:135**
  - Securities excluded, **3:139**
  - Substantive elements, **3:145**
  - Statutory cumulativeness, **3:107**
  - Supreme Court approach, **3:104**
- Rule 10b-5 history generally, **3:32**
- SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:71**
- State law, **3:184**

### CONTRACT PLANNING

See **Transaction Planning** (this index)

### CONTRIBUTION

- Generally, **9:66 et seq.**
- Attorneys' fees, **9:75**

**CONTRIBUTION—Cont'd**

- Costs, **9:75**
- Court cases, **9:68**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Knowing defendants, **9:70**
- Limitation of actions, **9:74**
- Measure of, **9:73**
- Musick case, **9:68**
- Nonknowing defendants, **9:71**
- Proportionate liability and, **9:69**
- Settlement, **9:72**
- Statutory bases, **9:67**

**CONTROL, SALES OF**

- See also **Tender Offer Fraud** (this index)
- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:113**
- Conspiracies, **8:307**

**CONTROL PERSON LIABILITY**

- Generally, **7:451 et seq., 8:373 et seq.**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Actual control, **5:156**
- Broker-dealers
  - Generally, **7:456**
  - Good faith defense, **8:394 et seq.**
- B test, **7:456**
- Conspiracies
  - Generally, **8:304 et seq.**
  - Control, sales of, **8:307**
- Contribution to violation, **7:458**
- Corporate policy, control over, **8:382 et seq.**
- Court cases, **8:380 et seq.**
- Culpable participation, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**
- Disclosure of merger offers leading to board control changes, **6:61**
- Element of control, **8:379**
- Failure to act, **7:455**
- Good faith defense
  - Generally, **8:393 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **8:394 et seq.**
  - SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**
  - SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**
- Influence, proof of, **5:155**

**CONTROL PERSON LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - Failure to act, **7:455**
  - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
- Knowledge
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
- Private actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
- Reckless disregard
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Requirements, **7:452**
- Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
- Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
- A test, **7:453**
- Insider trading penalties imposed on, **7:440**
- Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
- Investment bankers for controlled companies, **5:175**
- Investment bankers for controlling companies, **5:177**
- Investment bankers representing controlled and controlling companies, **5:176**
- Joint and several liability
  - Generally, **9:33**
  - SA § 15, **9:25**
  - SEA § 20(a), **9:33**
- Knowledge
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

## INDEX

### CONTROL PERSON LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Law and fact questions, **8:381**  
Legislative history, **8:375**  
Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**  
Parking stock in control fights, **7:146**  
Participation, culpable, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**  
Parties and privity  
    Generally, **8:373 et seq.**  
    See also **Parties** (this index)  
Pleading  
    Affirmative conduct, **8:321**  
    Aiding-abetting, **8:324**  
    Choice of parties, **8:320**  
    Conspiracy, **8:325**  
    No affirmative conduct, **8:322**  
    Participation, **8:323**  
    Special elements, **8:326**  
Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**  
Potential control, **5:156**  
Privity  
    Implied liability, **8:281**  
    SA § 12(2), **8:271**  
    SA § 17(a), **8:281**  
    Sales fraud, **8:271**  
Proof of, **5:155**  
Proportionate liability, **9:53**  
Reckless disregard  
    Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**  
    Likelihood of violation, **7:454**  
Requirements, **7:452**  
Rule 10b-5 liability  
    Actions in concert, **8:294**  
    Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**  
    Concerted action, **8:294**  
    Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**  
    Inducement, **8:295**  
    Injunction suits, **8:303**  
    Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**  
    Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**  
    Participants, **8:292, 8:294**  
    Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**  
SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**  
Sales, unfair terms, **5:191**  
SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**

### CONTROL PERSON LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

Standard of participation, **8:377**  
Statutory language, **8:374**  
Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**  
Unfair terms in control sales, **5:191**  
Valuation of control premiums and discounts, **5:166**

### COOPERATION

SEC investigation, **20:15**

### COOPERATIVE APARTMENTS

Shares in as securities, **5:26**

### COORDINATED SEC-STATE-SRO INVESTIGATIONS

Generally, **13:322 et seq.**  
ARS securities and market, **13:325**  
ARS seller management liability, **13:330**  
ARS violations, **13:326**  
Auction Rate Security (ARS), generally, **13:323**  
Criminal aspects, **13:331**  
Government regulatory suits, **13:329**  
Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**  
Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**  
State law, private litigation, **13:328**

### CORNERING THE MARKET

Manipulation, **7:134**

### CORONAVIRUS

**Covid-19 Pandemic** (this index)

### CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Generally, **8:414**

### CORPORATE OFFICERS

See **Officers, Corporate** (this index)

### CORRECTION

Arbitration, challenging awards, **15:58**  
Private actions, correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

## **CORRUPTION**

Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:338**

## **COSTS AND EXPENSES**

Costs of enforcement, insiders and insider trading, **7:195**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), affirmative defense, **19:4**

## **COUNSEL, RIGHT TO**

See **Attorneys** (this index)

## **COURT DECISIONS**

Aider-abettor liability, **8:328 et seq.**

Arbitration provisions, validity of, **15:3, 15:71**

Asterisks, **1:2**

**Birnbaum Rule** (this index)

Broker-dealer supervision liabilities, **14:176**

Cady, Roberts & Co case, **App E**

Central Bank decision, **7:79, 7:85**

Chadbourn case, **3:217 et seq.**

Chiasson/Newman cases, **7:387 et seq.**

Citation formats, **1:3**

Contested cases, **1:16**

Contribution, **9:68**

Control person liability, **8:380 et seq.**

Cooper case, **8:419**

Corporate officers, Rule 10b-5 liabilities, **8:415 et seq.**

Damages

Benefit of bargain measure, **9:6**

Circuit Courts, **9:4 et seq.**

Consequential damages, **9:8**

Constructive trust measure, **9:7**

Disgorgement, **9:7**

District court confusion, **9:10**

Out-of-pocket measure, **9:5**

Supreme Court, **9:3**

Unjust enrichment, **9:7**

Directors, Rule 10b-5 liabilities, **8:415 et seq.**

Disclosures, **6:281**

Disgorgement, **9:42**

Fischman rationale, **3:135**

## **COURT DECISIONS—Cont'd**

Front running, **7:142**

Gould case, **8:417**

Grace case, **8:423**

Gutfreund case, **8:420**

Howey test, **5:22**

Implied liabilities under SRO rules, **14:64 et seq.**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP violations, **7:62 et seq.**

International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**

International transactions, **11:174**

IPA, current status of, **3:148 et seq.**

Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**

Joint and several liability, **9:42**

Lampf case, **11:63 et seq.**

Lipkind case, **11:63 et seq.**

Loss causation, private actions in Supreme Court decisions, **8:556 to 8:570**

Margin rules, **14:60**

Materiality tests

Mills case, **8:13**

TSC cases, **8:14**

McMahon case, **15:3, 15:71**

Mills case, **8:13, 8:558**

Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:582 et seq.**

Musick case, **9:68**

National Telephone case, **8:422**

Notations, **1:2**

Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**

Petigrow case, **11:63 et seq.**

Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**

Plaut case, **11:69**

Pleva case, **11:63 et seq.**

Post-Chadbourn cases, **3:220 to 3:222**

Private actions, Supreme Court decisions. **Private Actions** (this index)

Prupis case, **11:63 et seq.**

Recklessness, **11:141 et seq., 11:162 et seq., 14:83 et seq.**

Risk disclosures, **6:281**

Rodriguez case, **15:3, 15:71**

## INDEX

### COURT DECISIONS—Cont'd

- SA § 11, **14:6**
- Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
- SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:64 et seq.**
- Stirling Homex case, **8:416**
- Stoneridge case, **7:82, 7:83**
- TSC cases, **8:14**
- UBS Securities decision, proof of retaliatory intent under Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **22:24**
- Uncontested cases, **1:17**
- Unfairness
  - Generally, **5:183 et seq.**
  - Fair terms, **5:185**
  - SEC decisions, **5:186**
  - Unfair terms, **5:184**
- United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**
- United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**
- Ward La France Truck Corp case, **App D**
- What is a security
  - Generally, **5:20 et seq.**
  - Flexible fund annuities, **5:25**
  - Howey test, **5:22**
  - International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**
  - Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**
  - Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**
  - Marine Bank case, **5:28**
  - Reeves v. Ernst & Young case, **5:30**
  - SEC v. Edwards case, **5:31**
  - United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**
  - United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**
  - Variable annuities, **5:23**

### COVID-19 PANDEMIC

- Generally, **27:1 to 27:9**
- Class actions
  - Foreign companies, misleading disclosure re: impact and effect of Covid-19 on, **27:7**
  - Insider trading, **27:4**
  - Material nonpublic information, misuse of, **27:4**

### COVID-19 PANDEMIC—Cont'd

- Class actions—Cont'd
  - Misleading disclosures, **27:3, 27:5 to 27:7**
  - Misuse of material nonpublic information, **27:4**
  - Other Covid-19 related class actions, **27:8**
  - Private securities, **27:1**
  - Tests and treatments, misleading disclosure re:, **27:3**
  - Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: capacity of provider for remote learning to meet surge demand, **27:6**
  - Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: privacy and security for, **27:5**
- DOJ criminal actions, **27:2**
- Foreign companies, misleading disclosure re: impact and effect of Covid-19 on, class actions, **27:7**
- Insider trading, class actions, **27:4**
- Material nonpublic information, misuse of, class actions, **27:4**
- Misleading disclosures, class actions, **27:3, 27:5 to 27:7**
- Misuse of material nonpublic information, class actions, **27:4**
- Other Covid-19 related class actions, **27:8**
- Overview, **27:1**
- Private securities, class actions, **27:1**
- Private securities class actions related to, **27:1**
- Securities enforcement actions, **27:1, 27:2**
- Tests and treatments, misleading disclosure re:, class actions, **27:3**
- Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: capacity of provider for remote learning to meet surge demand, class actions, **27:6**
- Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: privacy and security for, class actions, **27:5**

**CREDIBILITY**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**CREDIT SUISSE SECURITIES**

**LITIGATION**

Coordinated investigations following  
subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:337**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

Generally, **13:121 et seq., 13:253 et  
seq.**

Actual knowledge, scienter, **8:176**

Administrative enforcement  
compared, SEC, **13:95**

Advantages and disadvantages

CFTC references, **13:262**

SEC references, **13:132**

Aider-abettor liability

Generally, **8:327 et seq., 8:372**

Absence of benefit, **8:366**

Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**

Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**

Definitions, **8:349**

Elements, **8:352**

Extent of benefit, **8:367**

High conscious intent, **8:358**

Janus Capital, preparation for or  
assistance to another, **8:336 et  
seq.**

Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et  
seq.**

Nature of benefit, **8:367**

Origins of doctrine, **8:351**

Presence of benefit, **8:365**

Primary violations, **8:355**

PSLRA, **8:347**

Requirements, **8:352**

SEA § 20(f), **8:348**

Substantial assistance

Generally, **8:359 et seq.**

Extraordinary actions, **8:362**

Inaction, **8:363**

Ordinary actions, **8:362**

Proximate cause, **8:360**

Silence, **8:363**

Timing, **8:361**

Ancillary relief

CFTC references, **13:260**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

**—Cont'd**

Ancillary relief—Cont'd

SEC references, **13:130**

Burden of proof, insider trading  
charges, **7:366**

CFTC references

Generally, **13:254**

Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:262**

Ancillary relief, **13:260**

Character, **13:253**

Collateral effects, **13:259**

Duration, **13:261**

Grand juries, **13:256**

Participation of agency, **13:255**

Plea bargaining, **13:257**

Proof standards, **13:258 et seq.**

Sentencing, **13:261**

Character

CFTC references, **13:253**

SEC references, **13:121**

Collateral effects

CFTC references, **13:259**

SEC references, **13:129**

Commodities fraud generally, **1:24**

Constructive knowledge, **8:187**

Continuations of civil proceedings,  
**13:137, 13:138**

Control person liability

Generally, **8:373 et seq.**

See also **Control Person Liability**  
(this index)

Coordinated SEC-state-SRO  
investigations, **13:331**

Defenses, **13:128**

Deferred prosecution agreement,  
JPMorgan/Madoff, **10:5**

Diligence, lack of, **8:236**

Discovery

Civil-criminal flow of information,  
**13:139**

Criminal-civil flow of information,  
**13:139.10, 13:141**

Failure to warn of criminal  
proceeding in civil proceed-  
ing, **13:142**



## INDEX

### CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT

#### —Cont'd

- Double jeopardy limitations, insider trading charges, **7:443**
- Duration
  - CFTC references, **13:261**
  - SEC references, **13:131**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)
- Global Ponzi scheme. **Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)
- Grand juries
  - CFTC references, **13:256**
  - SEC references, **13:124**
- Ignorance of law, **13:128**
- Implied Liability** (this index)
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:415 et seq., 7:460 et seq.**
  - See also **Administrative Enforcement** (this index)
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Burden of proof
    - Generally, **7:366**
    - Defenses, **7:369**
    - Institutions, **7:367**
  - Connection with requirement
    - Market transactions, **7:370**
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
    - Tender offers, **7:371**
  - Defenses
    - Generally, **7:350**
    - Amount defined, **7:355**
    - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
    - Burden of proving, **7:369**
    - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
    - Date defined, **7:357**
    - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
    - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**
    - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
    - Instructions defense, **7:352**
    - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
    - Price defined, **7:356**

### CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT

#### —Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Defenses—Cont'd
    - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
    - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
    - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
  - Martha Stewart case. Scienter, below in this group
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:578 et seq.**
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - New York district federal prosecutions, **App J**
  - Parties, **7:363**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **7:364**
    - Scienter, **7:398**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:368**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
  - Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**
  - Restitution, **7:465**
  - RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
    - Fiduciary theory
      - Tippers, **7:381**
      - Trading insiders, **7:377**
      - Trading tippees, **7:385**
    - Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
    - Martha Stewart case
      - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
      - Acquittal, **7:411**
      - Background of case, **7:404**
      - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
      - Indictment, **7:405**
      - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
      - Intent inference test, **7:410**
      - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

**—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
 Scienter—Cont'd  
   Martha Stewart case—Cont'd  
     Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
     Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**  
   Misappropriation theory  
     Tippers, **7:382**  
     Trading insiders, **7:378**  
     Trading tippees, **7:386**  
 Pleading, **7:398**  
 Proof, **7:399 et seq.**  
 Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**  
 Rule 14e-3, **7:412**  
 Tippers  
   Generally, **7:379 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:401**  
 Trading insiders  
   Generally, **7:375 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:400**  
 Trading tippees  
   Generally, **7:383 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:402**  
 Securities violations, **7:462**  
 Tippers, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
 Intent, **8:197**  
 Investigations  
   Generally, **13:1 et seq.**  
   See also **Investigations** (this index)  
 JPMorgan/Madoff, deferred prosecution agreement, **10:5**  
 Mail and wire fraud  
   Generally, **7:171, 7:463**  
   Scienter, **7:413**  
 Martha Stewart case  
   Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
   Acquittal, **7:411**  
   Background of case, **7:404**  
   Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
   Indictment, **7:405**  
   Inferences from evidence, **7:409**  
   Insiders and inside trading, generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
   Intent inference test, **7:410**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

**—Cont'd**

Martha Stewart case—Cont'd  
 Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**  
 Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
 Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
 Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**  
 Motion practice, **7:365**  
 Negligence and scienter, **8:236**  
 No-knowledge defenses, **13:128**  
 Parallel civil and criminal proceedings  
   Generally, **13:133 et seq.**  
   Battle over discovery, **13:135**  
   CFTC references, **13:263**  
   Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**  
   Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**  
   Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**  
   Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141, 13:143**  
   Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**  
   Discovery, **13:138, 13:139, 13:141, 13:142, 13:143**  
   Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**  
   Reasons for concern, **13:134**  
   SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**  
 Participation of agency  
   CFTC references, **13:255**  
   SEC references, **13:123**  
 Penalty actions  
   Generally, **7:438 et seq.**  
   See also **Securities and Exchange Commission** (this index)  
 Plea bargaining  
   CFTC references, **13:257**  
   SEC references, **13:125**  
 Pleadings, **7:364**  
 Private actions, scienter, **8:65**  
 Proof standards  
   CFTC references, **13:258 et seq.**  
   SEC references, **13:126 et seq.**

## INDEX

### CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT

#### —Cont'd

- Quantum of proof, **7:366**
- Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**
- References from administrative agencies
  - CFTC references, **13:254**
  - SEC references, **13:122**
  - SRO references, **13:304**
- Sanctions under rules generally, **3:4**
- Scienter
  - Actual knowledge, **8:176**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:187**
  - Diligence, lack of, **8:236**
  - Intent, **8:197**
  - Negligence, **8:236**
  - Private actions, **8:65**
  - SEC references, **13:127**
  - Unreasonable conduct, **8:236**
- SEC
  - Investigations, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
  - Raj Rajaratnam case, early investigation, **21:3**
  - References
    - Generally, **13:122**
    - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:132**
    - Ancillary relief, **13:130**
    - Character, **13:121**
    - Collateral effects, **13:129**
    - Defenses, **13:128**
    - Duration, **13:131**
    - Grand juries, **13:124**
    - Ignorance of law, **13:128**
    - No-knowledge defenses, **13:128**
    - Participation of agency, **13:123**
    - Plea bargaining, **13:125**
    - Proof standards, **13:126 et seq.**
    - Scienter, **13:127**
    - Sentencing, **13:131**
    - Willfulness, **13:127**
  - Role in, **10:1, 10:4**
- Securities fraud generally, **1:22**
- Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), effect of, **3:216**

### CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT

#### —Cont'd

- Sentencing
  - CFTC references, **13:261**
  - SEC references, **13:131**
- SRO references, **13:304**
- State investigations, **13:320**
- Touting, scienter, **8:99**
- Unreasonable conduct, **8:236**
- Whistleblowers, retaliation, **22:16**
- Willfulness, **13:127**

### CROSS TRADING

- Manipulation practices, **7:135**

### CROWDFUNDING

- Generally, **14:207 et seq.**
- Accredited investors, JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**
- Background, **14:207**
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:215**
- Disclosure, JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**
- Enforcement priorities, **14:208**
- Fraud, potential, **14:209, 14:212**
- History, **14:210 et seq.**
- Implementation, JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**
- JOBS Act, **14:214 et seq.**
- Kickstarter, **14:211**
- Loomi lampshade, **14:211**
- Ogre, **14:211**
- Portals, **14:217**
  - Description, **14:223**
- Proposed rules, reaction, **14:220, 14:221**
- Registration of securities, **14:216**
- Regulation A, application of law, **14:215**
- Regulation D, application of law, **14:215**
- Risk, **14:212**
- Safecast Geiger counter, **14:211**
- SEC rules and regulations, **14:216**
- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), **14:218**
- Solicitation, JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**
- State regulators, reaction, **14:222**

**CROWDFUNDING—Cont’d**

Vetting projects, **14:212**

**CRYPTOCURRENCIES**

Generally, **24:1**

Bitcoin, **25:3**

Cases in the southern district of NY, **24:5**

Class actions, **24:9**

Commodities, virtual currencies as, **25:6**

Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC)

Generally, **25:1 to 25:10**

Background, **25:3**

Bitcoin, **25:3**

Criminal activity, **25:4**

Enforcement actions, **25:8**

Jurisdiction, **25:2, 25:7**

Regulation and oversight, **25:5**

Spot markets, **25:7**

Statutory framework, **25:2**

Warning to investors, **25:9**

Criminal activity, **25:4**

Enforcement actions, **24:4**

CFTC, **25:8**

Insider trading cases, **24:8**

Jurisdiction of CFTC, **25:2, 25:7**

Private litigation, **24:9**

Regulation

CFTC, **25:5**

SEC, **24:1 to 24:9**

SEC

21(a) Report, **24:3**

Regulation by, **24:1 to 24:9**

SEC approach to cryptocurrencies prior to January, 2025, **24:2**

SEC v. Ripple Labs, **24:6**

Touting cases, **24:7**

**CUSTODIAN OF CLIENT ASSETS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**“CUSTOMER” UNDER  
SECURITIES INVESTOR  
PROTECTION ACT**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

**CYBERSECURITY**

Generally, **26:1 et seq.**

Broker-dealer, hacking of, **26:4, 26:5**

Customer data

Disclose hacking, failure to, **26:1**

Protect, failure to, **26:5**

Cyber breaches. Private securities litigation, cyber breaches, below

Disclose hacking, failure to, customer data, **26:1**

Failure to

Disclose hacking, **26:1**

Implement identity theft program, **26:4, 26:5**

Protect customer data, **26:5**

Final rule

Cybersecurity risk management, **26:9**

Governance, **26:9**

Incident disclosure, **26:9**

Strategy, **26:9**

Governance, final rule, **26:9**

Identity theft program, failure to implement, **26:4, 26:5**

Illegal trading, **26:2, 26:3**

Incident disclosure, final rule, **26:9**

Mergers and acquisitions, **26:2**

Misappropriation

Customer data, **26:5**

Non-public information, **26:2, 26:3**

Non-public information, misappropriation of, **26:2, 26:3**

Private securities litigation, cyber breaches

Class actions

Securities Act of 1933, **26:7**

Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Rule 10b-5, **26:6**

Fiduciary duties, **26:8**

Shareholder derivative actions, **26:8**

Regulation S-P, **26:4, 26:5**

Risk management, final rule, **26:9**

Safeguards rule, SEC, **26:4, 26:5**

Strategy, final rule, **26:9**

**DAMAGES**

Generally, **9:1 et seq.**

Ancillary remedies and, **9:17**

## INDEX

### DAMAGES—Cont'd

#### Arbitrations

- Attorneys' fees, **15:38**
- Costs, **15:38**
- Interest, **15:38**
- Mitigation of damages, **15:35**
- Punitive, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**

#### Attorneys' fees

- Generally, **9:18**
- Arbitrations, **15:38**
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:53**
- Contribution, **9:75**

#### Benefit of bargain measure, **9:6**

#### Broker-dealer liability

- Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**
- Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5, **14:95 et seq.**
- SA § 11, **14:15**

#### Causation, **8:553**

#### Churning, **14:136**

#### Civil Penalties (this index)

#### Class actions, **9:13**

#### Consequential damages, **9:8**

#### Constructive trust measure, **9:7**

#### Contribution (this index)

#### Costs

- Arbitrations, **15:38**
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:53**
- Contribution, **9:75**

#### Court cases

- Benefit of bargain measure, **9:6**
- Circuit Courts, **9:4 et seq.**
- Consequential damages, **9:8**
- Constructive trust measure, **9:7**
- Disgorgement, **9:7**
- District court confusion, **9:10**
- Out-of-pocket measure, **9:5**
- Supreme Court, **9:3**
- Unjust enrichment, **9:7**

#### Disgorgement (this index)

#### Enforcement action civil penalties

- CFTC, **13:238**
- Financial test, **13:238**
- SEC, **13:83**

#### Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)

- Generally, **8:520 et seq., 8:552**
- See also **Reliance** (this index)

### DAMAGES—Cont'd

#### Indemnification, **9:76**

#### Insider trading violations, **7:488**

#### Insurance, **9:76**

#### Interest, **15:38**

#### Joint and Several Liability (this index)

#### Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**

#### Market based price determinations, **8:525**

#### Multiple recoveries, **9:15**

#### Other damages, **9:14**

#### Out-of-pocket damages, broker-dealer liability, **14:103**

#### Out-of-pocket measure, court cases, **9:5**

#### Price, market based price determinations, **8:525**

#### Proportionate Liability (this index)

#### Punitive Damages (this index)

#### Reliance

##### Generally, **8:484 et seq.**

##### See also **Reliance** (this index)

##### Causation, **8:553**

##### Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:552**

#### Rescissional damages, **14:51**

#### Rule 10b-5, **14:95 et seq.**

#### SA § 11, **14:15**

#### SEA § 21D(e), **9:11**

#### Statutory bases, **9:2**

#### Unjust enrichment, **9:7**

### DAY TRADING

#### NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:284**

### DECEPTION

#### Generally, **5:79 et seq.**

#### Directors, deception of, **5:82**

#### Economic effect of deception, **5:84**

#### Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**

#### Meaning, **5:80**

#### Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**

#### Pleading, **5:88**

#### Policies, **5:87**

#### Reasons, **5:87**

#### Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**

#### Strict view, **5:81**

**DEFENSES**

**Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)

**DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS**

**Employee Benefit Plans** (this index)

**DEFINITIONS**

See also **What is a Security** (this index)

Aider-abettor, **8:349**

Causation, **5:90**

Churning, **14:138**

Customer, **15:10**

Direct-personal transactions, **1:2**

Manipulation, **7:119**

Materiality, **8:9**

Material nonpublic information, **7:152**

Mergers, **6:147**

MNPI, **7:152**

Opposite side traders, **7:494**

Parking, **7:144**

Prospectus, **3:41 et seq.**

Proxy, **6:208**

Same side traders, **7:495**

Scalping, **12:3**

Scienter, **8:155 et seq.**

Security. See **What is a Security** (this index)

Solicitation, **6:209**

Tip, **7:624**

Trade, **1:2**

Whistleblowers, **22:5, 22:23 et seq.**

**DEPOSITORY TRUST**

**CORPORATION (DTC)**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, BMIS account, **20:6**

**DERELICTION OF DUTIES**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5, 20:9**

**DERIVATIVE SUITS**

Class actions compared, **3:212**

Jurisdictional means, **11:43**

Private securities litigation, cyber breaches, **26:8**

Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act, effect on, **3:212**

**DEXIA v. BEAR STEARNS LITIGATION**

Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:335**

**DIGITAL REALTY TRUST, INC. v. SOMERS**

Whistleblowers, definition, **22:23 et seq.**

**DILIGENCE, LACK OF**

Generally, **8:229 et seq.**

See also **Due Diligence** (this index)

Burden of proof, **8:238**

Criminal cases, **8:236**

Injunctions, **8:234**

Insufficiency, **8:237**

Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**

Proof, **8:239**

Scienter, **8:234**

SEC decisions, **8:235**

Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**

Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:230**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

Generally, **6:1 et seq., 12:12**

Actual knowledge and scienter, **8:171**

Antifraud provisions

Materiality standard

Generally, **6:165 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:168**

Rule 14a-9, **6:166**

Rule 14c-6, **6:167**

Mergers, **6:151**

Scienter standard

Generally, **6:169 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**

Contested offers

Generally, **6:8 et seq.**

Mode of attack, **6:8**

Publicity, prefiling, **6:10**

Relief available, **6:9**

Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

##### Disclosure

Generally, **6:212 et seq., 6:267**

##### Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Aggregate materiality, **6:253**

Annual reports, **6:242**

Application of funds, **6:260**

##### Assets

Generally, **6:261 et seq.**

Existence of, **6:262**

Reasons, **6:273**

Value of assets, below

Balance, **6:229**

Buried facts, **6:232**

Cash flow, **6:260**

Clarity, **6:225**

Comparative tables, **6:219**

Consistency, **6:228**

Conspicuity. Prominence, below

Context, **6:235**

##### Corrections

Generally, **6:290 et seq., 6:321**

See also Supplementary communications, below

Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**

Blue sky laws, **6:292**

Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**

Common law, **6:291**

False reports to SEC, **6:313**

Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**

How long correction is necessary

Rule 14a-9, **6:304**

Rule 14c-6, **6:308**

SA § 11, **6:296**

How long is correction necessary

Generally, **6:323, 6:325**

Direct-personal transactions, **6:324**

Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**

How must correction be made

Rule 10b-5, **6:328**

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

##### Disclosure—Cont'd

##### Corrections—Cont'd

How must correction be made

—Cont'd

Rule 14a-9, **6:306**

Rule 14c-6, **6:310**

SA § 11, **6:298**

Market manipulation, **6:300**

Proxy fraud, **6:302**

Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5 requirements

Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**

How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**

How must correction be made, **6:328**

What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**

What must be corrected, **6:327**

Who entitled to correction, **6:328**

Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**

Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**

SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**

SA § 12(2), **6:293**

SA § 17(a), **6:299**

##### Sales fraud

Express liability, **6:293**

Implied liability, **6:299**

SEA § 9(a), **6:300**

SEA § 10, **6:301**

SEA § 14, **6:302**

SEC, false reports to, **6:313**

State law, **6:292**

Tender offer fraud, **6:311**

What makes correction necessary

Generally, **6:319**

Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**

Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**

Rule 14a-9, **6:303**

Rule 14c-6, **6:307**



**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING  
—Cont'd**

Disclosure—Cont'd  
 Corrections—Cont'd  
   What makes correction necessary—Cont'd  
     SA § 11, **6:295**  
   What must be corrected  
     Rule 10b-5, **6:327**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:305**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:309**  
     SA § 11, **6:297**  
   Who entitled to correction  
     Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
     SA § 11, **6:298**  
 Cross references, **6:233**  
 Detail, **6:234**  
 Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**  
 Earnings  
   Generally, **6:254**  
   Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**  
   Interim, **6:259**  
   Misrepresentations, **6:255**  
   Nondisclosure of, **6:257**  
   Predictions, **6:255**  
 Exchange offers, **6:12**  
 Form and substance, **6:235**  
 Interim earnings, **6:259**  
 Interpretation, **6:236**  
 Level, **6:227**  
 Locus, **6:214 et seq.**  
 Materiality  
   Generally, **6:248 et seq.**  
   Aggregate, **6:253**  
   Might, use of term, **6:249**  
   Practical problems, **6:251**  
   Probably would, use of term, **6:250**  
   Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**  
   Would, use of term, **6:249**  
 Misrepresentations  
   Earnings, **6:255**  
   Value of assets  
     Generally, **6:270**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING  
—Cont'd**

Disclosure—Cont'd  
 Misrepresentations—Cont'd  
   Value of assets—Cont'd  
     Defenses, **6:271**  
     Precautions, **6:272**  
 Numerical information, **6:237**  
 Opposition communications, **6:247**  
 Organization, **6:226**  
 Overall effect, **6:238**  
 Predictions, earning, **6:255**  
 Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**  
 Prominence  
   Generally, **6:230 et seq.**  
   Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**  
   Similar emphasis, **6:231**  
 Public sales, **6:12**  
 Repetition, **6:233**  
 Risk  
   Generally, **6:275 et seq.**  
   CFTC requirements, **6:289**  
   Context, **6:275**  
   Court cases, **6:281**  
   Day trading, **6:284**  
   Extended hour trading, **6:285**  
   Margin trading, **6:286**  
   NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**  
   Plain English requirements, **6:278**  
   Safe harbor, **6:282**  
   SA filings, **6:279**  
   SEA filings, **6:280**  
   Short selling, **6:287**  
   Specific requirements, **6:277**  
   Uninsured products, **6:288**  
 Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**  
 SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**  
 Scattered facts, **6:232**  
 SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**  
 SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**  
 Sources of funds, **6:260**  
 Sources of requirements  
   Generally, **6:220 et seq.**  
   Antifraud provisions, **6:222**  
   Specific items, **6:221**  
   Timing, **6:223**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Disclosure—Cont'd
    - Specific information requirements, **6:2**
    - Style, **6:224 et seq.**
  - Supplementary communications
    - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
    - See also Corrections, above
  - Advance letters
    - Proxy rules, **6:240**
    - Registration under SA, **6:241**
  - Annual reports, **6:242**
  - Cover letters, **6:243**
  - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
  - Generally available information, **6:246**
  - Other communications, **6:245**
  - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
  - Timing requirements, **6:223**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
    - Firm offers, **6:265**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Misrepresentation
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Distributions
    - Generally, **6:4**
  - Disclosure, **6:12**
  - Exchange offers, below
  - Registered offerings, **6:5**
  - Unregistered offerings, **6:6**
- Exchange offers
    - Generally, **6:4, 6:7**
  - Contested offers
    - Generally, **6:8 et seq.**
    - Mode of attack, **6:8**
    - Publicity, prefilings, **6:10**

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Exchange offers—Cont'd
  - Contested offers—Cont'd
    - Relief available, **6:9**
    - Standing to challenge, **6:11**
  - Disclosure, **6:12**
  - Registered offerings, **6:5**
  - Unregistered offerings, **6:6**
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also **Reliance** (this index)
- Issuer tender offers
  - Generally, **6:141**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
  - Price, **6:142**
  - Redemptions, **6:145**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
- Market-informing responsibilities, **12:7**
- Mediation, **15:69**
- Mergers
  - Generally, **6:146 et seq.**
- Antifraud provisions
  - Generally, **6:158 et seq.**
  - Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**
- Causation
  - Generally, **6:179 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:181**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:179**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:180**
- Comparative language, **6:164**
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **6:183 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:185**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:183**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:184**
- Federal laws generally, **6:151**
- Jurisdictional means
  - Generally, **6:188 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:190**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**
- Materiality standard
  - Generally, **6:165 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:168**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:166**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:167**
- Operation, areas of, **6:163**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Mergers—Cont'd  
 Antifraud provisions—Cont'd  
   Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**  
   Privity  
     Generally, **6:172 et seq.**  
     Rule 10b-5, **6:175**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:173**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:174**  
   Reliance  
     Generally, **6:176 et seq.**  
     Rule 10b-5, **6:178**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:176**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:177**  
   Rule 10b-5, relation of proxy rules to, **6:159 et seq.**  
   Rule 10b-5 private actions, **6:162**  
   Rule 14a-9 private actions, **6:160**  
   Rule 14c-6 private actions, **6:161**  
   Scienter standard  
     Generally, **6:169 et seq.**  
     Rule 10b-5, **6:171**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:169**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:170**  
   SEA § 14(e), **6:186**  
   Securities Act, **6:187**  
   State law  
     Generally, **6:191 et seq.**  
     Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**  
     Delaware law, **6:196**  
     Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**  
     Equitable approach, **6:197**  
     Standing approach, **6:196**  
     Violations covered, **6:164**  
 Background, **6:148 et seq.**  
 Congressional intent  
   Generally, **6:154 et seq.**  
   Information statement rules, **6:156**  
   Proxy rules, **6:155**  
   Rule 10b-5, **6:157**  
   SEA § 14(a), **6:155**  
   SEA § 14(c), **6:156**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Mergers—Cont'd  
 Definition, **6:147**  
 Disclosures  
   Generally, **6:212 et seq.**  
   Advance letters  
     Proxy rules, **6:240**  
     Registration under SA, **6:241**  
   Aggregate materiality, **6:253**  
   Annual reports, **6:242**  
   Application of funds, **6:260**  
   Assets  
     Generally, **6:261 et seq.**  
     Existence of, **6:262**  
     Reasons, **6:273**  
   Balance, **6:229**  
   Buried facts, **6:232**  
   Cash flow, **6:260**  
   Clarity, **6:225**  
   Comparative tables, **6:219**  
   Congressional intent, **6:156**  
   Consistency, **6:228**  
   Conspicuity. Prominence, below  
   Context, **6:235**  
   Cross references, **6:233**  
   Detail, **6:234**  
   Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**  
   Earnings  
     Generally, **6:254**  
     Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**  
     Interim, **6:259**  
     Misrepresentations, **6:255**  
     Nondisclosure of, **6:257**  
     Predictions, **6:255**  
   Form and substance, **6:235**  
   Interim earnings, **6:259**  
   Interpretation, **6:236**  
   Level, **6:227**  
   Locus, **6:214 et seq.**  
   Materiality  
     Generally, **6:248 et seq.**  
     Aggregate, **6:253**  
     Might, use of term, **6:249**  
     Practical problems, **6:251**  
     Probably would, use of term, **6:250**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Materiality—Cont'd
    - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
    - Would, use of term, **6:249**
- Misrepresentations
  - Earnings, **6:255**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
- Numerical information, **6:237**
- Opposition communications, **6:247**
- Organization, **6:226**
- Overall effect, **6:238**
- Predictions, earning, **6:255**
- Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**
- Prominence
  - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
  - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
  - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
- Repetition, **6:233**
- Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**
- SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**
- Scattered facts, **6:232**
- SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**
- SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**
- Sources of funds, **6:260**
- Sources of requirements
  - Generally, **6:220 et seq.**
  - Antifraud provisions, **6:222**
  - Specific items, **6:221**
  - Timing, **6:223**
- Style, **6:224 et seq.**
- Supplementary communications
  - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
  - Advance letters
    - Proxy rules, **6:240**
    - Registration under SA, **6:241**
  - Annual reports, **6:242**

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Supplementary communications—Cont'd
    - Cover letters, **6:243**
    - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
    - Generally available information, **6:246**
    - Other communications, **6:245**
    - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
  - Timing requirements, **6:223**
- Value of assets
  - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - Firm offers, **6:265**
  - Hard data, **6:264**
- Misrepresentations
  - Generally, **6:270**
  - Defenses, **6:271**
  - Precautions, **6:272**
- Modified view
  - Disposition plans, **6:266**
  - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Other situations, **6:268**
- Policies, **6:269**
- Reasons, **6:269**
- Replacement costs, **6:267**
- Traditional view, **6:263**

Federal laws

- Generally, **6:149**
- Antifraud provisions, **6:151**
- Proxy rules, **6:150**
- SA registration requirements, **6:152**

Private actions

- Generally, **6:160 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5, **6:162**
- Rule 14a-9, **6:160**
- Rule 14c-6, **6:161**

Proxy solicitations

- Generally, **6:198 et seq.**

Scope of regulations

- Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
- Annual reports, **6:211**
- Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
- Proxy defined, **6:208**
- Solicitation defined, **6:209**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Mergers—Cont'd  
 Proxy solicitations—Cont'd  
   Securities covered  
     Generally, **6:199 et seq.**  
     Insurance companies  
       Generally, **6:201**  
       Antifraud provisions,  
         federal, **6:204**  
       Federal and state rules,  
         **6:202**  
       McCarran Act, **6:203**  
       Investment companies, **6:205**  
       Public utility holding  
         companies, **6:206**  
 SA registration requirements,  
   **6:152**  
 Scope of regulations  
   Generally, **6:207 et seq.**  
   Annual reports, **6:211**  
   Excluded solicitations, **6:210**  
   Proxy defined, **6:208**  
   Solicitation defined, **6:209**  
 State law  
   Generally, **6:153**  
   Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**  
 Organization of treatise, **4:1**  
 Personal and impersonal dealings,  
   **4:1**  
 Proxy solicitations  
   Generally, **6:198 et seq.**  
   See also **Proxy Fraud** (this index)  
   Mergers, **6:198 et seq.**  
   Nonmerger solicitations, **6:274**  
   Scope of regulations  
     Generally, **6:207 et seq.**  
     Annual reports, **6:211**  
     Excluded solicitations, **6:210**  
     Proxy defined, **6:208**  
     Solicitation defined, **6:209**  
 Securities covered  
   Generally, **6:199 et seq.**  
   Insurance companies  
     Generally, **6:201**  
     Antifraud provisions, federal,  
       **6:204**  
     Federal and state rules, **6:202**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Proxy solicitations—Cont'd  
 Securities covered—Cont'd  
   Insurance companies—Cont'd  
     McCarran Act, **6:203**  
   Investment companies, **6:205**  
   Public utility holding  
     companies, **6:206**  
 Publicity, prefiling, **6:10**  
 Public sales  
   Generally, **6:4**  
   Disclosure, **6:12**  
   Exchange offers, above, **6:7**  
   Registered offerings, **6:5**  
   Unregistered offerings, **6:6**  
 Registered offerings, **6:5**  
 Reliance  
   Generally, **8:484 et seq.**  
   See also **Reliance** (this index)  
 Risk disclosures. Disclosures, above  
 Rule 10b-5  
   Application to, **3:28**  
   Responsibilities generally, **12:7**  
 Scienter and actual knowledge, **8:171**  
 Standing to challenge transaction,  
   tender offers  
     Generally, **6:124**  
     Implied rights, **6:124**  
     Issuer offers, **6:143**  
     Nontendering offerees, **6:126**  
     Offerees, **6:125**  
     Offerors, **6:129**  
     Target companies, **6:128**  
   Tenderees  
     Nontendering, **6:126**  
     Undecided, **6:127**  
   Tendering offerees, **6:125**  
   Third parties, **6:130**  
 State law appraisal rights, **6:192,**  
   **6:193**  
 Tender offers  
   Banks, regulation of, **6:29**  
   Challenging  
     Relief available  
       Generally, **6:131 et seq.**  
       Balance of equities, **6:134**  
       Clean hands, **6:136**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Challenging—Cont'd
  - Relief available—Cont'd
    - Final relief, **6:140**
    - Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**
    - Irreparable injuries, **6:133**
    - Preliminary, **6:131 et seq.**
    - Probability of success, **6:132**
    - Proof elements, **6:132**
    - SEC actions, **6:138**
    - Time for relief, **6:139**
    - Types of relief, **6:135**
  - Standing to challenge, below
- Congressional intent
  - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
- Disclosure, **6:17**
- Fairness, **6:19**
- Investor protection, **6:17**
- Target management protection, **6:18**
- Definitions, **6:31**
- Disclosure requirements
  - Regulated offers
    - Generally, **6:41**
    - Arrangements, **6:47**
    - Changes, effects of
      - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Control change information, **6:61**
  - Control purposes, **6:64**
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
  - SEC filings, **6:52**
  - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
- Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
- Fund source data, **6:44**
- Groups, data on, **6:48**
- Ideas vs plans, **6:68**

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
  - Issuer offers, **6:144**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Offeror data, **6:42**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:45, 6:66 et seq.**
- Publicity
  - Offeror, **6:94**
  - Target company, **6:98**
  - Third persons, **6:108**
- Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
- Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
- SEC filings
  - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
  - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
  - Date of information, **6:52**
  - Other disseminations, **6:54**
  - Processing, **6:53**
  - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
  - Time of filing, **6:50**
- Securities, data on, **6:46**
- Ten percent threshold
  - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
  - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
  - Date of information, **6:57**
  - Exemptions, **6:60**
  - Other disseminations, **6:59**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
  - SEC processing, **6:58**
- Understandings, **6:47**
- Unregulated offers
  - Generally, **6:113**
- Insiders, **6:114**
- Outsiders
  - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
  - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
  - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
  - Other information, **6:118**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING  
—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
  - Unregulated offers—Cont'd
  - Outsiders—Cont'd
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Target company, **6:121**
  - Third persons, **6:122**
- Disclosures, corrections, **6:311**
- Duration of offer, **6:89**
- Exchange offers, **6:36**
- Five percent offers
  - Generally, **6:32**
  - Base for percentages, **6:34**
- Foreign laws, **6:15**
- Insiders, offers by
  - Generally, **6:111**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
- Issuer offers
  - Generally, **6:141**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
  - Price, **6:142**
  - Redemptions, **6:145**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
- Medium of payment, **6:36**
- Outsiders, offers by
  - Generally, **6:112**
- Disclosures
  - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
  - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
  - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
  - Other information, **6:118**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
  - Policy factors, **6:120**
- Price
  - Increases, effect of, **6:90 et seq.**
  - Issuer offers, **6:142**
  - Third-party offers, **6:123**
- Regulated offers
  - Generally, **6:13 et seq., 6:33**
  - Antifraud provisions, applicability to
    - Generally, **6:22 et seq.**
    - Connection, **6:26**
    - Jurisdictional means, **6:27**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING  
—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
  - Antifraud provisions, applicability to—Cont'd
  - Opposition, applicability to, **6:23**
  - Proxy rules, **6:24**
  - SEA § 14(e), **6:24**
- Banks, coverage of, **6:29**
- Congressional intent
  - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
- Disclosure, **6:17**
- Fairness, **6:19**
- Investor protection, **6:17**
- Target management protection, **6:18**
- Coverage, **6:28 et seq.**
- Definitional exclusions, **6:40**
- Definitions, **6:31**
- Disclosure requirements
  - Generally, **6:41**
  - Arrangements, **6:47**
  - Changes, effects of
    - Generally, **6:49**
  - SEC filings, **6:52**
  - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
- Control change information, **6:61**
- Control purposes, **6:64**
- Date of information
  - Generally, **6:49**
- SEC filings, **6:52**
- Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
- Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
- Funds, source of, **6:44**
- Fund source data, **6:44**
- Groups, data on, **6:48**
- Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
- Issuer offers, **6:144**
- Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**



## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
      - Offer data, **6:43**
      - Offeror data, **6:42**
      - Ownership, **6:55**
      - Plans, **6:45**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:66 et seq.**
    - Publicity
      - Offeror, **6:94**
      - Target company, **6:98**
      - Third persons, **6:108**
    - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
    - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
    - SEC filings
      - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
      - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
      - Date of information, **6:52**
      - Other disseminations, **6:54**
      - Processing, **6:53**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
      - Time of filing, **6:50**
    - Securities, data on, **6:46**
    - Ten percent threshold
      - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
      - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
      - Date of information, **6:57**
      - Exemptions, **6:60**
      - Other disseminations, **6:59**
      - Ownership, **6:55**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
      - SEC processing, **6:58**
    - Understandings, **6:47**
  - Duration of offer, **6:89**
  - Exchange offers, **6:36**
  - Excluded offers, **6:38 et seq.**
  - Express exclusions, **6:39**
  - Five percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Foreign laws, **6:15**
  - Insurance companies, **6:30**

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Market activities
      - Offeror
        - Before offer, **6:97**
        - During offer, **6:96**
      - Target company
        - Generally, **6:106 et seq.**
        - Filing, **6:107**
        - Information to be disclosed, **6:107**
        - Scope of regulation, **6:106**
      - Third persons, **6:109**
    - Medium of payment, **6:36**
    - Opposition, applicability of antifraud provisions to, **6:23**
    - Price increases, effect of
      - Generally, **6:90 et seq.**
      - Exemptions, **6:93**
      - Procedure, **6:92**
      - Purpose of requirement, **6:91**
    - Proxy rule antifraud provisions, applicability to, **6:24**
    - Publicity
      - Offeror
        - Before offer, **6:95**
        - During offer, **6:94**
      - Target company
        - Generally, **6:98**
        - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
        - Change, effect of, **6:101**
        - Date of information, **6:101**
        - Exemptions, **6:103**
        - Other disseminations, **6:102**
        - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
        - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
        - Time of filing, **6:99**
      - Third persons, **6:108**
    - Recommendations
      - Offeror
        - Before offer, **6:95**
        - During offer, **6:94**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
- Recommendations—Cont'd
- Target company
  - Generally, **6:98**
  - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
  - Change, effect of, **6:101**
  - Date of information, **6:101**
  - Exemptions, **6:103**
  - Other disseminations, **6:102**
  - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
  - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
  - Time of filing, **6:99**
- Third persons, **6:108**
- Scope
  - Generally, **6:28, 6:31 et seq.**
  - Definitions, **6:31**
  - Exchange offers, **6:36**
  - Five percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:35**
  - Medium of payment, **6:36**
  - Special bids, **6:37**
  - Two percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
- SEA § 14(e) antifraud provisions, **6:24**
- Special bids, **6:37**
- State laws, **6:14**
- Ten day pro rata takeover
  - Generally, **6:85, 6:85 et seq.**
  - Exemptions, **6:88**
  - Procedures, **6:87**
  - Purpose, **6:86**
- Terms
  - Generally, **6:75 et seq.**
  - Applicability, **6:78**
  - Duration of offer, **6:89**
  - Freedom of offerer, degrees of, **6:75**
  - Relation to other provisions, **6:77**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
- Terms—Cont'd
  - Scope of requirements, **6:76**
  - Time factors, importance of, **6:79**
  - Voluntary withdrawal rights, **6:84**
  - Withdrawal rights
    - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
    - Exemptions, **6:83**
    - Procedure, **6:82**
    - Purpose, **6:81**
    - Requirement, **6:80**
    - Voluntary, **6:84**
- Two percent offers
  - Generally, **6:32**
  - Base for percentages, **6:34**
- Voluntary withdrawal rights, **6:84**
- Williams Bill, **6:13**
- Withdrawal rights
  - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
  - Exemptions, **6:83**
  - Procedure, **6:82**
  - Purpose, **6:81**
  - Voluntary, **6:84**
- Special bids, **6:37**
- Standing to challenge
  - Generally, **6:124**
  - Implied rights, **6:124**
  - Issuer offers, **6:143**
  - Nontendering offerees, **6:126**
  - Offerees, tendering, **6:125**
  - Offerors, **6:129**
  - Target companies, **6:128**
- Tenderees
  - Nontendering, **6:126**
  - Undecided, **6:127**
  - Tendering offerees, **6:125**
  - Third parties, **6:130**
- State laws, **6:14**
- Target company disclosures, **6:121**
- Third party offers, **6:13 et seq.**
- Third persons disclosures, **6:122**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

##### Tender offers—Cont'd

###### Two percent offers

Generally, **6:32**

Base for percentages, **6:34**

###### Unregulated offers

Generally, **6:110**

###### Disclosure requirements

Generally, **6:113**

Insiders, **6:114**

###### Outsiders

Generally, **6:115 et seq.**

Issuer, information about,  
**6:117**

Offer, identity of, **6:119**

Other information, **6:118**

Plans and proposals, **6:116**

Policy factors, **6:120**

Target company, **6:121**

Third persons, **6:122**

###### Insiders

Generally, **6:111**

Disclosure requirements,  
**6:114**

###### Outsiders

Generally, **6:112**

###### Disclosures

Generally, **6:115 et seq.**

Issuer, information about,  
**6:117**

Offer, identity of, **6:119**

Other information, **6:118**

Plans and proposals, **6:116**

Policy factors, **6:120**

Target company, disclosures,  
**6:121**

Third persons, disclosures,  
**6:122**

Williams Bill, **6:13**

**Transaction Planning** (this index)

Types of direct-impersonal dealings,  
**6:1**

**What is a Security** (this index)

### DIRECTORS, CORPORATE

Generally, **8:413**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

### DIRECTORS, CORPORATE

#### —Cont'd

##### Audit committees

Generally, **8:449 et seq.**

Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**

Backdating of stock options,  
resignations, **18:7**

Background, **8:449**

Definitions, **8:449**

Financial experts, **8:459**

Legislative standards, **8:450**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act standards

Generally, **8:450 et seq.**

Administrative implementation,  
**8:451**

Advisers, **8:455**

Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**

Complaint procedures, **8:454**

Enforcement, **8:458**

Exemptions, **8:457**

Financial experts, **8:459**

Funding, **8:456**

Independence requirements,  
**8:452**

Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**

Backdating of stock options, resigna-  
tions, **18:3, 18:7**

Bar orders against individuals, **13:87**

Blackout period trading prohibitions,  
**8:472, 8:475**

Collateral bar orders against  
individuals, **13:87, 13:88**

Conflict of interest, **8:417**

Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**

Corporate governance, **8:414**

Correction of violations, responsibil-  
ity for, **8:418**

Ethics codes, **8:483**

Financial experts, **8:459**

Indemnification, **9:76**

Injunctions against, **13:117**

Insider trading liability, **7:649**

Inside trading reports, **8:471**

Insurance, **9:76**

Internal controls, **8:466**

Loan prohibitions, **8:481**

## DIRECTORS, CORPORATE

### —Cont'd

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, director of operations, **20:8**
- Market, responsibilities to inform
  - Business changes, **8:422**
  - Grace case, **8:423**
  - National Telephone case, **8:422**
  - Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
- Mutual fund violations, **17:20**
- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:413 et seq.**
  - See also **Parties** (this index)
- Prevention of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Responsibilities, **8:413**
- Rule 10b-5 liabilities
  - Generally, **8:413 et seq.**
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Backdating of stock options, violations of federal securities laws, **18:3, 18:10**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Conflict of interest, **8:417**
  - Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
  - Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
  - Cooper case, **8:419**
  - Corporate governance, **8:414**
  - Correction of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
  - Court cases, **8:415 et seq.**
  - Gould case, **8:417**
  - Gutfreund case, **8:420**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Informed, responsibility to be, **8:415 et seq.**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Market, responsibilities to inform
    - Business changes, **8:422**
    - Grace case, **8:423**
    - National Telephone case, **8:422**

## DIRECTORS, CORPORATE

### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5 liabilities—Cont'd
- Market, responsibilities to inform
  - Cont'd
  - Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
- Participants generally, **8:292**
- Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Prevention of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Stirling Homex case, **8:416**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities
  - Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**
  - Blackout periods, **8:472, 8:475**
  - Certification, **8:462**
  - Ethics codes, **8:483**
  - Financial experts, **8:459**
  - Inside trading reports, **8:471**
  - Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
- Regulation
  - Generally, **8:461 et seq.**
  - Acquisition method, **8:474**
  - Bar from office, **8:482**
  - Blackout periods, **8:475**
  - Blackout trading prohibitions, **8:472**
  - Certification, **8:462**
  - Disclosure controls, **8:466**
  - Enforcement, **8:476**
  - Ethics codes, **8:483**
  - Evaluations, **8:468**
  - Exemptions, **8:479**
  - Fair presentation, **8:465**
  - Forfeiture on accounting restatement, **8:480**
  - Inside trading reports, **8:471**
  - Internal controls, **8:466**

## INDEX

### DIRECTORS, CORPORATE

#### —Cont'd

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities
  - Cont'd
  - Regulation—Cont'd
  - Liability, **8:476**
  - Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
  - Non-financial information, **8:467**
  - Notice, **8:478**
  - Profit measure, **8:477**
  - Regulation BTR, **8:473**
  - Response to evidence of violations, **8:470**
  - SEC implementation, **8:464, 8:473**
  - Section 302 legislation, **8:463**
  - Section 906, **8:469**
  - Regulation BTR, **8:473**
- Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:9**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

- Generally, **5:1 et seq., 5:53 et seq., 5:141 et seq.**
- Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
- Actual knowledge and scienter, **8:170**
- Arms length transactions
  - Generally, **5:144**
  - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
- Birmbaun canon, **5:70 et seq.**
- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Generally, **14:2 et seq.**
  - See also **Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)
  - Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
  - Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
  - Burden of proof, **14:42**
  - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
  - Churning** (this index)
  - Class actions
    - SA § 11, **14:18**
    - SA § 12, **14:57**
  - Costs, **14:53**
  - Damages
    - Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**
    - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Debt securities markups, **14:163**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Due diligence defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - SEC view, **14:9**
  - Express actions
    - Generally, **14:2 et seq.**
    - Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
  - Broker as defendant
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:20**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:28**
  - Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
  - Burden of proof, **14:42**
  - Class actions
    - SA § 11, **14:18**
    - SA § 12, **14:57**
  - Costs, **14:53**
  - Damages, **14:46, 14:51**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - Interest, **14:48**
  - Limitation of actions, **14:17**
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
  - Misrepresentations, **14:39**
  - Offerors, brokers as
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**
  - Omissions, **14:39**
  - In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
  - Privity, **14:34**
  - Proximate cause, **14:35**
  - Punitive damages, **14:54**
  - Purchaser, plaintiff as
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**
  - Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
  - Reasonable investigation defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
    - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
  - Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**
  - Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**

## DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

### —Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
- Express actions—Cont'd
  - SA § 11
    - Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**
    - Court cases, **14:6**
    - Damages, **14:15**
    - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
    - Later filings, effect of, **14:10**
    - Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**
    - Participating underwriters, **14:13**
    - Policy considerations, **14:12**
    - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**
    - SEC Rule 176, **14:7**
    - SEC Rule 412, **14:7**
    - SEC view of due diligence techniques, **14:9**
  - SA § 12(a)(1)
    - Generally, **14:19 et seq.**
    - Broker as defendant, **14:20**
    - Class actions, **14:57**
    - Exemptions from SA § 5, **14:24**
    - Limitation of actions, **14:25**
    - Offerors, brokers as, **14:22**
    - In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
    - Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:23**
    - Sellers, brokers as, **14:22**
    - Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**
  - SA § 12(a)(2)
    - Generally, **14:27 et seq.**
    - Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
    - Broker as defendant, **14:28**
    - Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
    - Burden of proof, **14:42**
    - Class actions, **14:57**
    - Costs, **14:53**
    - Damages, **14:46, 14:51**
    - Interest, **14:48**
    - Limitation of actions, **14:56**
    - Misrepresentations, **14:39**

## DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

### —Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
- Express actions—Cont'd
  - SA § 12(a)(2)—Cont'd
    - Offerors, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**
    - Omissions, **14:39**
    - Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**
    - Privity, **14:34**
    - Proximate cause, **14:35**
    - Punitive damages, **14:54**
    - Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:44**
    - Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
    - Reasonable care, **14:43**
    - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**
    - Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**
    - Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**
    - SEA § 10(b) and, overlap between, **14:55**
    - Sellers, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**
    - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**
    - Tax considerations, **14:48**
    - Tender, **14:49**
    - Transactional coverage, **14:58**
  - Sellers, brokers as
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**
  - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**
  - Tax considerations, **14:48**
  - Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**
- Express actions, SA § 11
  - Due diligence defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - SEC view, **14:9**
  - Reasonable investigation defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
- Underwriters
  - Generally, **14:4**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Express actions, SA § 11—Cont'd
  - Underwriters—Cont'd
  - Due diligence, **14:14**
- Implied actions
- Margin rules
  - Generally, **14:59**
  - Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
  - Court cases, **14:60**
  - SEA § 7, **14:59**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **14:94**
  - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
  - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Elements of action, **14:74**
  - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
  - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
  - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
  - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
  - Materiality, **14:82**
  - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
  - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Proximate cause, **14:92**
  - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Restitution, **14:104**
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
- SRO rules
  - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Implied actions—Cont'd
  - SRO rules—Cont'd
  - Arbitration, **14:72**
  - Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**
  - Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**
  - Contraction era, **14:71**
  - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
- Implied actions, Rule 10b-5, rescission
  - Chasins measure, **14:97**
  - Lost profits, **14:101**
  - Nye measure, **14:101**
  - Rolf measure, **14:100**
- Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
- Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
- Limitation of actions, express actions
  - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
- Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**
- Markup and markdown practices
  - Generally, **14:148 et seq.**
- Basis
  - Generally, **14:150 et seq.**
  - Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**
  - Dominating market makers, **14:154**
  - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
  - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
  - Market-makers, retail, **14:153**
  - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
  - NASD criteria, **14:157 et seq.**
  - Non dominating market makers, **14:160**
  - Retailer market makers, **14:153**



## **DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

### **—Cont'd**

Broker-dealers, actions against  
     —Cont'd  
     Markup and markdown practices  
         —Cont'd  
         Basis—Cont'd  
             SEC criteria, **14:150 et seq.**  
         Debt securities markups, **14:163**  
         Disclosure, **14:149**  
         Five percent policy, **14:162**  
         Inter-dealer prices, availability  
             of, **14:155**  
         Inter-dealer trades, frequency of,  
             **14:158**  
         Market maker status, **14:152 et**  
             **seq.**  
     Markup and markdown practices,  
         basis  
         Contemporaneous defined  
             NASD criteria, **14:161**  
             SEC criteria, **14:156**  
         Non market makers  
             NASD criteria, **14:159**  
             SEC criteria, **14:152**  
     Materiality, **14:82**  
     Misrepresentations, **14:39**  
     Offerors, brokers as, **14:22, 14:29**  
         **et seq.**  
     Omissions, **14:39**  
     Opinions, **14:81**  
     Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**  
     In pari delicto defense, express  
         actions, **14:21**  
     **Penny Stock Sales** (this index)  
     Predictions, **14:81**  
     Privity, **14:34**  
     Proximate cause  
         Generally, **14:92**  
         Express actions, **14:35**  
     Punitive damages  
         Generally, **14:106 et seq.**  
         Express actions, **14:54**  
     Purchaser, plaintiff as  
         SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**  
         SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**  
     Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**

## **DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

### **—Cont'd**

Broker-dealers, actions against  
     —Cont'd  
     Reasonable investigation defense  
         Generally, **14:5**  
         Integrated disclosure systems,  
             **14:7**  
         SEC Rule 176, **14:8**  
     Reasonable investigation require-  
         ment  
         SA § 11, **14:11**  
         SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**  
     Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**  
     Recommendations, **14:81**  
     Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**  
     Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**  
     Rescission  
         Chasins measure, **14:97**  
         Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**  
         Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**  
         Lost profits, **14:101**  
         Nye measure, **14:101**  
         Rolf measure, **14:100**  
     Restitution, **14:104**  
     Rule 10b-5  
         Generally, **14:73 et seq.**  
         Causation, **14:91 et seq.**  
         Connection requirement, **14:94**  
         Contraction era, compensatory  
             damages in, **14:105**  
         Damages, **14:95 et seq.**  
         Elements of action, **14:74**  
         Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**  
         Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**  
         Justifiable reliance, **14:89**  
         Market misrepresentations,  
             **14:78**  
         Market nondisclosures, **14:79**  
         Materiality, **14:82**  
         Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**  
         Mitigation of damages, **14:102**  
         Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**  
         Opinions, **14:81**  
         Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**  
         Predictions, **14:81**  
         Proximate cause, **14:92**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

Broker-dealers, actions against

#### —Cont'd

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd

Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**

Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**

Recommendations, **14:81**

Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**

Rescission

Chasins measure, **14:97**

Lost profits, **14:101**

Nye measure, **14:101**

Rolf measure, **14:100**

Restitution, **14:104**

Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**

SA § 11

Damages, **14:15**

Reasonable investigation  
requirement, **14:11**

SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**

Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**

Sellers, brokers as, **14:22, 14:29 et seq.**

Substantial factor in sale, broker  
as, **14:35**

**Suitability** (this index)

Supervision liabilities

Generally, **14:164 et seq.**

Amex requirements, **14:174**

Branch office managers, **14:178**

Chief executive officers, **14:180**

Compliance officers, **14:181**

Court cases, **14:176**

Deficiencies, **14:175**

General counsel, **14:182**

Heads of functional areas,  
**14:179**

Individual responsibilities,  
**14:177 et seq.**

Insider Trading and Securities  
Fraud Enforcement Act,  
**14:168**

NASD requirements, **14:172**

NYSE requirements, **14:173**

Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**

Safe harbor programs, **14:175**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

Broker-dealers, actions against

#### —Cont'd

Supervision liabilities—Cont'd

Sanctions, **14:175**

SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**

SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**

SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**

SEA § 19, **14:170**

SEA § 20(a), **14:167**

SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**

Burden of proof

Broker-dealers, actions against,  
**14:42**

Causation requirements, **5:98**

Unfair terms, **5:153**

Buyer-seller requirements

Generally, **5:110 et seq.**

Broad interpretation, **5:117**

Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**

Control, sales of, **5:113**

Definition, **5:111**

Forced sales, **5:120**

Injunction suits, **5:122**

Interpretation of requirement,  
**5:117**

Issuances, **5:121**

Liquidations, **5:119**

Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**

Mergers, **5:118**

Modified view, **5:117**

Pleading, **5:126**

Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**

Causation requirements

Generally, **5:89 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **5:98**

Loss causation, **5:91, 5:123**

Meaning, **5:90**

Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**

Modified view, **5:95**

Pleading

Materiality, **5:107**

Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

- Causation requirements—Cont'd
  - Pleading—Cont'd
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
    - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Policies, **5:97**
  - Proof
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
    - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Reasons, **5:97**
  - Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
  - Transaction causation, **5:92**
  - Voting
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
    - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
- Churning** (this index)
- Common law theories and sources, **5:54**
- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Generally, **5:53 et seq., 5:141 et seq.**
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq., 5:71**
  - Burden of proof
    - Causation requirements, **5:98**
    - Unfair terms, **5:153**
  - Buyer-seller requirements
    - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
    - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
    - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
    - Control, sales of, **5:113**
    - Definition, **5:111**
    - Forced sales, **5:120**
    - Injunction suits, **5:122**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Buyer-seller requirements—Cont'd
  - Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
  - Issuances, **5:121**
  - Liquidations, **5:119**
  - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
  - Mergers, **5:118**
  - Modified view, **5:117**
  - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
- Causation requirements
  - Generally, **5:89 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **5:98**
  - Loss causation, **5:91, 5:123**
  - Meaning, **5:90**
  - Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
  - Modified view, **5:95**
- Pleading
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Policies, **5:97**
- Proof
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
- Reasons, **5:97**
- Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
- Transaction causation, **5:92**
- Voting
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
- Common law theories and sources, **5:54**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
  - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Court cases, **5:135**
  - Definition, **5:128**
  - Injunction suits, **5:138**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
  - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
  - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
  - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:140**
  - Policies, **5:139**
  - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
- Control, sales of, **5:113**
- Court cases
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **5:135 et seq.**
- Unfairness
  - Generally, **5:183 et seq.**
  - Fair terms, **5:185**
  - SEC decisions, **5:186**
  - Unfair terms, **5:184**
- Deception requirement
  - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
  - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
  - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
  - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
  - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
  - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
  - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
  - Meaning, **5:80**
  - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Deception requirement—Cont'd
  - Pleading, **5:88**
  - Policies, **5:87**
  - Reasons, **5:87**
  - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
  - Strict view, **5:81**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Full disclosure, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
- Fairness. Unfair terms, below
- Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
- Full disclosure, **5:187 et seq.**
- Injunction suits
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**
  - Connection requirements, **5:138**
- Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
- Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
- Mismanagement exception
  - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
  - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
  - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
  - Meaning, **5:73**
  - Pleading, **5:78**
  - Policies, **5:77**
  - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
  - Reasons, **5:77**
  - Strict view, **5:74**
- Obstacles
  - Generally, **5:56 et seq.**
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Application to other provisions, **5:69**
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Buyer-seller requirements
    - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
    - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
    - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Obstacles—Cont'd
  - Buyer-seller requirements
    - Cont'd
    - Control, sales of, **5:113**
    - Definition, **5:111**
    - Forced sales, **5:120**
    - Injunction suits, **5:122**
    - Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
    - Issuances, **5:121**
    - Liquidations, **5:119**
    - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
    - Mergers, **5:118**
    - Modified view, **5:117**
    - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
  - Causation requirements
    - Burden of proof, **5:98**
    - Loss causation, **5:91**
    - Loss causation as substitute for buyer-seller requirement, **5:123**
  - Meaning, **5:90**
  - Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
  - Modified view, **5:95**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **5:99 et seq.**
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Policies, **5:97**
  - Proof
    - Generally, **5:99 et seq.**
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Reasons, **5:97**
  - Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
  - Transaction causation, **5:92**
  - Voting
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Obstacles—Cont'd
  - Causation requirements
    - Cont'd
    - Voting—Cont'd
      - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement
    - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
    - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Court cases, **5:135**
  - Definition, **5:128**
  - Injunction suits, **5:138**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
  - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
  - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
  - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:140**
  - Policies, **5:139**
  - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
- Control, sales of, **5:113**
- Deception requirement
  - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
  - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
  - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
  - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
  - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
  - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
  - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
  - Meaning, **5:80**
  - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:88**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
    - Cont'd
  - Obstacles—Cont'd
    - Deception requirement—Cont'd
      - Policies, **5:87**
      - Reasons, **5:87**
      - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
      - Strict view, **5:81**
    - Decline of, **5:58**
    - Federal comparison, **5:55**
    - Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
    - Interrelation of, **5:59**
    - Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
    - Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
  - Mismanagement exception
    - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
    - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
    - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
    - Meaning, **5:73**
    - Pleading, **5:78**
    - Policies, **5:77**
    - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
    - Reasons, **5:77**
    - Strict view, **5:74**
  - Operation of, **5:57 et seq.**
  - Policies, **5:60**
  - Reasons for, **5:60**
  - Rise of, **5:58**
  - Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Pleading
- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**
  - Causation requirements, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Company as buyer seller, **5:126**
  - Connection requirement, **5:140**
  - Deception requirement, **5:88**
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Mismanagement exception, **5:78**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
    - Cont'd
  - Pleading—Cont'd
    - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
    - Unfair terms, **5:152**
  - Sources, common law, **5:54**
  - Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
  - Theories, common law, **5:54**
- Unfair terms
- Generally, **5:142 et seq.**
  - Actual control, **5:156**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Book value, **5:162**
  - Burden of proof, **5:153**
  - Business decisions as value determiners, **5:171**
  - Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**
  - Conflict transactions
    - Generally, **5:145**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:150**
  - Control, proof of, **5:155**
  - Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**
  - Control sales, **5:191**
  - Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**
  - Definition, **5:143**
  - Disclosure
    - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Full disclosure, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
    - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
  - Discounts, control, **5:166**
  - Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
  - Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**
  - Full disclosure, effect of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Influence, proof of, **5:155**
  - Investment bankers
    - Generally, **5:172 et seq.**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Conflict of interest transactions  
 —Cont'd  
 Unfair terms—Cont'd  
   Investment bankers—Cont'd  
     Controlled company bankers,  
       **5:175**  
     Controlling company bankers,  
       **5:177**  
     Dual representation bankers,  
       **5:176**  
     No banker transactions, **5:178**  
     Opinions of, challenging,  
       **5:181**  
     Prior relations of, **5:182**  
     Qualities of bankers, **5:173**  
     Roles of bankers, **5:174**  
     Successive bankers, **5:179**  
     Trials, bankers for, **5:180**  
 Legal decisions as value  
   determiners, **5:170**  
 Liquidation value, **5:163**  
 Market prices as value indica-  
   tors, **5:160**  
 Pleading, **5:152**  
 Policies, **5:148 et seq.**  
 Potential control, **5:156**  
 Premiums, control, **5:166**  
 Proof of elements, **5:154**  
 Range of fairness, **5:143**  
 Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**  
 Shareholder votes, effect of  
   Generally, **5:146**  
   Reasons and policies, **5:151**  
 Tax factors in value determina-  
   tion, **5:164**  
 Time factors in value determina-  
   tion, **5:165**  
 Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**  
 Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**  
 Uniformity of standards, **5:66**  
 Connection requirement  
   Generally, **5:127 et seq.**  
   Another's sale, misconduct in con-  
     nection with, **5:132**  
   Commissions, **5:133**  
   Court cases, **5:135**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Connection requirement—Cont'd  
 Definition, **5:128**  
 Injunction suits, **5:138**  
 Kickbacks, **5:133**  
 Market transactions, misconduct  
   affecting, **5:134**  
 Mechanical interpretation of,  
   **5:130**  
 Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**  
 Pleading, **5:140**  
 Policies, **5:139**  
 Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**  
 Reasons, **5:139**  
 Strict view, **5:129**  
 Third party misconduct, **5:132**  
 Context, **5:1**  
 Control, sales of, **5:113**  
 Court cases  
   Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**  
   Connection requirement, **5:135,**  
     **5:135 et seq.**  
 Unfairness  
   Generally, **5:183 et seq.**  
   Fair terms, **5:185**  
   SEC decisions, **5:186**  
   Unfair terms, **5:184**  
 Deception  
   Generally, **5:79 et seq.**  
   Company, deception of, **5:84 et**  
     **seq.**  
   Decisional impairment, **5:84**  
   Directors, deception of, **5:82**  
   Economic effect of deception, **5:84**  
   Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**  
   Meaning, **5:80**  
   Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**  
   Pleading, **5:88**  
   Policies, **5:87**  
   Reasons, **5:87**  
   Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**  
   Strict view, **5:81**  
 Definition, **1:2**  
 Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1**  
 Disclosure  
   Generally, **5:187 et seq.**



## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Disclosure—Cont'd
  - Corrections
    - How long is correction necessary, **6:324**
    - What makes correction necessary, **6:320**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
- Fairness. Unfair terms, below
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also **Reliance** (this index)
- Injunction suits
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**
  - Connection requirements, **5:138**
- Issuer liabilities
  - Privately held securities, **5:6**
  - Publicly held securities, **5:7**
- Legal factors in party relationships, **5:5**
- Market-informing responsibilities, **12:7**
- Mediation, **15:69**
- Mismanagement
  - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
  - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
  - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
  - Meaning, **5:73**
  - Pleading, **5:78**
  - Policies, **5:77**
  - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
  - Reasons, **5:77**
  - Strict view, **5:74**
- Misrepresentations, **5:2**
- Nondisclosures, **5:2**
- Obstacles
  - Generally, **5:56 et seq.**
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Application to other provisions, **5:69**
  - Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
  - Decline of, **5:58**
  - Federal comparison, **5:55**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Obstacles—Cont'd
  - Interrelation of, **5:59**
  - Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
  - Mismanagement exception, fraud as part of, **5:75**
  - Operation of, **5:57 et seq.**
  - Reasons for, **5:60**
  - Rise of, **5:58**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Organization of treatise, **4:1**
- OTC market distinguished, **1:2**
- Other deceptions, **5:3**
- Penny Stock Sales** (this index)
- Personal and impersonal dealings, **4:1**
- Pleading
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**
  - Causation requirements, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Company as buyer seller, **5:126**
  - Connection requirement, **5:140**
  - Deception requirement, **5:88**
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Mismanagement exception, **5:78**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Unfair terms, **5:152**
- Practical factors in party relationships, **5:4**
- Privately held securities, issuer liabilities as to, **5:6**
- Private transactions, **5:8**
- Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
- Publicly held securities, issuer liabilities as to, **5:7**
- Relations of parties
  - Legal factors, **5:5**
  - Practical factors, **5:4**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also **Reliance** (this index)
- Rule 10b-5
  - Application to
    - Generally, **3:26**
    - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
  - Responsibilities generally, **12:7**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Scienter and actual knowledge, **8:170**  
 Securities types  
     Generally, **5:9 et seq.**  
     Alternative government regulation, **5:35**  
     Certificates of deposit, **5:28**  
     Characteristics of instrument in commerce, **5:39**  
     Common elements in defining a security, **5:32 et seq.**  
     Context clause, **5:18**  
     Cooperative apartment corporation shares, **5:26**  
     Court cases, **5:20 et seq.**  
     Employee benefit plans  
         Generally, **5:42 et seq.**  
         Contributory plans  
             Involuntary, **5:46**  
             Voluntary, **5:48**  
         Defined plans, **5:49**  
         Distinguishing contributory from noncontributory, **5:52**  
         Distinguishing voluntary from involuntary plans, **5:51**  
         ERISA, preemptive effect of, **5:43**  
         ESOPs, **5:48**  
         Involuntary contributory plans, **5:46**  
         Involuntary noncontributory plans, **5:45**  
         Noncontributory plans  
             Involuntary, **5:45**  
             Voluntary, **5:47**  
         Pension plans, **5:49**  
         Sales, **5:44**  
         Voluntary contributory plans, **5:48**  
         Voluntary noncontributory plans, **5:47**  
     Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
     Expectations of public, **5:40**  
     Flexible fund annuities, **5:24, 5:25**  
     Fractional interests in mineral rights, **5:21**  
     Guarantees, **5:15**  
     Howey test, **5:22**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

**—Cont'd**

Securities types—Cont'd  
     Interest, **5:14**  
     International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**  
     Investment risk as factor, **5:34**  
     Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**  
     Judicial decisions, **5:20 et seq.**  
     Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**  
     Marine Bank case, **5:28**  
     Marketing as factor, **5:33**  
     Motivations of purchasers, **5:37**  
     Motivations of sellers, **5:38**  
     9 month notes, **5:17**  
     Notes, **5:30**  
     Oil and gas interests  
         Generally, **5:16**  
         Fractional interests, **5:21**  
     Passive or active purchasers, **5:36**  
     Pension plans, employee interests in, **5:27**  
     Perceptions of public, **5:40**  
     Reeves v. Ernst & Young case, **5:30**  
     Relative importance of elements, **5:41**  
     SA § 2(1)(a) definition  
         Generally, **5:10**  
         Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
         Guarantees, **5:15**  
         Interest, **5:14**  
         9 month notes, **5:17**  
         Oil and gas interests, **5:16**  
         SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12 et seq.**  
         SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**  
     SEA § 3(A)(10)  
         Generally, **5:10**  
         Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
         Guarantees, **5:15**  
         Interest, **5:14**  
         9 month notes, **5:17**  
         Oil and gas interests, **5:16**  
         SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et seq.**  
         SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**  
     State law definitions, **5:19**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

Securities types—Cont'd

Statutory definitions, **5:10 et seq.**

United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**

United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**

Variable annuities, **5:23**

**Suitability** (this index)

**Transaction Planning** (this index)

Unfair terms

Generally, **5:142 et seq.**

Actual control, **5:156**

Arms length transactions

Generally, **5:144**

Reasons and policies, **5:149**

Book value, **5:162**

Burden of proof, **5:153**

Business decisions as value determiners, **5:171**

Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**

Conflict transactions

Generally, **5:145**

Reasons and policies, **5:150**

Control, proof of, **5:155**

Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**

Control sales, **5:191**

Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**

Definition, **5:143**

Disclosure

Generally, **5:187 et seq.**

Information disclosed, **5:189**

Method of disclosure, **5:188**

Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**

Discounts, control, **5:166**

Earnings tests of value, **5:161**

Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**

Full disclosure, effect of

Generally, **5:146**

Reasons and policies, **5:151**

Influence, proof of, **5:155**

Investment bankers

Generally, **5:172 et seq.**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

Unfair terms—Cont'd

Investment bankers—Cont'd

Controlled company bankers, **5:175**

Controlling company bankers, **5:177**

Dual representation bankers, **5:176**

No banker transactions, **5:178**

Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**

Prior relations of, **5:182**

Qualities of bankers, **5:173**

Roles of bankers, **5:174**

Successive bankers, **5:179**

Trials, bankers for, **5:180**

Legal decisions as value determiners, **5:170**

Liquidation value, **5:163**

Market prices as value indicators, **5:160**

Pleading, **5:152**

Policies, **5:148 et seq.**

Potential control, **5:156**

Premiums, control, **5:166**

Proof of elements, **5:154**

Range of fairness, **5:143**

Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**

Shareholder votes, effect of

Generally, **5:146**

Reasons and policies, **5:151**

Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**

Time factors in value determination, **5:165**

Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**

Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**

**What is a Security** (this index)

### DIRKS CASE

Insider trading, gifts to relatives, **7:396**

Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:563**

### DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

Injunctions, collateral effects, **13:106**

## DISCLOSURES

Generally, **5:187 et seq., 6:267**  
 Acquisition information  
   Required disclosures, **7:259**  
   Timely disclosure  
     Generally, **7:248 et seq.**  
   Agreements  
     Disclosure not required, **7:261**  
     Disclosure required, **7:260**  
   Company, trading by, **7:256**  
   Definitions, **7:250**  
   Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**  
   Leaks, **7:255**  
   Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**  
   Preliminary negotiations  
     Misleading statements, **7:253**  
     No statement made, **7:252**  
     Other situations, **7:254**  
   Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**  
   Rumors, **7:255**  
   Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**  
   Target response to tender offers, **7:258**  
   When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq., 7:260**  
 Advance letters  
   Proxy rules, **6:240**  
   Registration under SA, **6:241**  
 Aggregate materiality, **6:253**  
 Analysts' roles in full disclosure regulations, **7:528**  
 Annual reports, **6:242**  
 Antifraud provisions and Regulation FD, **7:546**  
 Application of funds, **6:260**  
 Assets  
   Generally, **6:261 et seq.**  
   Existence of, **6:262**  
   Reasons, **6:273**  
   Value of assets, below  
 Awareness of MNPI  
   Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**  
   Possession distinguished, **7:349**

## DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

Backdating of stock options, executive compensation, **18:1 et seq.**  
 Balance, **6:229**  
 Burden of proof, nonpublic nature of information, **7:312**  
 Buried facts, **6:232**  
 Cash flow, **6:260**  
 Clarity, **6:225**  
 Compulsory disclosure. Regulation FD, below  
 Consistency, **6:228**  
 Conspicuity. Prominence, below  
 Conspirators' nondisclosures, **8:306**  
 Context  
   Generally, **6:235**  
   Risk disclosures, **6:275**  
 Control, merger offers leading to board control changes, **6:61**  
 Corrections  
   Generally, **6:290 et seq.**  
   See also Supplementary communications, below  
   Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**  
   Blue sky laws, **6:292**  
   Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**  
   Common law, **6:291**  
   False reports to SEC, **6:313**  
   Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**  
   How long correction is necessary  
     Generally, **6:323**  
     Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:325**  
     Direct-personal transactions, **6:324**  
     Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:304**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:308**  
     SA § 11, **6:296**  
   How must correction be made  
     Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
     SA § 11, **6:298**  
 Market manipulation, **6:300**  
 Proxy fraud, **6:302**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

#### Corrections—Cont'd

Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5 requirements

Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**

How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**

How must correction be made, **6:328**

What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**

What must be corrected, **6:327**

Who entitled to correction, **6:328**

Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**

Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**

SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**

SA § 12(2), **6:293**

SA § 17(a), **6:299**

Safe harbor for predictions and projections

Later disclosures, **7:30**

Update duties, **7:45**

Sales fraud

Express liability, **6:293**

Implied liability, **6:299**

SEA § 9(a), **6:300**

SEA § 10, **6:301**

SEA § 14, **6:302**

SEC, false reports to, **6:313**

State law, **6:292**

Tender offer fraud, **6:311**

What makes correction necessary

Generally, **6:319**

Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:321**

Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**

Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**

Rule 14a-9, **6:303**

Rule 14c-6, **6:307**

SA § 11, **6:295**

What must be corrected

Rule 10b-5, **6:327**

Rule 14a-9, **6:305**

Rule 14c-6, **6:309**

SA § 11, **6:297**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

#### Corrections—Cont'd

Who entitled to correction

Rule 10b-5, **6:328**

Rule 14a-9, **6:306**

Rule 14c-6, **6:310**

SA § 11, **6:298**

Cover letters, **6:243**

Covid-19 pandemic, misleading disclosures re: class actions, **27:3, 27:5 to 27:7**

Cross references, **6:233**

Crowdfunding, **14:216**

JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**

Cybersecurity, failure to, **26:1**

Detail, **6:234**

Direct-impersonal dealing

Generally, **6:212 et seq.**

Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Aggregate materiality, **6:253**

Annual reports, **6:242**

Application of funds, **6:260**

Assets

Generally, **6:261 et seq.**

Existence of, **6:262**

Reasons, **6:273**

Value of assets, below

Balance, **6:229**

Buried facts, **6:232**

Cash flow, **6:260**

Clarity, **6:225**

Comparative tables, **6:219**

Consistency, **6:228**

Conspicuity. Prominence, below

Context, **6:235**

Control, merger offers leading to board control changes, **6:61**

Corrections

Generally, **6:290 et seq.**

See also Supplementary communications, below

Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**

Blue sky laws, **6:292**

Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**

Common law, **6:291**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Corrections—Cont'd  
     False reports to SEC, **6:313**  
     Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**  
     How long correction is necessary  
         Generally, **6:323**  
     Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:325**  
     Direct-personal transactions, **6:324**  
     Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:304**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:308**  
     SA § 11, **6:296**  
     How must correction be made  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
         SA § 11, **6:298**  
     Market manipulation, **6:300**  
     Proxy fraud, **6:302**  
     Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**  
     Rule 10b-5 requirements  
         Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**  
         How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**  
         How must correction be made, **6:328**  
         What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**  
         What must be corrected, **6:327**  
         Who entitled to correction, **6:328**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**  
     SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**  
     SA § 12(2), **6:293**  
     SA § 17(a), **6:299**  
     Sales fraud  
         Express liability, **6:293**  
         Implied liability, **6:299**  
     SEA § 9(a), **6:300**  
     SEA § 10, **6:301**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Corrections—Cont'd  
     SEA § 14, **6:302**  
     SEC, false reports to, **6:313**  
     State law, **6:292**  
     Tender offer fraud, **6:311**  
     What makes correction necessary  
         Generally, **6:319**  
     Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:321**  
     Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**  
     Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:303**  
     Rule 14c-6, **6:307**  
     SA § 11, **6:295**  
     What must be corrected  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:327**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:305**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:309**  
         SA § 11, **6:297**  
     Who entitled to correction  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
         SA § 11, **6:298**  
     Cross references, **6:233**  
     Detail, **6:234**  
     Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**  
     Earnings  
         Generally, **6:254**  
         Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**  
         Interim, **6:259**  
         Misrepresentations, **6:255**  
         Nondisclosure of, **6:257**  
         Predictions, **6:255**  
     Exchange offers, **6:12**  
     Form and substance, **6:235**  
     Interim earnings, **6:259**  
     Interpretation, **6:236**  
     Level, **6:227**  
     Locus, **6:214 et seq.**  
     Materiality  
         Generally, **6:248 et seq.**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Materiality—Cont'd
    - Aggregate, **6:253**
    - Might, use of term, **6:249**
    - Practical problems, **6:251**
    - Probably would, use of term, **6:250**
    - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
    - Would, use of term, **6:249**
- Merger information statement
  - rules, Congressional intent, **6:156**
- Misrepresentations
  - Earnings, **6:255**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
- Numerical information, **6:237**
- Opposition communications, **6:247**
- Organization, **6:226**
- Overall effect, **6:238**
- Predictions, earnings, **6:255**
- Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**
- Prominence
  - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
  - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
  - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
- Publicity, prefiling, **6:10**
- Public sales, **6:12**
- Repetition, **6:233**
- Risk
  - Generally, **6:275 et seq.**
  - CFTC requirements, **6:289**
  - Context, **6:275**
  - Court cases, **6:281**
  - Day trading, **6:284**
  - Extended hour trading, **6:285**
  - Margin trading, **6:286**
  - NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**
  - Plain English requirements, **6:278**
  - Safe harbor, **6:282**
  - SA filings, **6:279**
  - SEA filings, **6:280**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Risk—Cont'd
    - Short selling, **6:287**
    - Specific requirements, **6:277**
    - Uninsured products, **6:288**
- Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**
- SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**
- Scattered facts, **6:232**
- SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**
- SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**
- Sources of funds, **6:260**
- Sources of requirements
  - Generally, **6:220 et seq.**
  - Antifraud provisions, **6:222**
  - Specific items, **6:221**
  - Timing, **6:223**
- Specific information requirements, **6:2**
- Style, **6:224 et seq.**
- Supplementary communications
  - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
  - See also Corrections, above
- Advance letters
  - Proxy rules, **6:240**
  - Registration under SA, **6:241**
- Annual reports, **6:242**
- Cover letters, **6:243**
- Followup solicitations, **6:244**
- Generally available information, **6:246**
- Other communications, **6:245**
- Transmittal letters, **6:243**

Tender offers

- Congressional intent, **6:17**

Regulated offers

- Generally, **6:41**
- Arrangements, **6:47**
- Changes, effects of
  - Generally, **6:49**
  - SEC filings, **6:52**
  - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**

Control change information, **6:61**

Control purposes, **6:64**



**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
  - Funds, source of, **6:44**
  - Fund source data, **6:44**
  - Groups, data on, **6:48**
  - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
  - Issuer offers, **6:144**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Offeror data, **6:42**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans, **6:45**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:66 et seq.**
  - Publicity
    - Offeror, **6:94**
    - Target company, **6:98**
    - Third persons, **6:108**
  - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
  - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
  - SEC filings
    - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
    - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
    - Date of information, **6:52**
    - Other disseminations, **6:54**
    - Processing, **6:53**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
    - Time of filing, **6:50**
  - Securities, data on, **6:46**
  - Ten percent threshold
    - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
    - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
    - Date of information, **6:57**
    - Exemptions, **6:60**
    - Other disseminations, **6:59**
    - Ownership, **6:55**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
  - Ten percent threshold—Cont'd
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
    - SEC processing, **6:58**
  - Understandings, **6:47**
- Unregulated offers
  - Generally, **6:113**
  - Insiders, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
    - Target company, **6:121**
- Timing requirements, **6:223**
- Value of assets
  - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - Firm offers, **6:265**
  - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Direct-personal dealing
  - Generally, **5:146, 5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
  - Nondisclosures generally, **5:2**
  - Unfair terms
    - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
  - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
- Dividend actions
  - Materiality, **7:247**
  - When disclosure required, **7:246**
- Earnings
  - Generally, **6:254**
  - Executive compensation, backdating of stock options, **18:1 et seq.**
  - Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**
  - Interim, **6:259**
  - Misrepresentations, **6:255**
  - Nondisclosure of, **6:257**
  - Predictions, **6:255**
- Exchange offers, **6:12**
- Exemption provisions and Regulation FD, **7:548**
- Final rule on incident disclosure, cybersecurity, **26:9**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)
- Form and substance, **6:235**
- Forward Looking Information** (this index)
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also **Reliance** (this index)
  - Theory and disclosure policy, **8:533**
- Full disclosure duty
  - Regulation FD, below
  - Trigger, **7:536**
- Grace case, **8:423**
- Information disclosed, **5:189**
- Information types, **7:2**
- Inside information
  - Dividend actions, materiality, **7:247**
  - Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
  - Timely disclosure
    - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Inside information—Cont'd
- Timely disclosure—Cont'd
- Acquisition information
  - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
- Agreements
  - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
  - Disclosure required, **7:260**
- Company, trading by, **7:256**
- Definitions, **7:250**
- Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
- Leaks, **7:255**
- Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
- Preliminary negotiations
  - Misleading statements, **7:253**
  - No statement made, **7:252**
  - Other situations, **7:254**
- Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
- Rumors, **7:255**
- Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
- Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
- When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
- When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
- Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
- Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
- Delays, justifications for, **7:240**
- Dividend actions
  - Evolving information, **7:245**
  - Materiality, **7:247**
  - When disclosure required, **7:246**
- Justification for delay, **7:240**
- Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
- Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **7:267**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Inside information—Cont'd
  - Timely disclosure—Cont'd
    - Tender offers—Cont'd
      - Materiality, **7:270**
      - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
      - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Insiders
  - Generally, **7:152 et seq.**
  - See also **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)
  - Disclose or abstain duties
    - Generally, **7:197 et seq.**
    - Duration of duty, **7:200**
    - Nature of duty, **7:198**
    - Who is entitled to disclosure, **7:199**
  - Regulation FD, below
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Interim earnings, **6:259**
  - Interpretation, **6:236**
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Awareness of MNPI
    - Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**
    - Possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, nonpublic nature of information, **7:312**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure, **7:536**
  - Law and fact questions, nonpublic character of information, **7:314**
  - Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
  - Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
  - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- MNPI
  - Materiality, above

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Issuer disclosures—Cont'd
  - MNPI—Cont'd
    - Nonpublic information, below
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**
  - Law and fact questions, **7:314**
  - Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
  - Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
  - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Motion practice, **7:311**
  - Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **7:310**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:313**
  - Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:312**
  - Rumors, **7:301**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
  - Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Periodic reports, **7:289**
- Pleading nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**
- Possession of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**

## INDEX

### **DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

#### Issuer disclosures—Cont'd

##### Possession of MNPI—Cont'd

Connection with transaction,  
**7:681**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:343**  
**et seq.**

Precautions against trading,  
**7:346**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

##### Rule 10b-5

Generally, **7:318 et seq.**

Access, proof of, **7:323**

Awareness and possession  
distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321**

Contact, proof of, **7:324**

Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for,  
**7:326**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

Trading, proof of, **7:325**

Use inferred from possession,  
**7:328**

##### Rule 14e-3

Generally, **7:340 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:341**

Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

Organizations, proof for,  
**7:343 et seq.**

Precautions against trading,  
**7:346**

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Use compared, **7:317**

Press releases, **7:283**

Proof of nonpublic character of  
information, **7:313**

Prospectuses, **7:286**

Proxy statements, **7:287**

Reports, **7:289**

Rumors, **7:301**

### **DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

#### Issuer disclosures—Cont'd

SEC filings, **7:285**

Shareholder communications,  
**7:284**

Tender offer statements, **7:288**

##### Use of MNPI

Generally, **7:316**

Burden of proof, **7:331**

Connection with transaction,  
**7:681**

Individuals, proof for, **7:332**

Organizations, proof for, **7:339**

Possession compared, **7:317**

##### Rule 10b-5

Generally, **7:327 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:331**

Individuals, proof for, **7:332**

Inferences, **7:328**

Organizations, proof for,  
**7:339**

Possession, use inferred from,  
**7:328**

Rebuttal evidence, **7:337**,  
**7:338**

Size of transaction, proof  
value, **7:334**

Standard of proof, **7:331**

Timing, proof of, **7:333**

Type of transaction, proof  
value, **7:335**

##### Rule 14e-3, **7:347**

Size of transaction, proof value,  
**7:334**

Standard of proof, **7:331**

Timing, proof of, **7:333**

Type of transaction, proof value,  
**7:335**

Law and fact questions, **7:314**

Law violations and timeliness  
considerations, **7:244**

Level, **6:227**

Limitations period, disclosure as  
starting, **7:279**

Market, management responsibilities  
to inform

Generally, **8:421**

Business changes, **8:422**

Grace case, **8:423**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Market, management responsibilities to inform—Cont'd
  - National Telephone case, **8:422**
  - Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Markup and markdown practices, **14:149**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **6:248 et seq.**
  - Aggregate, **6:253**
  - Might, use of term, **6:249**
  - Practical problems, **6:251**
  - Probably would, use of term, **6:250**
  - Safe harbor for predictions and projections, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Selective disclosures, materiality of, **7:535**
  - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
  - Would, use of term, **6:249**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
- Material nonpublic information (MNPI)
  - Generally, **7:152**
  - Awareness of MNPI, above
  - Possession of MNPI, below
  - Use of MNPI, below
- Merger information statement rules, Congressional intent, **6:156**
- Method of disclosure
  - Generally, **5:188**
  - Regulation FD, **7:544**
- Misrepresentation
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:1 et seq.**
  - Earnings, **6:255**
  - Public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
- MNPI. Material nonpublic information, above

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Mutual fund violations, misleading prospectuses, **17:7**
- Nondisclosure liability** (this index)
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Periodic reports, **7:289**
  - Press releases, **7:283**
  - Prospectuses, **7:286**
  - Proxy statements, **7:287**
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - SEC filings, **7:285**
  - Shareholder communications, **7:284**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
- Law and fact questions, **7:314**
- Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
- Media disclosures
  - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
  - Particular media, **7:299**
  - Timing, **7:297**
- Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Motion practice, **7:311**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Pleading, **7:310**
- Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
- Proof, **7:313**
- Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Nonpublic information—Cont'd
  - Quantum of proof, **7:312**
  - Rumors, **7:301**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
  - Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
- Numerical information, **6:237**
- NYSE rules, **App F**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Opposition communications, **6:247**
- Organization, **6:226**
- Overall effect, **6:238**
- Payments to foreign government officials, **Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)
- Periodic reports, **7:289**
- Plain English requirements, **6:278**
- Possession of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
  - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **7:318 et seq.**
  - Access, proof of, **7:323**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321**
  - Contact, proof of, **7:324**
  - Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:326**
  - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
  - Trading, proof of, **7:325**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Possession of MNPI—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
    - Use inferred from possession, **7:328**
  - Rule 14e-3
    - Generally, **7:340 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:341**
    - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
    - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
    - Standard of proof, **7:341**
- Standard of proof, **7:341**
- Use compared, **7:317**
- Predictions and projection disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
- Capital resources, **7:15**
- Earnings, **6:255**
- Liquidity, **7:14**
- With MD&A requirement
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
  - Private actions, **7:17**
- Nondisclosure liability, **8:2**
- Operation results, **7:16**
- Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
- Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Predictions and projection disclosure obligations—Cont'd
- Safe harbor—Cont'd
- PSLRA—Cont'd
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
- With SEC encouragement, **7:12**
- Without SEC rule, **7:11**
- Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**
- Prominence
  - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
  - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
  - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
- Prompt disclosure requirement, Regulation FD, **7:543**
- Public or nonpublic character of information. Nonpublic information, above
- Public sales, **6:12**
- Registration provisions and Regulation FD, **7:547**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Regulation FD
  - Generally, **7:526 et seq.**
  - Analysts' roles, **7:528**
  - Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**
  - Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**
  - Companies covered, **7:545**
  - Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**
  - Enforcement, **7:549**
  - Exemption provisions and, **7:548**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Method of disclosure, **7:544**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Policy basis, **7:527**
  - Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
  - Registration provisions and, **7:547**
  - Regulatory gap, **7:530**
  - Scope of regulation, **7:545**
  - SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**
  - Selective disclosure
    - Generally, **7:529**
    - Avoiding, **7:553**
    - Curing violations, **7:554**
    - Materiality, **7:535**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
  - Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
  - Triggering events
    - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
    - Information, triggering, **7:534**
    - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**



## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

#### Regulation FD—Cont'd

##### Triggering events—Cont'd

Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**

Nonintentional disclosures, **7:540**

Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**

Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**

Persons triggering duty, **7:537**

Selective disclosures, **7:532**

Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**

Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**

Validity, **7:550**

Violations, curing, **7:554**

#### Release of Information (this index)

#### Reliance

Generally, **8:484 et seq.**

See also **Reliance** (this index)

#### Repetition, **6:233**

Ripeness and timely disclosure of inside information, **7:243**

#### Risk disclosures

Generally, **6:275 et seq.**

CFTC requirements, **6:289**

Context, **6:275**

Court cases, **6:281**

Day trading, **6:284**

Extended hour trading, **6:285**

Margin trading, **6:286**

NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**

Plain English requirements, **6:278**

Safe harbor, **6:282**

SA filings, **6:279**

SEA filings, **6:280**

Short selling, **6:287**

Specific requirements, **6:277**

Uninsured products, **6:288**

Rule 10b-5 as disclosure rule, **12:3**

Rumors, **7:301**

Safe harbor for predictions and projections

Generally, **7:19 et seq.**

Background, **7:20**

Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**

Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

Safe harbor for predictions and projections—Cont'd

#### PSLRA

Generally, **7:23 et seq.**

Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**

Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**

Caution prong, **7:26**

Corrections, **7:45**

Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**

Discovery stays, **7:44**

Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**

Eligible makers, **7:37**

Exclusions, **7:40**

Expandability, **7:41**

Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**

Later disclosures, **7:30**

Motion practice, **7:43**

Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**

Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**

Procedural aspects, **7:42**

Prohibited uses, **7:40**

Scope of Act, **7:24**

Statements with cautions, **7:27**

Update duty, **7:45**

Readily available cautionary statements

Generally disseminated, **7:34**

SEC filings, **7:33**

Timing, **7:32**

SA Rule 175, **7:21**

SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act controls, **8:466**

Scattered facts, **6:232**

SEC filings of issuer disclosures, **7:285**

Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**

Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations

Generally, **7:529**

Avoiding, **7:553**

Curing violations, **7:554**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations—Cont'd
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- Sources of funds, **6:260**
- Style, **6:224 et seq.**
- Supplementary communications
  - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
  - See also Corrections, above
  - Advance letters
    - Proxy rules, **6:240**
    - Registration under SA, **6:241**
  - Annual reports, **6:242**
  - Cover letters, **6:243**
  - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
  - Generally available information, **6:246**
  - Other communications, **6:245**
  - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **7:288**
  - Congressional intent, **6:17**
- Regulated offers
  - Generally, **6:41**
  - Arrangements, **6:47**
  - Changes, effects of
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Control change information, **6:61**
  - Control purposes, **6:64**
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
  - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
  - Funds, source of, **6:44**
  - Groups, data on, **6:48**
  - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
  - Issuer offers, **6:144**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Offeror data, **6:42**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:45, 6:66 et seq.**
- Publicity
  - Offeror, **6:94**
  - Target company, **6:98**
  - Third persons, **6:108**
- Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
- Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
- SEC filings
  - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
  - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
  - Date of information, **6:52**
  - Other disseminations, **6:54**
  - Processing, **6:53**
  - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
  - Time of filing, **6:50**
- Securities, data on, **6:46**
- Ten percent threshold
  - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
  - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
  - Date of information, **6:57**
  - Exemptions, **6:60**
  - Other disseminations, **6:59**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
  - SEC processing, **6:58**
- Understandings, **6:47**
- Unregulated offers
  - Generally, **6:113**
- Insiders, **6:114**
- Outsiders
  - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
  - Issuer, information about, **6:117**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Unregulated offers—Cont'd
    - Outsiders—Cont'd
      - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
      - Other information, **6:118**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
      - Policy factors, **6:120**
    - Target company, **6:121**
    - Third persons, **6:122**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
  - Timely disclosure of inside information
    - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**
    - Acquisition information
      - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
      - Agreements
        - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
        - Disclosure required, **7:260**
      - Company, trading by, **7:256**
      - Definitions, **7:250**
      - Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
      - Leaks, **7:255**
      - Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
      - Preliminary negotiations
        - Misleading statements, **7:253**
        - No statement made, **7:252**
        - Other situations, **7:254**
      - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
      - Rumors, **7:255**
      - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
      - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
      - When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
      - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
    - Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
    - Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
    - Delays, justifications for, **7:240**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Timely disclosure of inside information—Cont'd
  - Dividend actions
    - Evolving information, **7:245**
    - Materiality, **7:247**
    - When disclosure required, **7:246**
  - Evolving information. Dividend actions, above
  - Justification for delay, **7:240**
  - Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
  - Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **7:267**
  - Materiality, **7:270**
  - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
  - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Timing of FD requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
- Touting, class actions, **8:90**
- Transmittal letters, **6:243**
- Types of information, **7:2**
- Unfair terms
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Full disclosure of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
  - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD, **7:540**
- Use of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Burden of proof, **7:331**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
  - Possession compared, **7:317**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**

## **DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Use of MNPI—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**
  - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
  - Standard of proof, **7:331**
  - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
  - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
- Value of assets
  - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - Firm offers, **6:265**
  - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**

## **DISCOVERY**

- Generally, **13:66 et seq.**
- Administrative enforcement by SEC, limitation of actions, **13:90**
- Arbitration, **15:15, 15:63**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**

## **DISCOVERY—Cont'd**

- Document subpoenas, **13:67, 13:225**
- FOIA requests, **13:68, 13:226**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141, 13:143**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
- Pleading particularity requirements and discovery stays, **11:120 et seq.**
- Production requests, **13:69, 13:227**
- PSLRA stays, **7:44**
- SEC administrative enforcement, limitation of actions, **13:90**
- Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act limitations, **3:203**

## **DISGORGEMENT**

- Administrative enforcement, SEC, **13:84**
- Amount, **7:426 et seq.**
- Court cases, **9:7**
- Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
- Disposition of disgorgement
  - Generally, **7:433 et seq.**
  - Actual beneficiaries, **7:436**
  - Administration, **7:435**
  - Intended beneficiaries, **7:434**
  - Procedure, **7:435**
- Enforcement, limitations on, *Liu v. SEC*, **13:189**
- Insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:418, 7:425 et seq., 7:465**
  - Amount, **7:426 et seq.**
  - Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
  - Disposition of disgorgement, **7:433 et seq.**
  - Market measure, **7:428**
  - Measurement methods, **7:426 et seq.**
  - Pocket measure, **7:427**
  - Prejudgment interest, **7:432**

## INDEX

### **DISGORGEMENT—Cont'd**

- Insider trading charges—Cont'd
  - Price changes and measurement, **7:430**
  - Reasonable time for measuring, **7:429**
  - Time for measuring, **7:429**
  - Vicarious liability, **7:431**
- Joint and several liability
  - Generally, **9:26, 9:35**
  - Rule 10b-5, **9:39 et seq.**
- Liu v. SEC, **13:189**
- Market measure, **7:428**
- Measurement methods, **7:426 et seq.**
- Pocket measure, **7:427**
- Prejudgment interest, **7:432**
- Price changes and measurement, **7:430**
- Reasonable time for measuring, **7:429**
- Time for measuring, **7:429**
- Vicarious liability, **7:431**

### **DISTRIBUTION**

- Madoff feeder funds losses to investors, **20:23**

### **DIVIDENDS**

- Inside information re
  - Generally, **7:207, 7:245**
  - Materiality, **7:247**
  - When information required, **7:246**

### **DODD-FRANK WHISTLEBLOWER BOUNTY PROGRAM**

- Generally, **22:1 et seq.**

### **DOJ INVESTIGATIONS**

- Backdating of stock options, wider ramifications, **18:6, 18:8**
- Standard and Poor's ratings, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:338**

### **DONATION MODEL**

- Crowdfunding, **14:210**

### **DOORSTEP SALES**

- See **Over The Counter Market** (this index)

### **DRAFTING AGREEMENTS**

- See **Transaction Planning** (this index)

### **DUAL ROLES**

- Madoff feeder funds investment manager, **20:19**

### **DUE DILIGENCE**

- Generally, **14:5**
- See also **Diligence, Lack of** (this index)
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:15**
- Madoff feeder funds, failure as to due diligence, **20:17, 20:18**
- Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:52**
- Reliance, **8:506**
- SA § 11, **14:5**
- SEC view, **14:9**
- Underwriters', **14:14**

### **DURA PHARMACEUTICALS**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:569**

### **EARNINGS**

- Capitalization, value indicators generally, **5:161**
- Insider use of information re
  - Generally, **7:205**
  - Predictions, **7:204**
- Misrepresentations, **7:47**
- Predictions, **7:204**

### **EGALITARIAN THEORY**

- Rule 10b-5 and, **12:2**

### **ELDER ABUSE**

- See **Senior Investor Financial Abuse** (this index)

### **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS**

- ERISA preemption, **5:43**
- Securities, treatment as
  - Generally, **5:42 et seq.**
- Contributory plans
  - Involuntary, **5:46**
  - Voluntary, **5:48**
- Defined plans, **5:49**

**EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS**

—**Cont'd**

- Securities, treatment as—Cont'd
  - Distinguishing contributory from noncontributory, **5:52**
  - Distinguishing voluntary from involuntary plans, **5:51**
- ERISA, preemptive effect of, **5:43**
- ESOPs, **5:48**
- Involuntary contributory plans, **5:46**
- Involuntary noncontributory plans, **5:45**
- Noncontributory plans
  - Involuntary, **5:45**
  - Voluntary, **5:47**
- Pension plans, **5:49**
- Sales, **5:44**
- Voluntary contributory plans, **5:48**
- Voluntary noncontributory plans, **5:47**

**EMPLOYEES OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

- Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:10**

**ENRON**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:87**
- Private actions, materiality, **8:40**

**ENVIRONMENTAL, SOCIAL AND GOVERNANCE (ESG)**

- Business priority, **29:1**
- Private class actions, **29:3**
- SEC enforcement focus, **29:1**
- SEC's ESG-related enforcement actions
  - Climate, **29:2**
  - Task Force, **29:2**
- SEC's proposed, regulations, **29:4**

**EQUITABLE FRAUD**

- Generally, **8:242**

**EQUITY CROWDFUNDING**

- See **Crowdfunding** (this index)

**EQUITYNET**

- Crowdfunding, portals, description, **14:223**

**ETHICS CODES**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:483**

**EVASION OF FEDERAL INCOME TAXES**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**EXCEPTIONS AND EXCLUSIONS**

- Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:11, 22:13**

**EXCHANGES**

- American Stock Exchange** (this index)
- Arbitration** (this index)
- Auction rate security (ARS), securities and market, **13:325**
- Delisting, backdating of stock options, **11:9**
- Direct-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
- Implied liabilities under SRO rules
  - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
  - See also **Self Regulatory Organizations** (this index)
- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
- Interstate commerce, **11:7**
- National Association of Securities Dealers** (this index)
- New York Stock Exchange** (this index)
- Over The Counter Market** (this index)

**EXCLUSIVITY OF FUNDS**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**EXPANSION ERA**

- See also **Contraction Era** (this index)
- Implied liability
  - See also **Implied Liability** (this index)
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:54 et seq.**
  - SRO rules, **14:63 et seq.**
- Insider trading
  - Issuers, **7:645**
  - Regulation, **7:560**
  - Tippee violations, **7:665**
  - Tipping violations, **7:656**

## INDEX

### **EXPANSION ERA—Cont'd**

- Issuers' insider trading, **7:645**
- New expansion era
  - Generally, **3:32**
  - Current status of IPA, **3:146**
- Overlapping remedies
  - Generally, **3:69 et seq.**
  - SA § 11, **3:70**
  - SA § 12(2), **3:71**
  - SEA § 9, **3:72**
  - SEA § 18, **3:73**
- Rule 10b-5 history generally, **3:30**
- SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:63 et seq.**
- State law, **3:184**

### **EXPERT WITNESSES**

- Arbitrations
  - Claimants' experts, **15:34**
  - Cross examination, **15:42**
  - Respondents' experts, **15:45**
- Investment bankers
  - Generally, **5:180**
  - Challenging opinions of, **5:181**

### **EXPUNGEMENT**

- Arbitration, **15:70**

### **EXTENDED HOUR TRADING**

- NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:285**

### **EXTRATERRITORIALITY**

- Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases, **11:17 et seq.**
- Whistleblowers, protection, application of law, **22:31**

### **FACE-TO-FACE TRANSACTIONS**

- See **Direct-Personal Dealing** (this index)

### **FAIRFIELD GREENWICH GROUP**

- Madoff feeder funds, **20:17**

### **FAIR FUNDS**

- Injunctions, victim access to penalty, **13:116**

### **FAIRNESS**

- See also **Unfair Terms** (this index)

### **FAIRNESS—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5 as fairness rule, **12:5, 12:13**
- Tender offer fairness, Congressional intent, **6:19**

### **FAIR SHARE LIABILITY**

- See **Proportionate Liability** (this index)

### **FALSE INFORMATION**

- Attorneys** (this index)
- Dissemination of material false information, liability for, Lorenzo v. SEC, **8:346**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### **FAMILY MEMBERS**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

### **FEDERAL AGENCIES**

- SEC investigations, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**

### **FEDERAL ARBITRATION ACT**

- Generally, **15:54 et seq.**
- See also **Arbitration** (this index)

### **FEDERAL SECURITIES CODE**

- American Law Institute proposal, **1:23**

### **FEDERAL SENTENCING GUIDELINES**

- Insiders and inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:29 to 21:31**

### **FEEDER FUNDS**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:16 et seq.**

### **FEES**

- Attorneys' Fees** (this index)
- Madoff feeder funds, **20:24**

### **FIDUCIARY DUTIES**

- Breach, insider trading and misappropriation theory, **7:315**
- Creation of relationship
  - Generally, **7:567**
  - Advisers to issuers, **7:569**



## **FIDUCIARY DUTIES—Cont'd**

Creation of relationship—Cont'd

Business associates of issuers,  
**7:570**

Law characterizing relation, **7:573**

Position with issuer, **7:568**

Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**

Securities professionals, **7:572**

Insider trading

Generally, **7:561 et seq.**

Breach, **7:315**

Contraction era, **7:576**

Creation

Generally, **7:567**

Advisers to issuers, **7:569**

Business associates of issuers,  
**7:570**

Law characterizing relation,  
**7:573**

Position with issuer, **7:568**

Prior dealings, creation by,  
**7:571**

Securities professionals, **7:572**

Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**

Expansion era, **7:574**

Issuers, **7:565**

Market insiders, **7:575**

Scienter

Private actions, **7:498**

Tipsters, **7:381**

Trading insiders, **7:377**

Trading tippees, **7:385**

With whom must relationship  
exist, **7:562 et seq.**

**Investment Bankers** (this index)

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

Private securities litigation, cyber  
breaches, **26:8**

Reliance on relationship, **8:500**

Suitability claims, **14:202**

Suitability rules, **14:206**

## **FILIP DECISION**

SEC investigations, attorney-client  
privilege, **13:50 et seq.**

## **FINANCIAL ABUSE**

See **Senior Investor Financial  
Abuse** (this index)

## **FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING**

### **STANDARDS BOARD (FASB)**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:60**

## **FINANCIAL CRISIS INQUIRY COMMISSION**

Subprime mortgage crisis, Commis-  
sion report, **13:333**

## **FINANCIAL EXPERTS**

See **Audit Committees** (this index)

Sarbanes-Oxley Act standards, **8:459**

## **FINANCIAL INCENTIVES**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

## **FINANCIAL INDUSTRY REGULATORY AUTHORITY (FINRA)**

Creation, **14:183**

Suitability rules, **14:185**

FINRA Rule 2090, know your  
customer, **14:191**

FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**

FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187,**  
**14:188**

Institutional investors, **14:190**

Know your customer, **14:191**

Recommendations to customers,  
**14:187**

## **FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

Backdating of stock options, **18:1 et  
seq.**

Officers' certifications and Sarbanes-  
Oxley Act liability, **3:169**

Pro forma financial information,  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities  
based on, **3:170**

## **FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Backdating of stock options, wider  
ramifications, **18:6**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5 to 20:7**

## **FLEXIBLE FUND ANNUITIES**

What is a security, **5:25**

## **FOIA REQUESTS**

Generally, **13:226**

SEC investigations, **13:68**

## INDEX

### **FORCED SALES**

Buyer-seller requirements, **5:120**

### **FORECASTS**

Generally, **7:5 et seq.**

**Forward Looking Information** (this index)

**Predictions** (this index)

**Projections** (this index)

### **FOREIGN ACCOUNTS**

Insiders' use of, **7:177**

### **FOREIGN AND INTERNATIONAL TRANSACTIONS**

Conduct or effect, **11:19, 11:24**

Conflict with foreign law, **11:31**

Discerning intent, **11:23**

Domestic contacts, **11:36**

Enforcement, **11:37**

Foreign cubed case

Generally, **11:16**

American actors, **11:30**

Clear statement, **11:35**

Conduct or effect, **11:24**

Conduct or effect test, **11:19**

Conflict with foreign law, **11:31**

Discerning intent, **11:23**

Domestic contacts, **11:36**

Evolution of jurisdictional tests, **11:33**

Extraterritoriality, specificity, **11:29**

Facts in Morrison, **11:20**

Focus of securities laws purpose, **11:37**

Foreign law, conflict with, **11:31**

Foreign references in statute, **11:28**

Gaps in legislature, **11:34**

Holding in Morrison case, **11:17**

Importance of domestic contacts, **11:36**

Intent, **11:23**

International context, **11:18**

Judges, role, **11:26**

Judicial filling of legislative gaps, **11:34**

Jurisdictional tests, **11:33**

Justice Steven's concurrence, **11:32 to 11:37**

### **FOREIGN AND INTERNATIONAL TRANSACTIONS—Cont'd**

Foreign cubed case—Cont'd

Legislators, role, **11:26**

Morrison case, **11:17, 11:20**

Presumptions, **11:22, 11:35**

Prior law, **11:19**

References in statute, **11:28**

Rule 10b-5, **11:27**

Scalia's debate with Steven's concurrence, **11:25**

SEA § 10(b), generally, **11:27**

SEC enforcement of authority, **11:37**

Securities laws purpose and focus, **11:36**

Specificity of extraterritoriality, **11:29**

Subject matter jurisdiction, **11:21**

Intent, **11:23**

International transactions, generally, **11:172 et seq.**

Jurisdictional means, **11:16**

Jurisdictional tests, **11:33**

Morrison case, generally, **11:16 to 11:37**

Presumptions, **11:22, 11:35**

References in statute, **11:28**

SEC enforcement of authority, **11:37**

Specificity of extraterritoriality, **11:29**

Statement clarity, foreign cubed case, **11:35**

Statutory bases, international transactions, **11:173**

Subject matter jurisdiction, **11:21**

### **FOREIGN CITIZENS**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), allegations and settlements, **19:12**

### **FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES ACT (FCPA)**

Generally, **19:1 et seq.**

Accounting practices, **19:5, 19:9**

Actions against private individuals, members of Congress, and foreign citizens, **19:12**

Affirmative defenses

Generally, **19:3 to 19:5**

**FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES**

**ACT (FCPA)—Cont'd**

Affirmative defenses—Cont'd  
 Accounting provisions, **19:5**  
 Foreign law, **19:3**  
 Lodging expenses, **19:4**  
 Travel expenses, **19:4**  
 Allegations and settlements  
 Generally, **19:6**  
 Bookkeeping in multiple sets, **19:9**  
 Boxes of cash and two sets of books, **19:9**  
 Chinese way of doing business, **19:11**  
 Congress, actions against members, **19:12**  
 Foreign citizens, actions against, **19:12**  
 Ineffective bribe, **19:8**  
 Initial public offering, foreign company and pervasive fraud, **19:10**  
 Multiple sets of books, **19:9**  
 Pervasive fraud, **19:10**  
 Private individuals, actions against, **19:12**  
 UN Iraqi Oil-for-Food program, **19:7**  
 Background of Act, **19:1**  
 Basis for private actions, **19:13**  
 Bookkeeping in multiple sets, **19:9**  
 Boxes of cash and two sets of books, **19:9**  
 Bribe, effectiveness, **19:8**  
 Chinese way of doing business, **19:11**  
 Compliance programs, **19:14**  
 Congress, actions against members, **19:12**  
 Costs and expenses, **19:4**  
 Developments in enforcement, **19:16**  
 Due diligence, **19:15**  
 Effectiveness of bribe, **19:8**  
 Enforcement, recent trends, currents, and developments, **19:16**  
 Exception, **19:2**  
 Expense of travel and lodging, affirmative defense, **19:4**  
 Foreign citizens, actions against, **19:12**

**FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES**

**ACT (FCPA)—Cont'd**

Foreign law as affirmative defense, **19:3**  
 Grease payments as statutory exception, **19:2**  
 Initial public offering, foreign company and pervasive fraud, **19:10**  
 Lodging expenses, affirmative defense, **19:4**  
 Mergers and acquisitions, mitigation of risks, **19:15**  
 Mitigation of risks in mergers and acquisitions, **19:15**  
 Multiple sets of books, **19:9**  
 Pervasive fraud, **19:10**  
 Private actions, **19:13**  
 Private individuals, actions against, **19:12**  
 Recent trends, currents, and developments in enforcement, **19:16**  
 Risks in mergers and acquisitions, mitigation, **19:15**  
 Settlements. Allegations and settlements, above  
 Statutory accounting provisions, affirmative defense, **19:5**  
 Statutory affirmative defenses. Affirmative defenses, above  
 Statutory exception, **19:2**  
 Travel and lodging expenses, affirmative defense, **19:4**  
 Undisclosed payments, generally, **19:1 et seq.**  
 UN Iraqi Oil-for-Food program, **19:7**  
 U.S. Congress, actions against members, **19:12**  
 Written foreign law as affirmative defense, **19:3**

**FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES**

**ACT UNIT**

SEC investigations, **20:12**

**FOREIGN COUNTRIES**

Whistleblowers, protection, application of law, **22:31**

**FOREIGN LAW**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), affirmative defense, **19:3**

## INDEX

### FOREIGN TRANSACTIONS

See **Foreign and International Transactions** (this index)

### FORESEEABILITY

Coordinated investigations following  
subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:334**

### FORWARD LOOKING INFORMATION

Generally, **7:5 et seq.**

See also **Predictions; Projections**  
(this index)

Attacking cautionary statements,  
**7:29**

Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**

Definition, **7:25**

Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**

Forecasts distinguished, **7:5**

Information types, **7:2**

Later disclosures, **7:30**

Misrepresentations

Generally, **7:5**

Analyst projections, **7:9**

Company projections, **7:8**

Predictions and projection  
disclosure obligations

Generally, **7:10 et seq.**

Capital resources, **7:15**

Liquidity, **7:14**

With MD&A requirement

Administrative enforcement,  
**7:13**

Private actions, **7:17**

Operation results, **7:16**

Private actions on MD&A  
requirements, **7:17**

With SEC encouragement, **7:12**

Without SEC rule, **7:11**

Pleading, **11:132**

Predictions distinguished, **7:5**

Projections distinguished, **7:5**

Readily available cautionary state-  
ments

Generally disseminated, **7:34**

SEC filings, **7:33**

Timing, **7:32**

Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**

### FORWARD LOOKING

#### INFORMATION—Cont'd

Safe harbor

Generally, **7:19 et seq.**

Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**

Attacking cautionary statements,  
**7:29**

Background, **7:20**

Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**

Caution prong, **7:26**

Discovery stays, **7:44**

Drafting cautionary statements,  
**7:28**

Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**

Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**

Later disclosures, **7:30**

PSLRA

Generally, **7:23 et seq.**

Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**

Attacking cautionary statements,  
**7:29**

Caution prong, **7:26**

Corrections, **7:45**

Definition of forward looking  
statement, **7:25**

Discovery stays, **7:44**

Drafting cautionary statements,  
**7:28**

Eligible makers, **7:37**

Exclusions, **7:40**

Expandability, **7:41**

Falsity, actual knowledge of,  
**7:36**

Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**

Later disclosures, **7:30**

Motion practice, **7:43**

Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**

Oral statements referencing cau-  
tion, **7:31, 7:39**

Procedural aspects, **7:42**

Prohibited uses, **7:40**

Readily available cautionary  
statements

Generally disseminated, **7:34**

SEC filings, **7:33**

Timing, **7:32**

Scope of Act, **7:24**

Statements with cautions, **7:27**

**FORWARD LOOKING**

**INFORMATION—Cont'd**

- Safe harbor—Cont'd
- PSLRA—Cont'd
- Update duty, **7:45**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- Statements with cautions, **7:27**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
- Types of information, **7:2**

**FRAUD**

- Accounting, **13:112**
- Common law fraud. See **Common Law Fraud** (this index)
- Crowdfunding, potential, **14:209, 14:212**
- Cybersecurity** (this index)
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:10**
- Foreign cubed cases. See **Foreign and International Transactions** (this index)
- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT). See **Reliance** (this index)
- Fraud to enter the market theory (FEMT). See **Reliance** (this index)
- Global fraud. **Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)
- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)
- Mutual fund violations, broker fraud, **17:8**
- Ponzi scheme. **Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)
- Subprime mortgage crisis, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Suitability claims, consumer fraud, **14:204**

**FRONT RUNNING**

- Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
- Court cases, **7:142**
- SEC interpretations
- Generally, **7:140**

**FRONT RUNNING—Cont'd**

- SEC interpretations—Cont'd
- Decisions, **7:142**
- SRO interpretations
- Criticisms, **7:141**
- Decisions, **7:142**

**FULL DISCLOSURE**

- See **Disclosure** (this index)

**FUND DISTRIBUTION PAYMENTS**

- Mutual fund violations, sales practices, **17:14**

**GAAP**

- Private actions, materiality, **8:42, 8:44**

**GALLEON GROUP HEDGE FUND**

- Criminal insider trading, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**

**GIFTS**

- Insiders and insider trading, **7:396**

**GLOBAL FRAUD**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:1 et seq.**

**GOOD FAITH**

- See also **Bad Faith** (this index)
- Control person liability defense, **8:393 et seq.**
- Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
- Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**
- Plaintiff's in Rule 10b-5 cases, **8:254**
- SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**
- SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**
- SEC, false reports to, **8:150**

**GOVERNING LAW**

- Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases, **11:31**

**GOVERNMENT ENFORCEMENT**

- See **Administrative Enforcement** (this index)

**GRAND JURIES**

- See **Criminal Enforcement** (this index)

## INDEX

### GREASE PAYMENTS

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
(FCPA), **19:2**

### HACKING

Cybersecurity, **26:1 et seq.**

### HEDGE FUNDS

Backdating of stock options and  
delayed filings, **18:9**  
Criminal insider trading, Raj  
Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**  
Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:1, 20:2**  
Mutual fund violations, **17:21**

### HISTORY

Crowdfunding, **14:210 et seq.**

### HOLMES CASE

Private actions, loss causation in  
Supreme Court decision, **8:567**

### HOWEY TEST

What is a security, **5:22**

### IMPLIED LIABILITY

Generally, **3:54 et seq., 8:242 et seq.**  
Absolute liability, **8:243**  
Actual knowledge of plaintiff, **8:244**  
Administrative interpretation, Rule  
10b-5, **3:62, 3:82**  
ALI Federal Securities Code, **3:154**  
Analysts' certifications, actions based  
on, **3:168**  
Attorneys, implied private actions  
against under Sarbanes-Oxley  
Act, **3:165**  
Audit committee financial experts,  
**3:166**  
Audit records, actions based on,  
**3:171**  
Broker-dealers, actions against  
Generally, **14:73 et seq.**  
Causation, **14:91 et seq.**  
Connection requirement, **14:94**  
Contraction era, compensatory  
damages in, **14:105**  
Damages, **14:95 et seq.**  
Elements of action, **14:74**  
Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**  
Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

Broker-dealers, actions against  
—Cont'd  
Justifiable reliance, **14:89**  
Margin rules  
Generally, **14:59**  
Arbitration, use in, **14:61**  
Court cases, **14:60**  
SEA § 7, **14:59**  
Market misrepresentations, **14:78**  
Market nondisclosures, **14:79**  
Materiality, **14:82**  
Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**  
Mitigation of damages, **14:102**  
Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**  
Opinions, **14:81**  
Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**  
Predictions, **14:81**  
Proximate cause, **14:92**  
Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**  
Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**  
Recommendations, **14:81**  
Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**  
Rescission  
Chasins measure, **14:97**  
Lost profits, **14:101**  
Nye measure, **14:101**  
Rolf measure, **14:100**  
Restitution, **14:104**  
Rule 10b-5  
Generally, **14:73 et seq.**  
Causation, **14:91 et seq.**  
Connection requirement, **14:94**  
Contraction era, compensatory  
damages in, **14:105**  
Damages, **14:95 et seq.**  
Elements of action, **14:74**  
Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**  
Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**  
Justifiable reliance, **14:89**  
Market misrepresentations,  
**14:78**  
Market nondisclosures, **14:79**  
Materiality, **14:82**  
Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**  
Mitigation of damages, **14:102**  
Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**  
Opinions, **14:81**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Proximate cause, **14:92**
  - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Lost profits, **14:101**
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**
  - Restitution, **14:104**
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
- Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
- SRO rules
  - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
  - Arbitration, **14:72**
  - Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**
  - Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**
  - Contraction era, **14:71**
  - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
- Burden of proof
  - Generally, **8:255**
  - Scienter, **8:134**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:134**
- Causation, insider trading, **7:517**
- Checklists arguing IPA cases, **3:151 et seq.**
- Churning** (this index)
- Congressional intent, Rule 10b-5, **3:56**
- Constructive fraud, **8:242**
- Contraction era
  - 10b-5 actions
    - Generally, **3:74 et seq.**
  - Administrative enforcement, supplement to, **3:81**
  - Administrative interpretation, **3:82**
  - Congressional intent, **3:76**
  - Cort v Ash, **3:95**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Contraction era—Cont'd
- 10b-5 actions—Cont'd
  - Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose, **3:88**
  - Judicial restraint, **3:85**
  - Legislative history, uses of, **3:90 et seq.**
  - Modes of interpretation, **3:86 et seq.**
  - Negative implication, **3:87**
  - Policies, **3:75**
  - Policy effectuation, **3:80**
  - Practicality, **3:83**
  - Reasons, **3:75**
  - Statutory jurisdictional grant, **3:79**
  - Statutory literalism, **3:89**
  - Statutory tort, **3:77**
  - Supplement to administrative enforcement, **3:81**
  - Vexatiousness, **3:84, 3:85**
  - Voidability, statutory, **3:78**
- Manipulation
  - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
  - Documents excluded, **3:130**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
  - Government securities, **3:127**
  - Municipal securities, **3:127**
  - OTC securities, **3:126**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**
  - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
  - Substantive elements, **3:132**
- Nullification test, **3:104**
- Overlapping remedies
  - Generally, **3:102 et seq.**
  - Comparison of elements of express and implied rights, **3:105**
  - Defense strategies, **3:103**
  - Exclusions, effect of, **3:108**
  - Falsity vs scheme, **3:106**
  - Nullification test, **3:104**
- SA § 11
  - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**



## INDEX

### **IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Contraction era—Cont'd

Overlapping remedies—Cont'd

SA § 11—Cont'd

Defendants excluded, **3:112**

Documents excluded, **3:113**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**

Securities excluded, **3:110**

Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**

Transactions excluded, **3:110**

SA § 12(2)

Generally, **3:116 et seq.**

Commercial paper, **3:119**

Defendants excluded, **3:121**

Documents excluded, **3:122**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**

Government securities, **3:118**

Municipal securities, **3:117**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**

Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**

Substantive elements, **3:124**

SEA § 9

Generally, **3:125 et seq.**

Defendants excluded, **3:129**

Documents excluded, **3:130**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**

Government securities, **3:127**

Municipal securities, **3:127**

OTC securities, **3:126**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**

Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**

Substantive elements, **3:132**

SEA § 18

Generally, **3:133 et seq.**

Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**

Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**

Defendants excluded, **3:141**

Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**

### **IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Contraction era—Cont'd

Overlapping remedies—Cont'd

SEA § 18—Cont'd

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**

Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**

Fischman rationale, **3:135**

Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**

Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**

Scienter, **3:135**

Securities excluded, **3:139**

Substantive elements, **3:145**

Statutory cumulativeness, **3:107**

Supreme Court approach, **3:104**

Registered offerings

Generally, **3:109 et seq.**

Defendants excluded, **3:112**

Documents excluded, **3:113**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**

Securities excluded, **3:110**

Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**

Transactions excluded, **3:110**

SEC filings, reliance on

Generally, **3:133 et seq.**

Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**

Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**

Defendants excluded, **3:141**

Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**

Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**

Fischman rationale, **3:135**

Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**

Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**

Scienter, **3:135**

Securities excluded, **3:139**

Substantive elements, **3:145**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

**Contribution** (this index)  
 Contributory negligence, **8:253**  
 Current status of IPA, **3:146 et seq.**  
 Defense strategies, **3:103**  
 Disclosure, **3:60, 3:80**  
 Equitable fraud, **8:242**  
 Ethical standards, **3:60, 3:80**  
 Expansion era  
     Generally, **3:54 et seq.**  
     Manipulation, **3:72**  
     New expansion era, **3:146**  
     Overlapping remedies  
         Generally, **3:69 et seq.**  
         SA § 11, **3:70**  
         SA § 12(2), **3:71**  
         SEA § 9, **3:72**  
         SEA § 18, **3:73**  
     Registered offerings, **3:70**  
     SEC filings, reliance on, **3:73**  
 Expenses, security for, **3:175**  
 Federal vs state private actions, relative advantages, **3:200**  
 Financial report certifications, Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:169**  
 Fraud on the market  
     Generally, **8:520 et seq.**  
     See also **Reliance** (this index)  
 Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**  
 Implied private actions (IPA) generally, **3:53**  
 Indemnification, **9:76**  
 Innocent defendants, **8:243**  
 Insider trading  
     Generally, **7:491 et seq.**  
     Amount of liability, **7:521 et seq.**  
     Ancillary relief, **7:525**  
     Background, **7:501**  
     Causation, **7:517**  
     Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**  
     Control persons, actions against, **7:512**  
     Convertible traders, suits by, **7:508**  
     Damages, **7:521 et seq.**  
     Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**  
     Fiduciary theory, **7:498**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
     Market, relation of parties to, **7:493 et seq.**  
     Misappropriation theory, **7:499**  
     Opposite side traders  
         Damages, **7:522**  
         Elements of action, **7:518**  
         Relations of parties to market, **7:494**  
         Suits by, **7:504**  
     Option traders, suits by, **7:507**  
     Parties defendant, **7:509**  
     Relation to other liabilities, **7:524**  
     Reliance, **7:516**  
     Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**  
     Rule 14e-3, **7:500**  
     Same side traders  
         Damages, **7:523**  
         Elements of action, **7:519**  
         Relations of parties to market, **7:495**  
         Suits by, **7:505**  
     Standing, **7:520**  
     Tippers, actions against, **7:511**  
     Traders, actions against, **7:510**  
     Who can be sued, **7:509**  
     Who can sue, **7:502**  
 Insurance, **9:76**  
 Interpretation  
     Generally, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**  
     Expansion era, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**  
     Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose  
         Contraction era, **3:88**  
         Expansion era, **3:66**  
     Legislative history, use of  
         Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**  
         Expansion era, **3:68**  
     Literalism, statutory  
         Contraction era, **3:89**  
         Expansion era, **3:67**  
     Negative implication  
         Contraction era, **3:87**  
         Expansion era, **3:65**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

#### Interpretation—Cont'd

Remedial purpose, flexibility to achieve

Contraction era, **3:88**

Expansion era, **3:66**

#### Statutory literalism

Contraction era, **3:89**

Expansion era, **3:67**

Investment Advisers Act, **3:155**

Investor protection considerations, **3:60, 3:80**

**Joint and Several Liability** (this index)

#### Jurisdiction

Generally, **11:2 et seq.**

Adviser activities, **11:15**

Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**

Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**

Check clearance as interstate activity, **11:11**

Class actions, **11:42**

Defenses, **11:41**

Derivative suits, **11:43**

Foreign transactions, **11:16**

Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**

International transactions, **11:16**

Interstate commerce, **11:3**

Local telephone use, **11:4**

Mails, use of, **11:6**

Misconduct, relation of jurisdictional means to

Generally, **11:8 et seq.**

Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**

Check clearances, **11:11**

Fraud, **11:9**

Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**

Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**

Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**

Pleading, **11:38**

Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**

Scope of commerce, **11:3**

Securities exchanges and interstate commerce, **11:7**

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

#### Jurisdiction—Cont'd

Statutory jurisdictional grant

Contraction era, **3:79**

Expansion era, **3:59**

Telephone use, **11:4**

Transactions, interstate, **11:10, 11:12**

#### Jurisdictional grants, statutory

Contraction era, **3:79**

Expansion era, **3:59**

#### Limitation of actions

Generally, **8:251, 11:61 et seq.**

See also **Limitation of Actions** (this index)

Court cases, **11:63 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **3:174**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:161, 11:92**

#### Manipulation

##### Contraction era

Generally, **3:125 et seq.**

Defendants excluded, **3:129**

Documents excluded, **3:130**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**

Government securities, **3:127**

Municipal securities, **3:127**

OTC securities, **3:126**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**

Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**

Substantive elements, **3:132**

Expansion era, **3:72**

#### Materiality

Proxy fraud, **8:56**

SEA § 10, **8:55**

Misrepresentation, plaintiff's knowledge of, **8:246**

#### Modes of interpretation

Expansion era, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**

Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**

New expansion era, **3:146**

Nondisclosure, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:245**

Nullification test, **3:104**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Officers' certifications of financial reports, **3:169**
- Overlapping remedies
- Contraction era
  - Generally, **3:102 et seq.**
  - Comparison of elements of express and implied rights, **3:105**
  - Defense strategies, **3:103**
  - Exclusions, effect of, **3:108**
  - Falsity vs scheme, **3:106**
  - Nullification test, **3:104**
  - SA § 11
    - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
    - Documents excluded, **3:113**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
    - Securities excluded, **3:110**
    - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
    - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
  - SA § 12(2)
    - Generally, **3:116 et seq.**
    - Commercial paper, **3:119**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:121**
    - Documents excluded, **3:122**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**
    - Government securities, **3:118**
    - Municipal securities, **3:117**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**
    - Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**
    - Substantive elements, **3:124**
  - SEA § 9
    - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
    - Documents excluded, **3:130**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
    - Government securities, **3:127**
    - Municipal securities, **3:127**
    - OTC securities, **3:126**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Overlapping remedies—Cont'd
- Contraction era—Cont'd
  - SEA § 9—Cont'd
    - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
    - Substantive elements, **3:132**
  - SEA § 18
    - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
    - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
    - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
    - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
    - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
    - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
    - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
    - Scienter, **3:135**
    - Securities excluded, **3:139**
    - Substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Statutory cumulativeness, **3:107**
    - Supreme Court approach, **3:104**
- Expansion era
  - Generally, **3:69 et seq.**
  - SA § 11, **3:70**
  - SA § 12(2), **3:71**
  - SEA § 9, **3:72**
  - SEA § 18, **3:73**
  - Nullification test, **3:104**
- Parties
  - Proxy fraud, **8:284**
  - SEA § 14
    - Proxy fraud, **8:284**
    - Tender offer fraud, **8:285**
  - SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:286**
  - SEA § 18, **8:287**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:285**
- Penny Stock Sales** (this index)
- Plaintiff's knowledge
  - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

#### Plaintiff's knowledge—Cont'd

- Actual knowledge, **8:244**
- Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
- Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
- Limitation of actions, **8:251**
- Misrepresentation, **8:246**
- Nondisclosure, **8:245**
- Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**

#### Pleading

- Generally, **8:257, 11:104 et seq.**
- See also **Private Actions** (this index)
- Broker-dealer fraud, **8:145**
- Jurisdiction, **11:38**
- Particularity, **11:114**
- Pleading, **11:104**
- Scienter
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:145**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:138**

#### Policies

- Effectuation, Rule 10b-5, **3:60, 3:80**

- Rule 10b-5, **3:55**

#### Practicality, expansion era, **3:63, 3:83**

#### Private actions generally

- Generally, **8:1 et seq.**
- See also **Private Actions** (this index)

#### Privity

- Generally, **8:288 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5, **3:176**

#### Pro forma financial information disclosures, **3:170**

#### Proof

- Generally, **8:256**
- Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**
- Rule 10b-5, **3:177**
- Scienter, **8:135, 8:142**
- Tender offer fraud, **8:135**

#### Proportionate Liability (this index)

#### Proxy fraud

- Materiality, **8:56**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:125 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Intent, **8:129**

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

#### Proxy fraud—Cont'd

##### Scienter—Cont'd

- Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
- Pleading, **8:131**
- Proof, **8:128**

#### Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**

#### Registered offerings

##### Contraction era

- Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
- Defendants excluded, **3:112**
- Documents excluded, **3:113**
- Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
- Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
- Securities excluded, **3:110**
- Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
- Transactions excluded, **3:110**

##### Expansion era, **3:70**

#### Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**

#### Reliance

- Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
- See also **Reliance** (this index)
- Insider trading, **7:516**

#### Remedies, Rule 10b-5, **3:178**

#### Remedies (this index)

#### Rule 10b-5

- Generally, **3:54 et seq.**
- Absorption principle, **3:173**
- Administrative interpretation, **3:62, 3:82**
- Clause 3, primacy of, **3:182**
- Congressional intent, **3:56**
- Current status of IPA, **3:146 et seq.**
- Displacements within 10b-5, **3:181**
- Expansion era, **3:54 et seq.**
- Expenses, security for, **3:175**
- Implied civil recovery, Rule 10b-5 without, **3:180**
- Jurisdictional grant, statutory, **3:59, 3:79**
- Limitations of actions, **3:174**
- Modes of interpretation, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**
- Overlaps within 10b-5, **3:181**
- Policies
  - Generally, **3:55**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont’d**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont’d
  - Policies—Cont’d
    - Effectuation, **3:60, 3:80**
  - Practicality, **3:63, 3:83**
  - Prevalence of rule, **3:179**
  - Privity requirements, **3:176**
  - Proof requirements, **3:177**
  - Reasons, **3:55**
  - Remedies, **3:178**
  - Security for expenses, **3:175**
  - Silent conduct, **3:182**
  - Statutory tort principles, **3:57, 3:77**
  - Supplement to government enforcement, **3:61, 3:81**
  - Voidability, statutory, **3:58**
- SA 17(a), **3:155**
- Sales fraud, parties
  - Generally, **8:274 et seq.**
- Aider-abettors, **8:279**
- Brokers, **8:276**
- Buyers, **8:275**
- Conspirators, **8:280**
- Control persons, **8:281**
- Insiders, **8:277**
- Participants, **8:278**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Generally, **3:156 et seq.**
  - Analysts’ certifications, actions based on, **3:168**
  - Attorneys, implied private actions against, **3:165**
  - Audit committee financial experts, **3:166**
  - Audit records, actions based on, **3:171**
  - Express actions negating IPA, **3:162**
  - Financial report certifications, **3:169**
  - History of enactment, **3:159**
  - Legislative intent, **3:158**
  - Limitation of actions, **3:161**
  - Off-balance sheet transactions, **3:167**
  - Officers’ certifications of financial reports, **3:169**
  - Overview, **3:157**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont’d**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act—Cont’d
  - Pro forma financial information, liabilities based on, **3:170**
  - Provisions adversely impacting IPA, **3:163**
  - Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**
  - Rejection of IPA, **3:161**
  - SEC rules and releases, **3:164 et seq.**
- Scienter
  - Broker-dealer fraud
    - Generally, **8:139 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Defendant’s intent, **8:143**
    - Defendant’s knowledge and belief
      - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:141**
      - Proof, **8:142**
    - Plaintiff’s knowledge, **8:144**
    - Pleading, **8:145**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Pleading, **8:131, 8:138, 8:145**
- Proxy fraud
  - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Intent, **8:129**
  - Plaintiff’s knowledge, **8:130**
  - Pleading, **8:131**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Tender offer fraud
  - Defendant’s intent, **8:136**
  - Defendant’s knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
  - Intent, **8:136**
  - Plaintiff’s knowledge, **8:137**
  - Pleading, **8:138**
- SEA § 14, **8:132 et seq.**
- SEC filings, reliance on
  - Contraction era
    - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
    - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
    - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

- SEC filings, reliance on—Cont'd
  - Contraction era—Cont'd
    - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
    - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
  - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
  - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
  - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
  - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
  - Scienter, **3:135**
  - Securities excluded, **3:139**
  - Substantive elements, **3:145**
- Expansion era, **3:73**
- Security for expenses, **3:175**
- Standing, **7:520**
- Statutory tort principles
  - Contraction era, **3:77**
  - Expansion era, **3:57**
- Strict liability, **8:243**
- Suitability** (this index)
- Supplement to government enforcement, Rule 10b-5, **3:61, 3:81**
- Supreme Court, **3:148**
- Tender offer fraud
  - Generally, **8:132 et seq.**
- Scienter
  - Defendant's intent, **8:136**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
  - Intent, **8:136**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
  - Pleading, **8:138**
- Standing to challenge, **6:124**
- Tests for implied rights
  - Generally, **3:100**
  - Prohibitory language, **3:101**
- Voidability, statutory
  - Contraction era, **3:78**
  - Expansion era, **3:58**

### IMPLIED PRIVATE ACTIONS (IPA)

- Generally, **3:53**
- See also **Implied Liability** (this index)

### INDEMNIFICATION

- Generally, **9:76, 12:11**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

- Generally, **7:1 et seq.**
- Accumulation of stock, manipulation by, **7:134**
- Actual knowledge and scienter, **8:172**
- Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
- Aiding-abetting, **7:98**
- Analyst projections, **7:9**
- Antifraud provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:546**
- Bright line vs. substantial participation, **7:89**
- Business judgment standard, misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:50**
- Capping, **7:136**
- Causation, **7:76**
- Central Bank decision, **7:79, 7:85**
- Circular trading, **7:135**
- Company projections, **7:8**
- Cornering the market, **7:134**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Burden of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**
- Defenses to insider trading charges, generally, **7:350**
- Double jeopardy limitations, insider trading charges, **7:443**
- Insiders
  - Generally, **7:460 et seq.**
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
  - Restitution, **7:465**
  - RICO, **7:464**
  - Securities violations, **7:462**



**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

Criminal enforcement—Cont'd  
 Insider trading  
   Generally, **7:415 et seq.**  
   Mail and wire fraud, **7:171**  
 Insider trading charges  
   Burden of proof  
     Generally, **7:366**  
     Defenses, **7:369**  
     Institutions, **7:367**  
 Connection with requirement  
   Market transactions, **7:370**  
   Rule 10b-5, **7:370**  
   Rule 14e-3, **7:371**  
   Tender offers, **7:371**  
 Defenses  
   Generally, **7:350**  
   Amount defined, **7:355**  
   Binding contract defense,  
     **7:351**  
   Burden of proof, **7:369**  
   Burden of proving, **7:369**  
   Common terms and issues,  
     **7:355 et seq.**  
   Date defined, **7:357**  
   Delegation alternative to  
     amount, price and date,  
     **7:358**  
   Exclusiveness of defenses,  
     **7:360**  
   Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
   Instructions defense, **7:352**  
   Overriding limitations, **7:359**  
   Price defined, **7:356**  
   Relation to other laws, **7:362**  
   Systematic plans defense,  
     **7:353**  
   Tracking plans defense, **7:354**  
 Fiduciary breach, **7:315**  
 Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
 Institutions, burden of proof,  
   **7:367**  
 Motion practice, **7:365**  
 Parties, **7:363**  
 Pleading  
   Generally, **7:364**  
   Scienter, **7:398**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

Criminal enforcement—Cont'd  
 Insider trading charges—Cont'd  
   Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**  
 Proof, **7:368**  
 Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**  
 RICO, **7:414, 7:464**  
 Scienter  
   Generally, **7:372 et seq.**  
 Fiduciary theory  
   Tippers, **7:381**  
   Trading insiders, **7:377**  
   Trading tippees, **7:385**  
 Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**  
 Martha Stewart case  
   Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
   Acquittal, **7:411**  
   Background of case, **7:404**  
   Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
   Indictment, **7:405**  
   Inferences from evidence,  
     **7:409**  
   Intent inference test, **7:410**  
   Limits on argument and  
     evidence, **7:407**  
   Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
   Sufficiency of evidence  
     test, **7:408**  
 Misappropriation theory  
   Tippers, **7:382**  
   Trading insiders, **7:378**  
   Trading tippees, **7:386**  
 Pleading, **7:398**  
 Proof, **7:399 et seq.**  
 Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**  
 Rule 14e-3, **7:412**  
 Tippers  
   Generally, **7:379 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:401**  
 Trading insiders  
   Generally, **7:375 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:400**  
 Trading tippees  
   Generally, **7:383 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:402**  
 Tippers, **7:379 et seq.**

## INDEX

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Criminal enforcement—Cont'd
  - Mail and wire fraud
    - Generally, **7:171, 7:463**
    - Scienter, **7:413**
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - Penalty actions, **7:438 et seq.**
  - Pleadings, **7:364**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:366**
- Cross trading manipulation, **7:135**
- Curtailing scheme to defraud. Fraud, below
- Defenses to insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:350**
  - Amount defined, **7:355**
  - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
  - Burden of proof, **7:369**
  - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
  - Date defined, **7:357**
  - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
  - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Instructions defense, **7:352**
  - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
  - Price defined, **7:356**
  - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
  - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
  - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
- Depressing price manipulations, **7:124**
- Derivatives, see also **Derivatives Fraud** (this index)
- Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1, 7:91, 7:108, 7:116**
- Disclosure corrections
  - How long is correction necessary, **6:326**
  - What makes correction necessary, **6:322**
- Due diligence, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:52**
- Enron case, **7:87**
- Exemption provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:548**
- Fiduciary breach, **7:315**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Fifth Circuit, Enron case, **7:87**
- First Circuit, Lernout case, **7:106**
- Foreign law, insiders, **7:201**
- Fraud
  - Generally, **7:84 to 7:620**
  - Bright line vs. substantial participation, **7:89**
  - Central Bank decision, **7:79, 7:85**
  - Creation of misrepresentation, **7:90**
  - Curtailing scheme to defraud, generally, **7:75 et seq.**
  - Directly and indirectly, **7:91, 7:108, 7:116**
  - Fifth Circuit, Enron case, **7:87**
  - First Circuit, Lernout case, **7:106**
  - Group scienter, **7:99**
  - Group violations, **7:92, 7:95**
  - Historical perspective, **7:81**
  - Insider defendants, **7:102**
  - Liability, scope of, **7:96**
  - Manipulation vs. scheme, **7:113**
  - Misrepresentation vs. scheme, **7:88, 7:110, 7:112**
  - Misrepresentation vs. scheme revisited, **7:115**
  - Ninth Circuit, Homestore case, **7:101**
  - Outsider defendants, **7:103**
  - Participation, **7:116**
  - Primary liability vs. aiding-abetting, **7:98**
  - Primary violators, **7:104, 7:109, 7:110, 7:114**
  - Private actions for schemes, **7:105**
- PSLRA
  - Application of, **7:97**
  - Impact of, **7:86**
- Reliance, **7:76 to 7:78, 7:80**
- Scheme to defraud, generally, **7:84 et seq.**
- SEC authority, **7:93**
- Secondary actors, **7:104, 7:114**
- Second Circuit, Parmalat case, **7:111**
- SEC view of reliance, **7:77, 7:80**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Fraud—Cont'd
  - Specific violations, **7:100**
  - Stoneridge amici, **7:83**
  - Stoneridge impact, **7:82**
  - Supreme Court, Zandford case, **7:117**
  - Zone and reliance permitted, **7:78**
- Front running manipulation
  - Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **7:142**
  - SEC interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
  - SRO interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Criticisms, **7:141**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
  - Insider trading, **7:168**
- Good faith, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:53**
- Group scienter, **7:99**
- Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**
- Homestore case, **7:101**
- Information release guidelines, **7:54**
- Information types, **7:2**
- Inside trading
  - See also **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
  - Fraud, **7:102**
  - Information, **7:4**
  - Misappropriation theory of liability
    - Generally, **7:577**
    - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
    - Close family relationships, **7:587**
    - Connection element, **7:597**
    - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
    - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
    - Enforcement actions, **7:578**
    - Family relationships, **7:587**
    - Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**
    - Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Inside trading—Cont'd
  - Misappropriation theory of liability—Cont'd
    - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
    - SEC v. Mark Cuban, stress test for misappropriation theory, generally, **7:604 to 7:622**
    - Shared confidences, **7:590**
  - Regulation FD disclosure, below
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**
- Tippees
  - Generally, **7:623**
  - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
  - Dirks background, **7:625**
  - Family benefit to, **7:630**
  - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
  - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**
  - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
  - Tip defined, **7:624**
- Intent, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:53**
- Lernout case, **7:106**
- Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
- Manipulation
  - Generally, **7:118 et seq.**
  - Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
  - Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
  - Capping, **7:136**
  - Circular trading, **7:135**
  - Cornering the market, **7:134**
  - Cross trading, **7:135**
  - Definition, **7:119**
  - Depressing prices, **7:124**
  - Federal securities laws, **7:120**
  - Fraud, scheme, **7:113**
  - Front running
    - Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
    - Court cases, **7:142**

## INDEX

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Manipulation—Cont'd
  - Front running—Cont'd
    - SEC interpretations
      - Generally, **7:140**
      - Decisions, **7:142**
    - SRO interpretations
      - Generally, **7:140**
      - Criticisms, **7:141**
      - Decisions, **7:142**
      - Insider trading, **7:168**
  - Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**
  - Marking the close, **7:131**
  - Matched orders, **7:121**
  - Painting the tape, **7:132**
  - Parking
    - Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
    - Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**
    - Control fights, use in, **7:146**
    - Definitions, **7:144**
    - Margin requirements
      - Parking to avoid, **7:148**
      - Use to avoid, **7:148**
    - Record keeping violations, **7:149**
    - Tax evasion uses, **7:150**
  - Pegging, **7:136**
  - Raising prices, **7:124**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:130 et seq.**
    - Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
    - Capping, **7:136**
    - Circular trading, **7:135**
    - Control, **7:138**
    - Cornering the market, **7:134**
    - Cross trading, **7:135**
    - Domination, **7:138**
    - Front running, above
    - Marking the close, **7:131**
    - Painting the tape, **7:132**
    - Parking, above
    - Pegging, **7:136**
    - Short selling, **7:137**
    - Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Manipulation—Cont'd
  - SEA § 9(a)(1), **7:121**
  - SEA § 9(a)(2)
    - Generally, **7:122 et seq.**
    - Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
    - Depressing prices, **7:124**
    - Purpose, **7:125**
    - Raising prices, **7:124**
    - Series of transactions, **7:123**
  - SEA § 9(a)(3), **7:126**
  - SEA § 9(a)(4), **7:126**
  - SEA § 9(a)(5), **7:126**
  - SEA § 9(a)(6), **7:127**
  - SEA § 9(b), **7:128**
  - SEA § 9(e), **7:129**
  - Short selling, **7:137**
  - Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**
  - Wash sales, **7:121**
- Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**
- Market-informing responsibilities, **12:7**
- Marking the close manipulations, **7:131**
- Matched order manipulations, **7:121**
- Mediation, **15:69**
- Method of disclosure, Regulation FD, **7:544**
- Misappropriation by insiders
  - Generally, **7:577**
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Arguments of parties on appeal, **7:619**
  - Close family relationships, **7:587**
  - Conclusion of Cuban case, **7:622**
  - Confidentiality, **7:611**
  - Connection element, **7:597**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
  - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
  - Cuban responds to charges, **7:607**
  - Disclosure, trading with impunity, **7:609**
  - District court ruling in favor of Cuban, **7:616**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont’d**

Misappropriation by insiders  
—Cont’d  
Enforcement actions, **7:578**  
Family relationships, **7:587**  
Federal charges filed by Commission, **7:606**  
Five law professors file brief amici curiae in support of Cuban’s motion, **7:615**  
Lack of agreement by Cuban not to trade, **7:617**  
Limitation of Rule 10b-5 to family and other personal relationships, **7:613**  
Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**  
Mark Cuban and Commission as players, **7:605**  
Motion to dismiss, **7:610**  
Pre-emptive strike against application of SEC Rule 10b5-2(b)(1), **7:612**  
Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**  
Reexamination of development of misappropriation theory, **7:608**  
Relevancy of Cuban’s opinion, **7:621**  
Response by SEC to Cuban’s motion, **7:614**  
Response to charges by Cuban, **7:607**  
Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**  
Rule 10b5-2 evaluation by District Court, **7:618**  
SEC v. Mark Cuban, stress test for misappropriation theory, generally, **7:604 to 7:622**  
Shared confidences, **7:590**  
Sufficiency of SEC allegations of misappropriation, **7:617**  
Telephone calls, evaluation, **7:620**  
Trading with impunity, **7:609**  
Misrepresentations  
Generally, **7:5, 7:46 et seq.**  
See also **Forward Looking Information** (this index)  
Analyst projections, **7:9**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont’d**

Misrepresentations—Cont’d  
Business judgment standard, **7:50**  
Company projections, **7:8**  
Creation of misrepresentation, **7:90**  
Due diligence, **7:52**  
Earnings, **7:47**  
GAAP violations  
Generally, **7:55 et seq.**  
Auditor violation, **7:70**  
Court decisions, generally, **7:62 et seq.**  
Enforcement cases, **7:65, 7:71**  
Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), **7:60**  
Fraud  
Fraud without GAAP violation, **7:63**  
GAAP violation with fraud, **7:66 to 7:71**  
GAAP violation without fraud, **7:64, 7:65**  
Judicial eyes, GAAP in judicial eyes, **7:57**  
Non-GAAP financial measures, **7:74**  
PRO FORMAs (NGFMs), **7:72 to 7:74**  
Public communications not filed with SEC, **7:73**  
Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), **7:61**  
Red flags, **7:70**  
Reg G, **7:73**  
Sarbanes-Oxley restrictions on pro forma or non-GAAP financial information, **7:72**  
Scienter, allegations supporting, **7:69**  
SEC, **7:58, 7:59, 7:72 to 7:74**  
Sources of GAAP, **7:59, 7:60, 7:61**  
Statutes, GAAP in statutes, **7:56**  
Generally accepted accounting principles. GAAP violations, above

## INDEX

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
  - Good faith, **7:53**
  - Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**
  - Information release guidelines, **7:54**
  - Intent, **7:53**
  - Negligence, **7:52**
  - Predictions, **7:46**
  - Predictions and projection disclosure obligations
    - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
    - Capital resources, **7:15**
    - Liquidity, **7:14**
    - With MD&A requirement
      - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
      - Private actions, **7:17**
    - Operation results, **7:16**
    - Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
  - Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
  - Safe harbor
    - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
    - Background, **7:20**
    - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
  - PSLRA
    - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
    - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
    - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
    - Caution prong, **7:26**
    - Corrections, **7:45**
    - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
    - Discovery stays, **7:44**
    - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
    - Eligible makers, **7:37**
    - Exclusions, **7:40**
    - Expandability, **7:41**
    - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
    - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
  - Predictions and projection disclosure obligations—Cont'd
  - Safe harbor—Cont'd
  - PSLRA—Cont'd
    - Later disclosures, **7:30**
    - Motion practice, **7:43**
    - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
    - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
    - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
    - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
    - Scope of Act, **7:24**
    - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
    - Update duty, **7:45**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
  - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
  - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- SEC
  - Generally, **7:11**
  - Encouragement of, **7:12**
  - Traditional position, **7:18**
- Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**
- Scheme to defraud vs. misrepresentation, **7:88, 7:110, 7:112**
- Scheme to defraud vs. misrepresentation revisited, **7:115**
- Scienter, **7:53**
- Standards for preparation of information, **7:49**
- Violations, criteria for determining, **7:49**
- Negligence, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:52**
- Ninth Circuit, Homestore case, **7:101**
- Opposite side traders
  - Damages, **7:522**
  - Elements of action, **7:518**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Opposite side traders—Cont'd
  - Suits by, **7:504**
- Organization of treatise, **4:1**
- Outsider defendants, **7:103**
- Painting the tape manipulations, **7:132**
- Parking
  - Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
  - Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**
  - Control fights, use in, **7:146**
  - Definitions, **7:144**
  - Margin requirements
    - Parking to avoid, **7:148**
    - Use to avoid, **7:148**
  - Record keeping violations, **7:149**
  - Tax evasion uses, **7:150**
- Parmalat case, **7:111**
- Participation, **7:116**
- Pegging, **7:136**
- Personal and impersonal dealings, **4:1**
- Price, importance of, **7:3**
- Primary liability vs. aiding-abetting, **7:98**
- Primary violators in scheme to defraud, **7:104, 7:109, 7:110, 7:114**
- Private actions for schemes to defraud, **7:105**
- PSLRA
  - Application of, **7:97**
  - Impact of, **7:86**
- Raising price manipulations, **7:124**
- Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**
- Regulation FD disclosure
  - Generally, **7:526 et seq.**
  - Analysts' roles, **7:528**
  - Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**
  - Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**
  - Companies covered, **7:545**
  - Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - Enforcement, **7:549**
  - Exemption provisions and, **7:548**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Method of disclosure, **7:544**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Policy basis, **7:527**
  - Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
  - Registration provisions and, **7:547**
  - Regulatory gap, **7:530**
  - Scope of regulation, **7:545**
  - SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**
  - Selective disclosure
    - Generally, **7:529**
    - Avoiding, **7:553**
    - Curing violations, **7:554**
    - Materiality, **7:535**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
  - Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
  - Triggering events
    - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
    - Information, triggering, **7:534**
    - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
    - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
    - Nonintentional disclosures, **7:540**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**
    - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
    - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**



## INDEX

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Validity, **7:550**
  - Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Reliance, curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:76 to 7:78, 7:80**
- Remoteness, **7:76**
- Rule 10b-5 application to, **3:28**
- Rule 10b-5 responsibilities generally, **12:7**
- Rule 14e-3, **7:166**
- Rule 15c1-2, **7:165**
- Rule 144, **7:167**
- SA § 17(a), **7:164**
- Same side traders
  - Damages, **7:523**
  - Elements of action, **7:519**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
  - Suits by, **7:505**
- Scienter
  - Actual knowledge, **8:172**
  - Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**
  - Scheme to defraud, group scienter, **7:99**
- Secondary actors in scheme to defraud, **7:104, 7:114**
- Second Circuit, Parmalat case, **7:111**
- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), **7:58, 7:59, 7:72 to 7:74, 7:77, 7:80, 7:93**
- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Short selling manipulations, **7:137**
- Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- SRO rules, insider trading, **7:168**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Stoneridge case, curtailing scheme to defraud
  - Amici, **7:83**
  - Impact, **7:82**
- Substantial participation in scheme to defraud, **7:89**
- Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**
- Supreme Court, Zandford case, **7:117**
- Tender offers
  - Disclosures in, **7:288**
  - Inside information as to pending offers, **7:214**
- Timing of FD disclosure requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
- Tippee liabilities
  - Generally, **7:623**
  - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
  - Dirks background, **7:625**
  - Family benefit to, **7:630**
  - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
  - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**
  - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
  - Tip defined, **7:624**
- Transaction types, **7:1**
- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:540**
- Wash sale manipulations, **7:121**
- What is a Security** (this index)
- Zandford case, **7:117**
- Zone, curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:78**

### INDUCEMENT

- Generally, **8:295**
- Aider-Abettors** (this index)
- Parties** (this index)

### INFORMANTS

- Generally, **7:445**

## INFORMATION

- See **Release of Information** (this index)
- Disclosure** (this index)
- Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)
- Original information. See **Whistleblowers** (this index)

## INITIAL COIN OFFERINGS

- Cryptocurrencies** (this index)

## INITIAL PUBLIC OFFERINGS (IPOs)

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:10**
- Injunctions, ancillary relief, **13:111**

## INJUNCTIONS

- Accounting, fraudulent accounting, **13:112**
- Actual knowledge and scienter, **8:174**
- Administrative enforcement of aider-abettor liability, **8:371**
- Advantages and disadvantages
  - CFTC, **13:252**
  - SEC, **13:120**
- Aider-abettor liability, **8:371**
- Aider-abettor restraints, **8:371**
- Ancillary relief
  - Auditors, **13:113**
  - CFTC, **13:250**
  - Fraudulent accounting, **13:112**
  - Initial public offerings (IPOs), **13:111**
  - Investment bankers global settlement, **13:110**
  - Monetary civil penalties, generally, **13:108 et seq.**
  - Mutual funds, **13:114**
  - Other violations, **13:115**
  - SEC, **13:107 et seq.**
  - Victim access to penalty, fair funds, **13:116**
  - WorldCom, **13:109**
- Asset freezes, **13:100**
- Auditors, ancillary relief, **13:113**
- Balance of equities, **6:134**
- Bar orders in, **13:117**
- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**

## INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd

- Cease and desist orders
  - CFTC, **13:239**
  - Likelihood of future violation, **13:239**
  - Market impact, **13:240**
  - Permanent, **13:85**
  - Temporary, **13:86**
- CFTC
  - Generally, **13:245 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:252**
  - Ancillary relief, **13:250**
  - Character of proceedings, **13:245**
  - Collateral effect, **13:249**
  - Duration, **13:251**
  - Evidence, **13:246**
  - Likelihood of future violations, **13:239, 13:248**
  - Market impact, **13:240**
  - Proof, **13:246**
  - Proper showing, **13:248**
  - Scienter, **13:247**
  - Standards, **13:246**
  - Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**
- Character of proceedings
  - CFTC, **13:245**
  - SEC, **13:96**
- Civil penalties in addition to
  - Ancillary relief, generally, **13:108 et seq.**
  - Auditors, **13:113**
  - Fraudulent accounting, **13:112**
  - Initial public offerings (IPOs), **13:111**
  - Investment bankers global settlement, **13:110**
  - Mutual funds, **13:114**
  - Other violations, **13:115**
  - SEC, **13:108**
  - Victim access to penalty, fair funds, **13:116**
  - WorldCom, **13:109**
- Collateral effect
  - CFTC, **13:249**
  - Disciplinary proceedings, **13:106**
  - SEC, **13:105, 13:106**

## INDEX

### INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd

- Conspirators, **8:312**
- Constructive knowledge and scienter, **8:185**
- Disciplinary proceedings, **13:106**
- Duration
  - CFTC, **13:251**
  - SEC, **13:119**
- Equitable relief generally, **13:118**
- Evidence
  - CFTC, **13:246**
  - SEC, **13:101**
- Fraudulent accounting, ancillary relief, **13:112**
- Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**
- Initial public offerings (IPOs), ancillary relief, **13:111**
- Insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
  - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
  - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Intent and scienter, **8:195**
- Investment bankers global settlement, ancillary relief, **13:110**
- Irreparable injuries, **6:133**
- Likelihood of future violations
  - CFTC, **13:239, 13:248**
  - SEC, **13:103**
- Limitation of actions, **13:99**
- Market impact, CFTC, **13:240**
- Monetary civil penalties. Civil penalties in addition to, above
- Mutual funds, ancillary relief, **13:114**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings
  - Generally, **13:133 et seq.**
  - Battle over discovery, **13:135**
  - CFTC references, **13:263**
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**
  - Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:143**
  - Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**

### INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd

- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings—Cont'd
- Discovery, **13:139, 13:142, 13:143**
  - Continuation of civil proceedings with, **13:138**
- Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
- Reasons for concern, **13:134**
- SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**
- Preliminary injunctions, **6:131 et seq.**
- Private suits, relation to, **13:98**
- Privity considerations, **8:303**
- Probability of success, **6:132**
- Proof standards
  - CFTC, **13:246**
  - SEC, **13:101**
- Proper showing
  - CFTC, **13:248**
  - SEC, **13:103**
- Scienter
  - Actual knowledge, **8:174**
  - CFTC, **13:247**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:185**
  - Intent, **8:195**
  - SEC, **13:102**
- SEC
  - Generally, **13:96 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:120**
  - Ancillary relief, **13:107 et seq.**
  - Asset freezes, **13:100**
  - Bar orders in, **13:117**
  - Character of proceedings, **13:96**
  - Civil penalties in addition to, **13:108**
  - Collateral effect, **13:105, 13:106**
  - Duration, **13:119**
  - Equitable relief generally, **13:118**
  - Evidence, **13:101**
  - Likelihood of future violations, **13:103**
  - Limitation of actions, **13:99**
  - Private suits, relation to, **13:98**
  - Proof standards, **13:101**
  - Proper showing, **13:103**
  - Scienter, **13:102**

**INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd

Standards, **13:101**

Undertakings, **13:97**

WorldCom, **13:109**

SROs, **13:303**

Standards

CFTC, **13:246**

SEC, **13:101**

State investigations, **13:319**

Tender offer challenges

Generally, **6:131 et seq., 6:137**

Balance of equities, **6:134**

Clean hands, **6:136**

Final relief, **6:140**

Inadequacy of other remedies,  
**6:133**

Irreparable injuries, **6:133**

Preliminary injunctions, **6:131 et seq.**

Probability of success, **6:132**

Proof elements, **6:132**

SEC actions, **6:138**

Time for relief, **6:139**

Types of relief, **6:135**

Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**

Types of relief, **6:135**

Undertakings, **13:97**

Victim access to penalty, fair funds,  
**13:116**

WorldCom, ancillary relief, **13:109**

**INNOCENT DEFENDANTS**

Strict liability, **8:243**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER**

**TRADING**

Generally, **7:152 et seq.**

Access criteria, **7:560**

Acquisition plans, **7:211**

Acquisitions, **7:214**

Administrative enforcement

Generally, **7:159, 7:415 et seq.**

Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**

Bounties, **7:445**

Burden of proof

Generally, **7:366**

Defenses, **7:369**

Institutions, **7:367**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER**

**TRADING—Cont'd**

Administrative enforcement—Cont'd

Civil penalties, **7:420**

Connection with requirement

Market transactions, **7:370**

Rule 10b-5, **7:370**

Rule 14e-3, **7:371**

Tender offers, **7:371**

Control person liability

Generally, **7:451 et seq.**

All control persons, **7:453**

Amount of liability, **7:459**

Broker-dealer control persons,  
**7:456**

B test, **7:456**

Contribution to violation, **7:458**

Failure to act, **7:455**

Investment adviser control  
persons, **7:456**

Knowledge

Failure to have preventive  
policies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Penalties imposed on, **7:440**

Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**

Reckless disregard

Failure to have preventive  
policies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Requirements, **7:452**

Respondeat superior liability,  
**7:450**

Substantial contribution to viola-  
tion, **7:458**

A test, **7:453**

Defenses

Generally, **7:350**

Amount defined, **7:355**

Binding contract defense, **7:351**

Burden of proving, **7:369**

Common terms and issues,  
**7:355 et seq.**

Date defined, **7:357**

Delegation alternative to  
amount, price and date,  
**7:358**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Administrative enforcement—Cont'd
- Defenses—Cont'd
  - Exclusiveness of defenses,  
**7:360**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Instructions defense, **7:352**
  - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
  - Price defined, **7:356**
  - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
  - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
  - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
- Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq.**
- Disposition of penalties, **7:445**
- Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**
- Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Informants, awards to, **7:445**
- Injunctive actions
  - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
  - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
  - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Institutional defenses, **7:361**
- Institutions
  - Burden of proof, **7:367**
  - Defenses, **7:361**
- Judge or jury, **7:421**
  - Generally, **7:421**
  - Penalty actions, **7:446**
- Martha Stewart case. Scierter, below in this group
- Misappropriation theory, **7:578**
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- Parties, **7:363**
- Penalty actions
  - Generally, **7:438**
  - Amount of penalty
    - Control persons, **7:459**
    - Court-imposed, **7:439**
  - Bounties, **7:445**
  - Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**
  - Court imposed penalties, **7:439**
  - Disposition of penalties, **7:445**
  - Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Administrative enforcement—Cont'd
- Penalty actions—Cont'd
  - Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**
  - Informants, awards to, **7:445**
  - Judge or jury, **7:446**
  - Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**
- Persons liable
  - Generally, **7:447**
  - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
  - Employers, **7:450**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Tippers, **7:448**
  - Traders, **7:448**
- Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
- Settled penalties, **7:444**
- Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
- Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **7:364**
  - Scierter, **7:398**
- Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
- Proof, **7:368**
- Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
- Reporting requirements
  - Generally, **7:175 et seq.**
  - Detection of illegal trades, **7:178**
- Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
- RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
- Sanctions, **7:417**
- Sanctions, statutory, **7:417**
- Scierter
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
  - Fiduciary theory
    - Tippers, **7:381**
    - Trading insiders, **7:377**
    - Trading tippees, **7:385**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
  - Martha Stewart case
    - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Administrative enforcement—Cont'd  
 Scienter—Cont'd  
   Martha Stewart case—Cont'd  
     Acquittal, **7:411**  
     Background of case, **7:404**  
     Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
     Indictment, **7:405**  
     Inferences from evidence,  
       **7:409**  
     Intent inference test, **7:410**  
     Limits on argument and evi-  
       dence, **7:407**  
     Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
     Sufficiency of evidence test,  
       **7:408**  
   Misappropriation theory  
     Tippers, **7:382**  
     Trading insiders, **7:378**  
     Trading tippees, **7:386**  
 Pleading, **7:398**  
 Proof, **7:399 et seq.**  
 Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**  
 Rule 14e-3, **7:412**  
 Tippers  
   Generally, **7:379 et seq.,**  
     **7:382**  
   Proof, **7:401**  
 Trading insiders  
   Generally, **7:375 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:400**  
 Trading tippees  
   Generally, **7:383 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:402**  
 SEA § 16(b), **7:159**  
 Tippees, penalties imposed on,  
   **7:439**  
 Tippers  
   Generally, **7:159**  
   Scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
 Tippers, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
 Wiretap in enforcement, **13:146,**  
   **13:153**  
 Advisers to issuers, **7:569**  
 Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**  
 Analysts' roles in full disclosure  
   regulations, **7:528**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Antifraud provisions and Regulation  
 FD disclosure, **7:546**  
 Arguments in Rajaratnam criminal  
   case  
   Closing arguments, **21:25**  
   Defense arguments, **21:38**  
   DOJ argument on nature and cir-  
     cumstances of offenses, **21:33**  
 Leadership role enhancement  
   (U.S.S.G. § 3B1.1(a)), **21:36,**  
   **21:42**  
 Limitation of gain to amount actu-  
   ally realized by defendant,  
   **21:40**  
 Obstruction enhancement under  
   U.S.S.G § 3C1.1, **21:43**  
 Sentencing arguments, **21:32**  
 Seriousness of offense overstated  
   under Sentencing Guidelines  
   calculations, **21:41**  
 Arrest of Raj Rajaratnam, **21:4**  
 Asset information, **7:206**  
 Awareness of MNPI  
   Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**  
   Possession distinguished, **7:349**  
 Bail in securities prosecutions. Raj  
   Rajaratnam and criminal insider  
   trading, below  
 Benefit of tipper, transmission of  
   information for, **7:661**  
 Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**  
 Blackouts, director and officer trad-  
   ing during, **7:161**  
 Bounties to informants, **7:445**  
 Burden of proof  
   Generally, **7:366**  
   Defenses, **7:369**  
   Institutions, **7:367**  
   Nonpublic nature of information,  
     **7:312**  
 Business associates to issuers, **7:570**  
 Business judgment, timely disclosure,  
   **7:241**  
 Calculation of sentence in Raj  
   Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:34**  
   et seq.  
 California statutes, **App G**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Case law, **7:182**
- Causation, **7:517**
- Chiasson/Newman cases, **7:387 et seq.**
- Chinese walls
  - Generally, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Evolution of rule, **7:344**
  - Operation, **7:345**
- Closing arguments, Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:25**
- Co-conspirators, Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, **21:20 to 21:24, 21:44**
- Common law, **7:153**
- Compulsory disclosure. Regulation FD disclosure, below
- Connection with requirement
  - Generally, **7:676 et seq.**
  - Inducing action, **7:682**
  - Investment decision, influencing, **7:682**
  - Market transactions, **7:370**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:680**
  - Non-participation in pertinent transactions, **7:677**
  - Possession vs use, **7:681**
  - Price, affecting, **7:682**
  - Purchase, inducing, **7:682**
  - Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
  - Tender offers, **7:371**
  - Touching test, **7:678**
- Conspirators, insider trades
  - Generally, **8:308**
  - Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, **21:20 to 21:24, 21:44**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Control person liability—Cont'd
- Failure to act, **7:455**
- Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
- Knowledge
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Penalties imposed on, **7:440**
- Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
- Private actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
- Reckless disregard
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Requirements, **7:452**
- Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
- Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
- A test, **7:453**
- Corporate information, **7:203 et seq.**
- Costs of enforcement, **7:195**
- Counts One through Five, Raj Rajaratnam conspiracies, **21:20 to 21:24**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Generally, **7:460 et seq.**
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
  - Martha Stewart case, below
  - New York district federal prosecutions, **App J**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
  - Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**
  - Restitution, **7:465**
  - RICO, **7:464**
  - Securities violations, **7:462**
- Damages, **7:488**
- Defenses
  - Generally, **7:350**
  - Amount defined, **7:355**
  - Binding contract defense, **7:351**



**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Defenses—Cont'd  
     Burden of proof, **7:369**  
     Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**  
     Date defined, **7:357**  
     Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**  
     Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**  
     Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
     Instructions defense, **7:352**  
     Overriding limitations, **7:359**  
     Price defined, **7:356**  
     Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:38**  
     Relation to other laws, **7:362**  
     Systematic plans defense, **7:353**  
     Tracking plans defense, **7:354**  
   Detention, pre-trial, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:6, 21:8**  
   Deteriorations in financial condition, **7:208**  
   Direct-impersonal dealing, tender offers, unregulated  
     Generally, **6:111**  
     Disclosure requirements, **6:114**  
   Disclose or abstain duty  
     Generally, **7:197 et seq.**  
     Duration of duty, **7:200**  
     Nature of duty, **7:198**  
     Regulation FD disclosure, below  
     Who is entitled to disclosure, **7:199**  
   Disproportionate liability, **7:196**  
   Dividend actions  
     Generally, **7:207**  
     When disclosure required, **7:246**  
   DOJ argument on nature and circumstances of Rajaratnam's criminal offenses, **21:33**  
   Earnings information  
     Generally, **7:205**  
     Predictions, **7:204**  
   Employers, harm to, **7:190**  
   Evidence  
     Burden of proof, above  
     Trial on the merits, proof at, **21:19**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Evidence—Cont'd  
     Wiretap. Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, below  
   Exemption provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:548**  
   Expansion era, scope of regulations, **7:560**  
   Family of tippee, benefit to, **7:630**  
   Federal bail in securities prosecutions, **21:8**  
   Federal securities laws, **7:155 et seq., 7:162 et seq.**  
   Federal Sentencing Guidelines  
     Length of sentence, **21:30**  
     Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, **21:28 to 21:31**  
     Statutory maximum, **21:29**  
     Strategies, **21:31**  
     Structure of Guidelines, **21:28**  
   Fiduciary relationships  
     Breach, misappropriation theory and fiduciary breach, **7:576**  
     Contraction era, **7:576**  
     Creation  
       Generally, **7:567**  
       Advisers to issuers, **7:569**  
       Business associates of issuers, **7:570**  
       Law characterizing relation, **7:573**  
       Position with issuer, **7:568**  
       Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**  
       Securities professionals, **7:572**  
     Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**  
     Expansion era, **7:574**  
     Issuers, **7:565**  
     Market insiders, **7:575**  
     Private actions, **7:498**  
     Scope of relationships, **7:562 et seq.**  
     Tippers, **7:381**  
     Trading insiders, **7:377**  
     Trading tippees, **7:385**  
     With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**
- Foreign law, **7:201**
- Friends of tippee, benefit to, **7:630**
- Full disclosure
  - Duty triggered by partial disclosure, **7:536**
  - Regulation FD disclosure, below
- Galleon conspiracy, Count One, **21:20**
- Gift to relative, **7:396**
- Harmless insider trading, **7:194**
- Harm to employers, **7:190**
- Harm to individual investors, **7:186, 7:187**
- Harm to investor confidence, **7:184**
- Harm to issuers, **7:188**
- Harm to market integrity, **7:185**
- Harm to principals, **7:190**
- Hearing, bail, **21:9**
- High frequency trading and front running, **7:169**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing
  - For detailed treatment
    - See **Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
  - Generally, **7:152 et seq.**
  - Acquisition plans, **7:211**
  - Administrative enforcement
    - Generally, **7:415 et seq., 7:416 et seq.**
    - Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**
    - Civil penalties, **7:420**
    - Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq.**
    - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
    - Injunctive actions
      - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
    - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
    - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
    - Judge or jury, **7:421**
    - Penalty actions, below
    - Sanctions, statutory, **7:417**
  - Antifraud provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:546**
  - Asset information, **7:206**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Awareness of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**
  - Possession distinguished, **7:349**
- On basis of inside information, trades made, **7:348**
- Blackouts, director and officer trading during, **7:161**
- Blue sky law, **7:154**
- Burden of proof
  - Generally, **7:366**
  - Defenses, **7:369**
  - Institutions, **7:367**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:312**
- Case law, recent, **7:182**
- Chiasson/Newman cases, **7:387 et seq.**
- Common law, **7:153**
- Connection with requirement
  - Generally, **7:676 et seq.**
  - Inducing action, **7:682**
  - Investment decision, influencing, **7:682**
  - Market transactions, **7:370**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:680**
  - Non-participation in pertinent transactions, **7:677**
  - Possession vs use, **7:681**
  - Price, affecting, **7:682**
  - Purchase, inducing, **7:682**
  - Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
  - Tender offers, **7:371**
  - Touching test, **7:678**
- Corporate information, **7:203 et seq.**
- Costs of enforcement, **7:195**
- Criminal enforcement, **7:465**
- Defendants as insiders, **7:102**
- Defenses to insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:350**
  - Amount defined, **7:355**
  - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
  - Burden of proof, **7:369**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Defenses to insider trading charges  
     —Cont'd  
         Common terms and issues,  
             **7:355 et seq.**  
         Date defined, **7:357**  
         Delegation alternative to  
             amount, price and date,  
             **7:358**  
         Exclusiveness of defenses,  
             **7:360**  
         Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
         Instructions defense, **7:352**  
         Overriding limitations, **7:359**  
         Price defined, **7:356**  
         Relation to other laws, **7:362**  
         Systematic plans defense, **7:353**  
         Tracking plans defense, **7:354**  
 Deteriorations in financial condi-  
 tion, **7:208**  
 Disclose or abstain duty  
     Generally, **7:197 et seq.**  
     Duration of duty, **7:200**  
     Nature of duty, **7:198**  
     Regulation FD disclosure, below  
     Who is entitled to disclosure,  
         **7:199**  
 Disproportionate liability, **7:196**  
 Dividend actions  
     Generally, **7:207**  
     When disclosure required, **7:246**  
 Earnings  
     Generally, **7:205**  
     Predictions, **7:204**  
 Employers, harm to, **7:190**  
 Exemption provisions and Regula-  
 tion FD disclosure, **7:548**  
 Federal securities laws, **7:155 et**  
     **seq., 7:162 et seq.**  
 Fiduciary breach and misappropri-  
 ation theory, **7:315**  
 Fiduciary relationships  
     Contraction era, **7:576**  
     Creation  
         Generally, **7:567**  
         Advisers to issuers, **7:569**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Fiduciary relationships—Cont'd  
     Creation—Cont'd  
         Business associates of issuers,  
             **7:570**  
         Law characterizing relation,  
             **7:573**  
         Position with issuer, **7:568**  
         Prior dealings, creation by,  
             **7:571**  
         Securities professionals,  
             **7:572**  
     Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**  
     Expansion era, **7:574**  
     Issuers, **7:565**  
     Market insiders, **7:575**  
     Scienter, **7:381**  
     Scope of relationships, **7:561 et**  
         **seq.**  
     With whom must relationship  
         exist, **7:562 et seq.**  
 Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**  
 Foreign law, **7:201**  
 Full disclosure  
     Duty triggered by partial  
         disclosure of nonpublic  
         information, **7:536**  
     Regulation FD disclosure, below  
 Gift to relative, **7:396**  
 Harmless insider trading, **7:194**  
 Harm to employers, **7:190**  
 Harm to individual investors,  
     **7:186, 7:187**  
 Harm to investor confidence, **7:184**  
 Harm to issuers, **7:188**  
 Harm to market integrity, **7:185**  
 Harm to principals, **7:190**  
 Individual investors, harm to,  
     **7:186, 7:187**  
 Information, unequal, **7:181**  
 Information possession criteria,  
     **7:576**  
 Insider short sales, **7:157**  
 Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
 Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**  
 Internal rules, **7:173**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Investor confidence, harm to,  
**7:184**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Periodic reports, **7:289**
  - Press releases, **7:283**
  - Prospectuses, **7:286**
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - SEC filings, **7:285**
  - Shareholder communications,  
**7:284**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
- Issuer liability
  - Generally, **7:643 et seq.**
  - Advisers, **7:652**
  - Affiliated entities, **7:647**
  - Business associates, **7:653**
  - Contraction era, **7:646**
  - Directors, **7:649**
  - Employees, **7:650**
  - Expansion era, **7:645**
  - Officers, **7:648**
  - Shareholders, **7:651**
  - Tippees, **7:654**
- Issuers, harm to, **7:188**
- Judge or jury
  - Administrative enforcement,  
**7:421**
  - Penalty actions, **7:446**
- Kinds of information
  - Generally, **7:202 et seq.**
  - Acquisition plans, **7:211**
  - Acquisitions, **7:214**
  - Assets, **7:206**
  - Corporate information, **7:203 et seq.**
  - Deteriorations in financial  
condition, **7:208**
  - Dividends, **7:207**
  - Earnings
    - Generally, **7:205**
    - Predictions, **7:204**
  - Market information, **7:213 et seq.**
  - Operational information, **7:209**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Kinds of information—Cont'd
    - Outside information, **7:213 et seq.**
    - Predictions, earning, **7:204**
    - Publicity, **7:216**
    - Recommendations, **7:215**
    - Share repurchase plans, **7:210**
    - Tender offers, **7:214**
- Law and fact questions, **7:314**
- Limitations period, disclosure as  
starting, **7:279**
- Mail and wire fraud
  - Generally, **7:171, 7:463**
  - Scienter, **7:413**
- Management compensation, **7:193**
- Market efficiency, **7:192**
- Market insiders, **7:575**
- Market integrity harm to, **7:185**
- Market reaction as public/  
nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Martha Stewart case. Scienter,  
below in this group
- Materiality
  - Generally, **7:218 et seq.**
  - Acquisitions
    - Negotiated, **7:262 et seq.**
    - Nonnegotiated, **7:270**
  - Actual market impact after  
release, **7:236**
  - Aggregate materiality, **7:225**
  - Burden of proof, **7:226**
  - Dividend information, **7:247**
  - Evidence, **7:229 et seq.**
  - Expectations, relation to, **7:233**
  - Factors, **7:229 et seq.**
  - Graduations of materiality,  
**7:224**
  - Law or fact issue, **7:227**
  - Magnitude relative to company,  
**7:230**
  - Market release, actual impact of,  
**7:236**
  - Probability relative to company,  
**7:230**
  - Proof, **7:226**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Materiality—Cont'd
  - Public disclosure and materiality, **7:280**
  - Public information, relation of inside information to, **7:234**
  - Readily available information compared, **7:234**
  - Reasonable investor test
    - Generally, **7:221**
    - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
  - Regulation FD triggering disclosures, **7:535**
  - Relation to expectations, **7:233**
  - Reliability, **7:231**
  - Specificity, **7:232**
  - Standard of proof, **7:228**
  - Substantial market impact test
    - Generally, **7:222**
    - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
  - Tests of materiality
    - Generally, **7:219 et seq.**
    - Aggregate materiality test, **7:225**
    - Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
    - Mosaic theory, **7:225**
    - Reasonable investor test
      - Generally, **7:221**
      - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
    - Significant alteration of total mix, **7:221**
    - Substantial market impact test
      - Generally, **7:222**
      - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
    - Use as test of materiality, **7:235**
  - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Media disclosures
    - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
    - Particular media, **7:299**
    - Timing, **7:297**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Method of disclosure, Regulation FD, **7:544**
- Misappropriation theory
  - Private actions, **7:499**
  - Scienter, tippers, **7:382**
- Misrepresentations, disclosures as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- MNPI
  - Defined, **7:152**
  - Materiality, above
  - Nonpublic information, below
- Moral considerations, **7:189**
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Periodic reports, **7:289**
  - Press releases, **7:283**
  - Prospectuses, **7:286**
  - Proxy statements, **7:287**
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - SEC filings, **7:285**
  - Shareholder communications, **7:284**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
- Law and fact questions, **7:314**
- Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Nonpublic information—Cont'd
  - Media disclosures
    - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
    - Particular media, **7:299**
    - Timing, **7:297**
  - Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Motion practice, **7:311**
  - Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **7:310**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:313**
  - Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:312**
  - Rumors, **7:301**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
  - Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Operational information, **7:209**
- Opposite side traders
  - Damages, **7:522**
  - Elements of action, **7:518**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
  - Suits by, **7:504**
- Parties, **7:363**
- Penalty actions, below
- Persons subject to regulation
  - Generally, **7:642 et seq.**
  - Advisers, **7:652**
  - Affiliated entities, **7:647**
  - Business associates, **7:653**
  - Contraction era, **7:646**
  - Directors, **7:649**
  - Employees, **7:650**
  - Expansion era, **7:645**
  - Issuers, **7:643 et seq.**
  - Officers, **7:648**
  - Shareholders, **7:651**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Persons subject to regulation—Cont'd
  - Tippees, **7:654**
- Pervasiveness, **7:195**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **7:364**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**
  - Scienter, **7:398**
- Policies, preventive
  - Generally, **7:468 et seq.**
  - Arguments con, **7:180 et seq.**
  - Arguments pro, **7:191 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **7:470**
  - Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**
  - Education, **7:473**
  - Information policies and procedures, **7:474**
  - Investment advisers, **7:470**
  - Nature of policies and procedures, **7:472**
  - Organizations, requirements for, **7:471**
  - Procedures, **7:476**
  - Sanctions for violations, **7:477**
  - Tipping policies, **7:475**
  - Trading policies, **7:475**
- Possession of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**
  - Chinese walls
    - Generally, **7:343 et seq.**
    - Evolution of rule, **7:344**
    - Operation, **7:345**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Possession of MNPI—Cont'd  
     Precautions against trading,  
         **7:346**  
     Proof, **7:322 et seq.**  
     Rule 10b-5  
         Generally, **7:318 et seq.**  
         Access, proof of, **7:323**  
         Awareness and possession  
             distinguished, **7:349**  
         Burden of proof, **7:321**  
         Contact, proof of, **7:324**  
         Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**  
         Knowing possession, **7:320**  
         Mere possession, **7:319**  
         Organizations, proof for,  
             **7:326**  
         Proof, **7:322 et seq.**  
         Trading, proof of, **7:325**  
         Use inferred from possession,  
             **7:328**  
     Rule 14e-3  
         Generally, **7:340 et seq.**  
         Burden of proof, **7:341**  
         Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**  
         Individuals, proof for, **7:342**  
         Organizations, proof for,  
             **7:343 et seq.**  
         Precautions against trading,  
             **7:346**  
         Standard of proof, **7:341**  
         Standard of proof, **7:341**  
         Use compared, **7:317**  
 Predictions, earnings, **7:204**  
 Principals, harm to, **7:190**  
 Private actions  
     Generally, **7:478 et seq., 7:491  
         et seq.**  
     Amount of liability, **7:488,  
         7:521 et seq.**  
     Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**  
     Background, **7:501**  
     Causation, **7:517**  
     Contemporaneous traders,  
         actions by, **7:503 et seq.**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Private actions—Cont'd  
     Control persons, actions against,  
         **7:486, 7:512**  
     Convertibles traders, suits by,  
         **7:508**  
     Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**  
     Elements of action, **7:514 et  
         seq.**  
     Express causes of action, **7:478  
         et seq.**  
     Fiduciary theory, **7:498**  
     Implied causes of action, **7:491  
         et seq., 7:493 et seq.**  
     Market, relation of parties to,  
         **7:493 et seq.**  
     Misappropriation theory, **7:499**  
     Opposite side traders  
         Damages, **7:522**  
         Elements of action, **7:518**  
         Relations of parties to market,  
             **7:494**  
         Suits by, **7:504**  
     Option traders, suits by, **7:507**  
     Other liabilities, relation to,  
         **7:489**  
     Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**  
     Parties plaintiff  
         Express causes of action,  
             **7:480 et seq.**  
         Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
     Relation to other liabilities,  
         **7:489, 7:524**  
     Reliance, **7:516**  
     Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**  
     Rule 14e-3, **7:500**  
     Same class of securities, actions  
         by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**  
     Same side traders  
         Damages, **7:523**  
         Elements of action, **7:519**  
         Relations of parties to market,  
             **7:495**  
         Suits by, **7:505**  
     Standing, **7:520**  
     Tippers, actions against, **7:485,  
         7:511**



## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Private actions—Cont'd
- Traders
  - Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**
  - Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**
  - Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**
  - Who can sue
    - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**
    - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
- Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
- Prompt disclosure requirement, Regulation FD, **7:543**
- Proof
  - Generally, **7:368**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:313**
- Protection of information traders, **7:183**
- Proximity of tippee, **7:673**
- Public or nonpublic character of information. Nonpublic information, above
- Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
- Reasons
  - Con, **7:180 et seq.**
  - Pro, **7:191 et seq.**
- Registration provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:547**
- Regulation FD disclosure
  - Generally, **7:526 et seq.**
  - Analysts' roles, **7:528**
  - Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**
  - Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**
  - Companies covered, **7:545**
  - Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**
  - Enforcement, **7:549**
  - Exemption provisions and, **7:548**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
- Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
- Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
- Method of disclosure, **7:544**
- Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
- Policy basis, **7:527**
- Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
- Registration provisions and, **7:547**
- Regulatory gap, **7:530**
- Scope of regulation, **7:545**
- SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**
- Selective disclosure
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
- Triggering events
  - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Non-intentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
- Triggering events—Cont'd
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Validity, **7:550**
  - Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
- Relative gift, **7:396**
- Reliance, **7:516**
- Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**
- Reporting requirements
  - Generally, **7:175 et seq.**
  - Detection of illegal trades, **7:178**
  - Extent of activity, **7:179**
  - Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**
  - Publication, **7:176**
- RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
- Rule 10b-5, **7:163**
- Rule 14e-3, **7:166**
- Rule 15c1-2, **7:165**
- Rule 144, **7:167**
- SA § 17(a), **7:164**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
- Fiduciary theory
  - Tippers, **7:381**
  - Trading insiders, **7:377**
  - Trading tippees, **7:385**
- Knowledge that tippee will trade, **7:662**
- Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
- Martha Stewart case
  - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Acquittal, **7:411**
  - Background of case, **7:404**
  - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
  - Indictment, **7:405**
  - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
  - Intent inference test, **7:410**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Martha Stewart case—Cont'd
    - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
    - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
    - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
- Misappropriation theory
  - Tippers, **7:382**
- Trading insiders, **7:378**
- Trading tippees, **7:386**
- Pleading, **7:398**
- Proof, **7:399 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
- Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
- Tippee violations, **7:672**
- Tippers
  - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:401**
- Tipping violations, **7:662**
- Trading insiders
  - Generally, **7:375 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:400**
- Trading tippees
  - Generally, **7:383 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:402**
- Scope of regulations
  - Generally, **7:557 et seq.**
  - Access criteria, **7:560**
  - Buyers, **7:563**
  - Congressional intent, **7:559**
  - Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **7:560**
  - Issuers, applicability to, **7:565**
  - Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
  - SEC efforts to define, **7:559**
  - Sellers, **7:563**
  - Third parties, applicability to, **7:566**
  - Unfairness criteria, **7:560**
- SEA § 16(b)
  - Generally, **7:156 et seq.**
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:159**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - SEA § 16(b)—Cont'd
    - Blackouts, director and officer trading during, **7:161**
    - Civil penalties, **7:159**
    - Insider short sales, **7:157**
    - Private actions, **7:160**
    - Short swing trading, **7:156**
    - Tipping, **7:158**
- SEC Rule 14e-3
  - Generally, **7:632 et seq.**
  - Duty imposed, **7:633**
  - Supreme Court validation, **7:636, 7:637**
  - Validity, **7:634 et seq.**
- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Share repurchase plans, **7:210**
- Short swing trading, SEA § 16(b), **7:156**
- SRO rules, **7:168**
- State law, **7:153**
- Timely disclosure
  - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**
  - Acquisition information
    - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
  - Agreements
    - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
    - Disclosure required, **7:260**
  - Company, trading by, **7:256**
  - Definitions, **7:250**
  - Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
  - Leaks, **7:255**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Timely disclosure—Cont'd
  - Acquisition information—Cont'd
    - Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
  - Preliminary negotiations
    - Misleading statements, **7:253**
    - No statement made, **7:252**
    - Other situations, **7:254**
  - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
  - Rumors, **7:255**
  - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
  - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
  - When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
  - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
- Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
- Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
- Delays, justifications for, **7:240**
- Dividend actions
  - Evolving information, **7:245**
  - Materiality, **7:247**
  - When disclosure required, **7:246**
- Justification for delay, **7:240**
- Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
- Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **7:267**
  - Materiality, **7:270**
  - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
  - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Tippee's knowledge of tipper's benefit, **7:387**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Tippee violations  
   Generally, **7:664 et seq.**  
   Benefit to tipper, **7:671**  
   Elements of, **7:668 et seq.**  
   Expansion era, **7:665**  
   Issuer affiliated, **7:654**  
   Knowledge of inside source,  
     **7:672**  
   Misappropriation, **7:675**  
   Policies, **7:666**  
   Possession element, **7:669**  
   Proof of possession element,  
     **7:670**  
   Proximity of tippee, **7:673**  
   Reasons, **7:666**  
   Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**  
   Scienter, **7:672**  
   Specificity of possession ele-  
     ment, **7:669**  
   Theories of, **7:667**  
   Tipper violation, necessity of,  
     **7:674**  
   Trading as violation, **7:664 et**  
     **seq., 7:675**  
 Tipsters, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
 Tipping  
   Generally, **7:655 et seq.**  
   Benefit of tipper, transmission of  
     information for, **7:661**  
   Elements of violations, **7:658 et**  
     **seq.**  
   Expansion era, **7:656**  
   Knowledge that tippee will  
     trade, **7:662**  
   Necessity of tippee trading,  
     **7:663**  
   Nonpublic information, **7:272 et**  
     **seq.**  
   Policies, **7:657**  
   Private purpose, transmission of  
     information for, **7:661**  
   Proof of transmission of infor-  
     mation, **7:660**  
   Reasons, **7:657**  
   Scienter, **7:662**  
   SEA § 16(b), **7:158**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Tipping—Cont'd  
   Transmission of information,  
     **7:659**  
   Violations, elements, **7:658 et**  
     **seq.**  
 Unequal information, **7:181**  
 Unfairness of activities, **7:181**  
 Unintentional disclosures and  
   Regulation FD disclosure,  
     **7:540**  
 Use of MNPI  
   Generally, **7:316**  
   Burden of proof, **7:331**  
   Connection with transaction,  
     **7:681**  
   Individuals, proof for, **7:332**  
   Organizations, proof for, **7:339**  
   Possession compared, **7:317**  
   Rule 10b-5  
     Generally, **7:327 et seq.**  
     Burden of proof, **7:331**  
     Individuals, proof for, **7:332**  
     Inferences, **7:328**  
     Organizations, proof for,  
       **7:339**  
     Possession, use inferred from,  
       **7:328**  
     Rebuttal evidence, **7:337,**  
       **7:338**  
     Size of transaction, proof  
       value, **7:334**  
     Standard of proof, **7:331**  
     Timing, proof of, **7:333**  
     Type of transaction, proof  
       value, **7:335**  
   Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**  
   Size of transaction, proof value,  
     **7:334**  
   Standard of proof, **7:331**  
   Timing, proof of, **7:333**  
   Type of transaction, proof value,  
     **7:335**  
 Individual investors, harm to, **7:186,**  
   **7:187**  
 Inducement by insiders, **8:299**  
 Informants, awards to, **7:445**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Information, unequal, **7:181**
- Information generally, **7:4**
- Insider short sales, **7:157**
- Insider trading law enforcement (SEC)
  - Generally, **7:415 et seq.**
- Administrative proceedings
  - Generally, **7:416 et seq.**
  - Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**
  - Civil penalties, **7:420**
  - Disgorgement, **7:418**
  - Judge or jury, **7:421**
  - Sanctions, statutory, **7:417**
- Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
- Disgorgement orders
  - Administrative proceedings, **7:425 et seq.**
  - Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
- Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Injunctive actions
  - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
  - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
  - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Judge or jury
  - Administrative proceedings, **7:421**
  - Penalty actions, **7:446**
- Penalty actions, 6:347 et seq.
- Policies, preventive
  - Generally, **7:468 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **7:470**
  - Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**
  - Education, **7:473**
  - Information policies and procedures, **7:474**
  - Investment advisers, **7:470**
  - Nature of policies and procedures, **7:472**
  - Organizations, requirements for, **7:471**
  - Procedures, **7:476**
  - Sanctions for violations, **7:477**
  - Tipping policies, **7:475**
  - Trading policies, **7:475**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Insider trading law enforcement (SEC)—Cont'd
  - Scope of regulations, **7:559**
- Institutional investors
  - Burden of proof, **7:367**
  - Defenses, **7:361**
- Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
- Internal rules, **7:173**
- Interpositioning, **7:170**
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
  - See also **Investigations** (this index)
  - SEC investigations, below
- Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Investor confidence, harm to, **7:184**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Periodic reports, **7:289**
  - Press releases, **7:283**
  - Prospectuses, **7:286**
  - Proxy statements, **7:287**
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - SEC filings, **7:285**
  - Shareholder communications, **7:284**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
- Issuers, harm to, **7:188**
- Joint and several liability, **9:36**
- Judge or jury
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:421**
  - Criminal proceedings, **7:467**
  - Penalty actions, **7:446**
  - Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, jury trial, **21:26**
- Kinds of information
  - Generally, **7:202 et seq.**
  - Acquisitions, **7:214**
  - Corporate information, **7:203 et seq.**
  - Publicity, **7:216**
  - Recommendations, **7:215**
  - Tender offers, **7:214**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Knowledge of inside source, tippee violations, **7:672**  
 Knowledge that tippee will trade, **7:662**  
 Law and fact questions, nonpublic character of information, **7:314**  
 Leadership role sentencing enhancement (U.S.S.G. § 3B1.1(a)), **21:36**  
 Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**  
 Mail and wire fraud  
     Generally, **7:171, 7:463**  
     Scienter, **7:413**  
 Management compensation, **7:193**  
 Market efficiency, **7:192**  
 Market insiders, **7:575**  
 Market integrity harm to, **7:185**  
 Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**  
 Martha Stewart case  
     Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
     Acquittal, **7:411**  
     Background of case, **7:404**  
     Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
     Indictment, **7:405**  
     Inferences from evidence, **7:409**  
     Intent inference test, **7:410**  
     Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**  
     Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
     Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
     Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**  
 Materiality  
     Generally, **7:218 et seq.**  
     Acquisitions  
         Negotiations, **7:262 et seq.**  
         Nonnegotiated, **7:270**  
     Actual market impact after release, **7:236**  
     Aggregate materiality, **7:225**  
     Burden of proof, **7:226**  
     Dividend information, **7:247**  
     Evidence, **7:229 et seq.**  
     Expectations, relation to, **7:233**  
     Factors, **7:229 et seq.**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Materiality—Cont'd  
     Graduations of materiality, **7:224**  
     Law or fact issue, **7:227**  
     Magnitude relative to company, **7:230**  
     Market release, actual impact of, **7:236**  
     Probability relative to company, **7:230**  
     Proof, **7:226**  
     Public disclosure and materiality, **7:280**  
     Public information, relation of inside information to, **7:234**  
     Readily available information compared, **7:234**  
     Reasonable investor test  
         Generally, **7:221**  
         Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**  
     Regulation FD triggering disclosures, **7:535**  
     Relation to expectations, **7:233**  
     Reliability, **7:231**  
     Selective disclosures, materiality of, **7:535**  
     Specificity, **7:232**  
     Standard of proof, **7:228**  
     Substantial market impact test  
         Generally, **7:222**  
         Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**  
     Tests of materiality  
         Generally, **7:219 et seq.**  
         Aggregate materiality test, **7:225**  
         Graduations of materiality, **7:224**  
         Mosaic theory, **7:225**  
         Reasonable investor test  
             Generally, **7:221**  
             Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**  
         Significant alteration of total mix, **7:221**  
         Substantial market impact test  
             Generally, **7:222**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Materiality—Cont'd
  - Tests of materiality—Cont'd
    - Substantial market impact test—Cont'd
      - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
    - Use as test of, **7:235**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280, 21:16**
- Material nonpublic information (MNPI)
  - Defined, **7:152**
  - Materiality, above
  - Nonpublic information, below
- Media disclosures
  - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
  - Particular media, **7:299**
  - Timing, **7:297**
- Merits, trial on, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:19**
- Method of disclosure, Regulation FD, **7:544**
- Misappropriation theory of liability
  - Generally, **7:577**
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Close family relationships, **7:587**
  - Connection element, **7:597**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
  - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
  - Enforcement actions, **7:578**
  - Family relationships, **7:587**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**
  - Private actions, **7:499, 7:579, 7:603**
  - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**
  - Tippers, **7:382**
  - Trading insiders, **7:378**
  - Trading tippees, **7:386**
- Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- MNPI
  - Defined, **7:152**
  - Materiality, above
  - Nonpublic information, below
- Monitoring rules in context, **7:174**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Moral considerations, **7:189**
- Motion practice
  - Generally, **7:365**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:311**
  - Suppression of wiretap evidence, **21:12**
- Mutual fund violations, **17:9**
- Necessity requirement, wiretap evidence in Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:14, 21:17**
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Periodic reports, **7:289**
  - Press releases, **7:283**
  - Prospectuses, **7:286**
  - Proxy statements, **7:287**
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - SEC filings, **7:285**
  - Shareholder communications, **7:284**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
- Law and fact questions, **7:314**
- Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
- Media disclosures
  - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
  - Particular media, **7:299**
  - Timing, **7:297**



**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Nonpublic information—Cont'd  
   Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**  
   Motion practice, **7:311**  
   Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**  
   Pleading, **7:310**  
   Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**  
   Proof, **7:313**  
   Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**  
   Quantum of proof, **7:312**  
   Rumors, **7:301**  
   Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**  
   Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**  
 NYSE rules, **App F**  
 Obstruction sentencing enhancement under U.S.S.G § 3C1.1, **21:37, 21:43**  
 Omissions  
   Materiality of, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:16**  
   Public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**  
 On basis of inside information, trades made, **7:348**  
 Operational information, **7:209**  
 Opposite side traders  
   Damages, **7:522**  
   Elements of action, **7:518**  
   Relations of parties to market, **7:494**  
   Suits by, **7:504**  
 Opposition to motion to suppress wiretap evidence, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:13**  
 Overview, **7:638 et seq.**  
 Parties, **7:363**  
 Pecuniary benefit to tippee, **7:628**  
 Penalty actions  
   Generally, **7:438**  
   Aider-abettors, **7:449**  
   Amount of penalty  
     Control persons, **7:459**  
     Court-imposed, **7:439**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Penalty actions—Cont'd  
   Bounties, **7:445**  
   Control person liability  
     Generally, **7:451 et seq.**  
     All control persons, **7:453**  
     Amount of liability, **7:459**  
     Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**  
     B test, **7:456**  
     Contribution to violation, **7:458**  
     Failure to act, **7:455**  
     Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**  
     Knowledge  
       Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**  
       Likelihood of violation, **7:454**  
     Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**  
     Reckless disregard  
       Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**  
       Likelihood of violation, **7:454**  
     Requirements, **7:452**  
     Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**  
     Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**  
     A test, **7:453**  
   Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**  
   Court imposed penalties, **7:439**  
   Disposition of penalties, **7:445**  
   Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**  
   Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**  
   Informants, awards to, **7:445**  
   Judge or jury, **7:446**  
   Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**  
   Persons liable  
     Generally, **7:447**  
     Aider-abettors, **7:449**  
     Control person liability, above  
     Employers, **7:450**  
     Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Penalty actions—Cont'd
  - Persons liable—Cont'd
    - Tipplers, **7:448**
    - Traders, **7:448**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Settled penalties, **7:444**
  - Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
  - Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
- Persons subject to regulation
  - Generally, **7:642 et seq.**
  - Advisers, **7:652**
  - Affiliated entities, **7:647**
  - Business associates, **7:653**
  - Contraction era, **7:646**
  - Directors, **7:649**
  - Employees, **7:650**
  - Expansion era, **7:645**
  - Issuers, **7:643 et seq.**
  - Officers, **7:648**
  - Shareholders, **7:651**
  - Tippees, **7:654**
- Pervasiveness, **7:195**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **7:364**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**
  - Scienter, **7:398**
- Policies, preventive
  - Generally, **7:468 et seq.**
  - Arguments pro, **7:191 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **7:470**
  - Con arguments, **7:180 et seq.**
  - Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**
  - Education, **7:473**
  - Information policies and procedures, **7:474**
  - Investment advisers, **7:470**
  - Nature of policies and procedures, **7:472**
  - Organizations, requirements for, **7:471**
  - Procedures, **7:476**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Policies, preventive—Cont'd
  - Sanctions for violations, **7:477**
  - Tipping policies, **7:475**
  - Trading policies, **7:475**
- Possession of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**
  - Chinese walls
    - Generally, **7:343 et seq.**
    - Evolution of rule, **7:344**
    - Operation, **7:345**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
- Precautions against trading, **7:346**
- Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **7:318 et seq.**
  - Access, proof of, **7:323**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321**
  - Contact, proof of, **7:324**
  - Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:326**
  - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
  - Trading, proof of, **7:325**
  - Use inferred from possession, **7:328**
- Rule 14e-3
  - Generally, **7:340 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
  - Standard of proof, **7:341**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Possession of MNPI—Cont'd  
     Standard of proof, **7:341**  
     Use compared, **7:317**  
 Predictions, earning, **7:204**  
 Pre-trial detention, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:6, 21:8**  
 Principals, harm to, **7:190**  
 Private actions  
     Generally, **7:478 et seq., 7:491 et seq.**  
     Amount of liability, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**  
     Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**  
     Background, **7:501**  
     Causation, **7:517**  
     Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**  
     Control persons, actions against, **7:486, 7:512**  
     Convertibles traders, suits by, **7:508**  
     Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**  
     Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**  
     Express causes of action, **7:478 et seq.**  
     Fiduciary theory, **7:498**  
     Implied causes of action, **7:491 et seq., 7:493 et seq.**  
     Market, relation of parties to, **7:493 et seq.**  
     Misappropriation theory, **7:499**  
     Opposite side traders  
         Damages, **7:522**  
         Elements of action, **7:518**  
         Relations of parties to market, **7:494**  
         Suits by, **7:504**  
     Option traders, suits by, **7:507**  
     Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**  
     Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**  
     Parties plaintiff  
         Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**  
         Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
         Relation to other liabilities, **7:489, 7:524**  
         Reliance, **7:516**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Private actions—Cont'd  
     Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**  
     Rule 14e-3, **7:500**  
     Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**  
     Same side traders  
         Damages, **7:523**  
         Elements of action, **7:519**  
         Relations of parties to market, **7:495**  
         Suits by, **7:505**  
     SEA § 16(b), **7:160**  
     Standing, **7:520**  
     Tippers, actions against, **7:485, 7:511**  
     Traders  
         Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**  
         Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**  
     Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**  
     Who can sue, generally, **7:502**  
     Who may sue  
         Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**  
         Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
     Private purpose, transmission of information for, **7:661**  
     Privity  
         Implied liability, **8:277**  
         SA § 12(2), **8:267**  
         SA § 17(a), **8:277**  
         Sales fraud, **8:267**  
     Probable cause, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:15**  
     Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**  
     Prompt disclosure requirement, Regulation FD, **7:543**  
     Proof  
         Generally, **7:368**  
         Materiality, **7:226**  
         Nonpublic nature of information, **7:313**  
         Transmission of information, **7:660**  
     Protection of information traders, **7:183**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Proximity of tippee, **7:673**  
Publicity, **7:216**  
Public or nonpublic character of  
information. Nonpublic informa-  
tion, above  
Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**  
Rajaratnam-Chiesi conspiracy, Count  
Five, **21:24**  
Rajaratnam-Goel conspiracy, Count  
Three, **21:22**  
Rajaratnam-Khan conspiracy, Count  
Two, **21:21**  
Rajaratnam-Kumar conspiracy, Count  
Four, **21:23**  
Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider  
trading  
Generally, **21:1 et seq.**  
Arguments in Rajaratnam criminal  
case, above  
Arrest of Rajaratnam, **21:4**  
Background of Rajaratnam, **21:2**  
Bail hearing, **21:9**  
Bail in securities prosecutions  
Generally, **21:5**  
Federal bail, **21:8**  
Final word, **21:10**  
Hearing, **21:9**  
Calculation of gain under U.S.S.G.,  
by Rajaratnam, **21:39, 21:40**  
Calculation of sentence, **21:34 et  
seq.**  
Closing arguments, **21:25**  
Co-conspirators' sentences, **21:44**  
Conclusions and observations on  
sentencing, **21:49**  
Counts One through Five, **21:20 to  
21:24**  
Court decision on suppression of  
wiretap evidence, **21:14**  
Criminal offenses, DOJ argument  
on nature and circumstances,  
**21:33**  
Defense arguments on nature and  
character of defendant, **21:38**  
Disputes, opinion of Judge Holwell  
resolving sentencing disputes,  
**21:45**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider  
trading—Cont'd  
DOJ arguments, **21:33**  
Early investigation by SEC, **21:3**  
Failure to establish probable cause,  
**21:15**  
Federal bail, **21:8**  
Federal Sentencing Guidelines,  
**21:28 to 21:31**  
Gain, **21:35, 21:39, 21:40**  
Galleon conspiracy  
Count One, **21:20**  
Gain, **21:46**  
Government opposition to suppres-  
sion of wiretap evidence,  
**21:13**  
Government's technical sentencing  
guideline calculation, **21:34**  
Hearing, bail, **21:9**  
Interpretation of Sentencing  
Guidelines, **21:46**  
Investigation by SEC, early, **21:3**  
Judge Holwell's opinions, **21:45,**  
**21:46**  
Jury trial, **21:26**  
Leadership role enhancement  
(U.S.S.G. § 3B1.1(a)), **21:36,**  
**21:42, 21:47**  
Length of sentence under Federal  
Sentencing Guidelines, **21:30**  
Limitation of gain to amount actu-  
ally realized by defendant,  
**21:40**  
Materiality of omissions, **21:16**  
Motion to suppress wiretap evi-  
dence, **21:12**  
Necessity requirement, **21:14,**  
**21:17**  
Obstruction enhancement under  
U.S.S.G § 3C1.1, **21:37,**  
**21:43, 21:48**  
Omissions, materiality of, **21:16**  
Opposition to motion to suppress  
wiretap evidence, **21:13**  
Overview of sentencing arguments,  
**21:32**  
Pre-trial detention, **21:6, 21:8**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading—Cont'd
  - Probable cause, **21:15**
  - Proof at trial on the merits, **21:19**
  - Rajaratnam-Chiesi conspiracy, Count Five, **21:24**
  - Rajaratnam-Goel conspiracy, Count Three, **21:22**
  - Rajaratnam-Khan conspiracy, Count Two, **21:21**
  - Rajaratnam-Kumar conspiracy, Count Four, **21:23**
  - Resolution of leadership role enhancement, **21:47**
  - Resolution of obstruction issue, **21:48**
  - Sentencing phase, generally, **21:27**
  - Seriousness of offense, overstatement by Sentencing Guidelines, **21:41**
  - Share of gains of Galleon case, **21:46**
  - Statutory maximum, **21:29**
  - Strategies of Federal Sentencing Guidelines, **21:31**
  - Structure of Federal Sentencing Guidelines, **21:28**
  - Suppression of wiretap evidence, motion for, **21:12**
  - Trial on the merits, **21:19**
  - Trial preparation, **21:7**
  - Wiretap evidence
    - Conclusions regarding suppression motion, **21:18**
    - Court decision on suppression, **21:14**
    - Government opposition to suppression, **21:13**
    - Insider trading investigation generally, **21:11**
    - Materiality of omissions, **21:16**
    - Motion to suppress, **21:12**
    - Necessity doctrine, **21:13**
    - Necessity requirement, **21:17**
    - Opposition to motion to suppress, **21:13**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading—Cont'd
  - Wiretap evidence—Cont'd
    - Probable cause, failure to establish, **21:15**
  - Reasons
    - Con, **7:180 et seq.**
    - Pro, **7:191 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **7:215**
  - Registration provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:547**
  - Regulation FD disclosure
    - Generally, **7:526 et seq.**
    - Analysts' roles, **7:528**
    - Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**
    - Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**
    - Companies covered, **7:545**
    - Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**
    - Curing violations, **7:554**
    - Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**
    - Enforcement, **7:549**
    - Exemption provisions and, **7:548**
    - Information, triggering, **7:534**
    - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
    - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
    - Method of disclosure, **7:544**
    - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
    - Policy basis, **7:527**
    - Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
    - Registration provisions and, **7:547**
    - Regulatory gap, **7:530**
    - Scope of regulation, **7:545**
    - SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**
    - Selective disclosure
      - Generally, **7:529**
      - Avoiding, **7:553**
      - Curing violations, **7:554**
      - Materiality, **7:535**
      - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
- Selective disclosure—Cont'd
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
- Triggering events
  - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Non-intentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Validity, **7:550**
- Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
- Relations of tippee, benefit to, **7:630**
- Relative, gift to, **7:396**
- Reliance, private actions, **7:516**
- Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**
- Reporting requirements
  - Generally, **7:175 et seq.**
  - Detection of illegal trades, **7:178**
  - Extent of activity, **7:179**
  - Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**
  - Publication, **7:176**
- Reputational benefit to tippee, **7:629**
- RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
- Rule 10b-5, **4:1, 7:163, 12:4**
- Rule 14e-3, **7:166**
- Rule 15c1-2, **7:165**
- Rule 144, **7:167**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- SA § 17(a)
  - Generally, **7:164**
  - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:164**
- Same side traders
  - Damages, **7:523**
  - Elements of action, **7:519**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
  - Suits by, **7:505**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, inside trading reports, **8:471**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
- Fiduciary theory
  - Tipplers, **7:381**
  - Trading insiders, **7:377**
  - Trading tippees, **7:385**
- Knowledge that tippee will trade, **7:662**
- Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
- Martha Stewart case
  - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Acquittal, **7:411**
  - Background of case, **7:404**
  - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
  - Indictment, **7:405**
  - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
  - Intent inference test, **7:410**
  - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
  - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
  - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
- Misappropriation theory
  - Tipplers, **7:382**
  - Trading insiders, **7:378**
  - Trading tippees, **7:386**
- Pleading, **7:398**
- Proof, **7:399 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
- Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
- Tippee violations, **7:672**
- Tipplers
  - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
  - Fiduciary theory, **7:381**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:382**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
- Tippers—Cont'd
  - Proof, **7:401**
- Tipping violations, **7:662**
- Trading insiders, **7:375 et seq., 7:400**
- Trading tippees
  - Generally, **7:383 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:402**
- Scope of regulations
  - Generally, **7:557 et seq.**
  - Access criteria, **7:560**
  - Buyers, **7:563**
  - Congressional intent, **7:559**
  - Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **7:560**
  - Issuers, applicability to, **7:565**
  - Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
  - SEC efforts to define, **7:559**
  - Sellers, **7:563**
  - Third parties, applicability to, **7:566**
  - Unfairness criteria, **7:560**
- SEA § 16(b)
  - Generally, **7:156 et seq.**
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:159**
  - Civil penalties, **7:159**
  - Insider short sales, **7:157**
  - Private actions, **7:160**
  - Short swing trading, **7:156**
  - Tipping, **7:158**
- SEC investigations
  - Raj Rajaratnam case, early investigation, **21:3**
  - Wiretap in enforcement, **13:146, 13:153**
- SEC Rule 14e-3
  - Generally, **7:632 et seq.**
  - Duty imposed, **7:633**
  - Supreme Court validation, **7:636, 7:637**
  - Validity, **7:634 et seq.**
- Securities Act (SA), Mail and wire fraud, **7:172**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Securities professionals as insiders, **7:572**
- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Sentencing phase of Raj Rajaratnam criminal insider trading case, **21:27 et seq.**
- Shared confidences, **7:590**
- Share repurchase plans, **7:210**
- Short swing trading, SEA § 16(b), **7:156**
- Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- SRO rules, **7:168**
- State law, **7:153**
- Summary of provisions, **7:638 et seq.**
- Suppression of wiretap evidence, **21:12 to 21:18**
- Tender offers, **6:111, 7:214**
- Timely disclosure
  - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**
- Acquisition information
  - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
- Agreements
  - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
  - Disclosure required, **7:260**
- Company, trading by, **7:256**
- Definitions, **7:250**
- Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
- Leaks, **7:255**
- Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
- Preliminary negotiations
  - Misleading statements, **7:253**
  - No statement made, **7:252**
  - Other situations, **7:254**



## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Timely disclosure—Cont'd
  - Acquisition information—Cont'd
    - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
    - Rumors, **7:255**
    - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
    - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
    - When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
    - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
  - Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
  - Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
  - Delays, justifications for, **7:240**
  - Dividend actions
    - Evolving information, **7:245**
    - Materiality, **7:247**
    - When disclosure required, **7:246**
  - Evolving information. Dividend actions, above
  - Justification for delay, **7:240**
  - Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
  - Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
  - Tender offers
    - Generally, **7:267**
    - Materiality, **7:270**
    - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
    - When disclosure required, **7:269**
  - Timing of FD disclosure requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
  - Tippee's knowledge of tipper's benefit, **7:387**
  - Tippee violations
    - Generally, **7:623, 7:664 et seq.**
    - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
    - Benefit to tipper, **7:671**
    - Dirks background, **7:396, 7:625**
    - Elements of, **7:668 et seq.**
    - Expansion era, **7:665**
    - Family benefit to, **7:630**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Tippee violations—Cont'd
  - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
  - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Issuers, **7:654**
  - Knowledge of inside source, **7:672**
  - Misappropriation, **7:675**
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Penalties imposed on, **7:439**
  - Policies, **7:666**
  - Proof of possession element, **7:670**
  - Proximity of tippee, **7:673**
  - Reasons, **7:666**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**
  - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**
  - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
  - Scienter, **7:672**
  - Theories of, **7:667**
  - Tip defined, **7:624**
  - Tipper violation, necessity of, **7:674**
  - Trading, **7:675**
- Tipper violations
  - Fiduciary theory, **7:381**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:382**
  - Scienter, **7:379 et seq.**
- Tipping violations
  - Generally, **7:655 et seq.**
  - Benefit of tipper, transmission of information for, **7:661**
  - Elements of violations, **7:658 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **7:656**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:36**
  - Knowledge that tippee will trade, **7:662**
  - Necessity of tippee trading, **7:663**
  - Nonpublic information, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Policies, **7:657**
  - Private purpose, transmission of information for, **7:661**
  - Proof of transmission of information, **7:660**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Tipping violations—Cont'd
  - Reasons, **7:657**
  - Scienter, **7:662**
  - SEA § 16(b), **7:158**
  - Transmission of information, **7:659**
  - Violations, elements, **7:658 et seq.**
- Transmission of information, **7:659**
- Trial on the merits, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:19**
- Trial preparation, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:7**
- Unequal information, **7:181**
- Unfairness criteria, **7:560**
- Unfairness of activities, **7:181**
- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:540**
- Use of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Burden of proof, **7:331**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
  - Possession compared, **7:317**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**
  - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
  - Standard of proof, **7:331**
  - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
  - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Wiretap in enforcement
  - Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, above
- SEC investigations, **13:146, 13:153**

**INSIDER TRADING AND  
SECURITIES FRAUD  
ENFORCEMENT ACT**

- Broker-dealer liability, **14:168**

**INSTITUTIONAL INVESTORS**

- Suitability of investments, **14:190**

**INSURANCE**

- Generally, **9:76**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, recovery, **20:24**
- SEC settlements, coverage for settling defendants, **13:183**
- Uninsured products NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:288**

**INSURANCE COMPANIES**

- Proxy rules, applicability of
  - Generally, **6:201**
  - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
  - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
  - McCarran Act, **6:203**

**INTENT**

- Generally, **8:58 et seq., 8:191 et seq.**
- See also **Knowledge** (this index)
- Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
- Administrative intent, **3:19**
- Common law, **8:59**
- Congressional Intent** (this index)
- Conscious intent, **8:358**
- Criminal cases, **8:197**
- Defendant's intent
  - Blue sky laws, **8:61**
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:143**
  - Common law, **8:59**
  - Manipulation, **8:119**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:68**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:86**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **8:86**

## INDEX

### INTENT—Cont'd

- Defendant's intent—Cont'd
  - Scienter—Cont'd
    - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:143**
    - Tender offers, **8:136**
  - SEC, false reports to, **8:150**
  - Tender offers, **8:136**
- Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:79**
- Foreign cubed cases, discerning intent, **11:23**
- High conscious intent, **8:358**
- Insufficiency, **8:199**
- Manipulation, defendant's intent, **8:119**
- Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**
- Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
- Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**
- Privity determinations, **8:316**
- Proxy fraud, **8:129**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:58, 8:191 et seq.**
  - See also **Scienter** (this index)
  - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Burden of proof, **8:201**
  - Criminal cases, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
  - Insufficiency, **8:199**
  - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
  - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**
  - Proof, **8:202**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:129**
  - SEC decisions, **8:196**
  - Sufficiency, **8:198**
  - Tender offers, **8:136**
- SEC, false reports to, **8:150**
- Sufficiency, **8:198**
- Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:192**

### INTERFERENCE

- Private actions, materiality, **8:43**

### INTERMEDIARIES

- Mutual fund violations, **17:18**

### INTERNAL REVENUE CODE

- Backdating of stock options, **18:5**

### INTERNATIONAL FRAUD

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:1 et seq.**

### INTERNATIONAL TRANSACTIONS

- See **Foreign and International Transactions** (this index)

### INTERNET

- See **Crowdfunding** (this index)

### INTERPRETATION

- Congressional Intent** (this index)
- Disclosures, **6:236**
- Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose
  - Contraction era, **3:88**
  - Expansion era, **3:66**
- Implied liability
  - Generally, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**
- Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose
  - Contraction era, **3:88**
  - Expansion era, **3:66**
- Legislative history, use of
  - Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **3:68**
- Literalism, statutory
  - Contraction era, **3:89**
  - Expansion era, **3:67**
- Negative implication
  - Contraction era, **3:87**
  - Expansion era, **3:65**
- Remedial purpose, flexibility to achieve
  - Contraction era, **3:88**
  - Expansion era, **3:66**
- Rule 10b-5, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**
- Statutory literalism
  - Contraction era, **3:89**
  - Expansion era, **3:67**
- Legislative history, use of
  - Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **3:68**

**INTERPRETATION—Cont’d**

- Literalism, statutory
  - Contraction era, **3:89**
  - Expansion era, **3:67**
- Negative implication
  - Contraction era, **3:87**
  - Expansion era, **3:65**
- Remedial purpose, flexibility to achieve
  - Contraction era, **3:88**
  - Expansion era, **3:66**
- Statutory literalism
  - Contraction era, **3:89**
  - Expansion era, **3:67**

**INVESTIGATIONS**

- Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
- Administrative Enforcement** (this index)
- Attorney General Eric Schneiderman of New York, Martin Act suits following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336, 13:337**
- Attorneys
  - CFTC investigations
    - Counsel investigations, **13:219**
    - Multiple clients, **13:207**
  - Conflicts of interest
    - CFTC investigations, **13:207**
    - SEC investigations, **13:15**
    - SRO investigations, **13:277**
  - Counsel investigations
    - CFTC investigations, **13:219**
    - SEC investigations, **13:27**
    - SRO investigations, **13:281**
  - Early strategy, **13:3**
  - Foresight, need for, **13:3**
  - Privileges
    - Generally, **13:31 et seq.**
    - Attorney-client
      - Generally, **13:36**
      - Filip era
        - Changes in policy, **13:54**
        - Cooperation, **13:51, 13:52**
        - Internal investigations, **13:52**
        - Investor recovery, **13:55**
        - Joint defense, **13:54**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont’d**

- Attorneys—Cont’d
- Privileges—Cont’d
- Attorney-client—Cont’d
- Filip era—Cont’d
  - Relief from pressure to waive, **13:50**
  - Sharing agreements, **13:54**
  - Waiver request, **13:53**
  - Work product, **13:54**
- Waiver
  - Constitutional analysis, **13:42**
  - Constitutional violations, **13:43**
  - District Court reconsideration (Stein IV), **13:46**
  - Fee claims, **13:45**
  - Filip era, **13:50**
  - Findings, **13:41**
  - Legal fee payment, **13:39**
  - McNulty era, **13:48**
  - Pressure to waive, **13:38**
  - Proffers under threat of nonpayment of legal fees, **13:44**
  - Relief from pressure to waive, **13:48 et seq.**
  - Second Circuit (Stein V), **13:47**
  - Specter Bill, **13:49**
  - US v. Stein, **13:39 et seq.**
- Claiming, strategic considerations, **13:61 to 13:65**
- Self incrimination
  - Generally, **13:32**
  - Waiver, **13:33**
- Waiver, **13:33, 13:37 et seq.**
- Work product, **13:59**
- Right to counsel
  - CFTC, **13:206**
  - SEC, **13:14**
  - SROs, **13:276**
- SEC investigations
  - Cooperation agreements, **20:15**
  - Counsel investigations, **13:27**
  - Multiple clients, **13:15**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Attorneys—Cont'd
  - SEC investigations—Cont'd
    - Waiver of attorney-client privileges, **13:37 et seq.**
  - SRO investigations
    - Counsel investigations, **13:281**
    - Multiple clients, **13:277**
  - Strategy, early, **13:3**
- Auction Rate Security (ARS) litigation
  - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, generally, **13:322 et seq.**
  - Criminal aspects, **13:331**
  - Government regulatory suits, **13:329**
  - Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**
  - Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
  - Securities and market, **13:325**
  - Seller management liability, **13:330**
  - State law, private litigation, **13:328**
  - Violations, **13:326**
- Audits of investigations, **13:163**
- Authority to investigate
  - CFTC
    - Generally, **13:192**
    - CEA § 6(b), **13:194**
    - CEA § 8, **13:193**
    - CEA § 14(b), **13:196**
    - CEA § 16(a), **13:193**
    - Inspection of records, **13:195**
    - Interpretation, **13:198**
    - Publishing data, restrictions on, **13:193**
    - Records inspections, **13:195**
    - State investigations, **13:197**
  - SEC, **13:6**
  - SROs, **13:268**
  - State agencies, **13:314**
- Cause investigation, Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- CFTC
  - Generally, **13:190 et seq.**
  - Administrative Enforcement**  
(this index)

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- CFTC—Cont'd
  - Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:234**
  - Authority to investigate
    - Generally, **13:192**
    - Inspection of records, **13:195**
    - Interpretation, **13:198**
    - Publishing data, restrictions on, **13:193**
    - Records inspections, **13:195**
    - State investigations, **13:197**
  - CEA § 6(b), **13:194**
  - CEA § 8, **13:193**
  - CEA § 16(a), **13:193**
  - Character of investigations, **13:191**
  - Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
  - Conferences with staff, **13:218**
  - Conflicts of interest, **13:207**
  - Contacts, responses to, **13:205**
  - Counsel investigations, **13:219**
  - Discovery
    - Generally, **13:224 et seq.**
    - Document production, **13:217**
    - Document subpoenas, **13:225**
    - FOIA requests, **13:226**
    - Production requests, **13:227**
    - Rule 34 production requests, **13:227**
- Documents
  - Production, **13:217**
  - Subpoenas, **13:225**
  - Third party access to, **13:224 et seq.**
- Early strategy, **13:3**
- Factors influencing outcome, **13:264**
- FOIA requests, **13:226**
- Foresight, need for, **13:3**
- Formal orders of investigation
  - Generally, **13:208**
  - Access to orders, **13:210**
  - Content, **13:209**
  - Evaluation, **13:211**
  - Issuance, **13:208**
  - Validity, **13:212**
- Implications of investigations, **13:2**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont’d**

**CFTC—Cont’d**

- Informal enforcement actions, **13:233**
- Informal warnings, **13:230**
- Information given by agency, **13:204**
- Inspection of records, **13:195**
- Multiple clients, **13:207**
- Negotiating an outcome, **13:266**
- No further action outcomes, **13:229**
- Outcomes of investigations, **13:228 et seq.**
- Overview, **13:1**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings, **13:263**
- Private investigations, **13:201**
- Privileges, **13:223**
- Production requests, **13:227**
- Public investigations, **13:201**
- Public reports, **13:232**
- Records inspections, **13:195**
- Reports, **13:232**
- Requests for information, **13:203**
- Responses to contacts, **13:205**
- Right to counsel, **13:206**
- Rule 34 production requests, **13:227**
- Rule 45(b) subpoenas, **13:225**
- SROs, references to, **13:231**
- Staff conferences, **13:218**
- State authorities, references to, **13:231**
- State investigations, **13:197**
- Statistics, **13:202**
- Strategy, early, **13:3**
- Subpoenas
  - Generally, **13:203, 13:213 et seq.**
  - Content, **13:214**
  - Document production, **13:217**
  - Document subpoenas, **13:225**
  - Evaluation, **13:215**
  - Power to issue, **13:200**
  - Responses, **13:217**
  - Validity challenges, **13:216**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont’d**

**CFTC—Cont’d**

- Testimony
  - Generally, **13:220 et seq.**
  - Interrogations, **13:221**
  - Preparing witnesses, **13:220**
  - Transcripts, **13:222**
- Transcripts, third party access to, **13:224 et seq.**
- Triggers of investigations, **13:199**
- Types of investigations, **13:200 et seq.**
- Warnings, **13:230**
- Wells submissions, **13:265**
- Character of investigations
  - CFTC, **13:191**
  - SEC, **13:5**
- Collateral effects of orders
  - CFTC, **13:241**
  - SEC, **13:92**
  - SROs, **13:298**
- Collateralized debt
  - obligations(CDOs), subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332**
- Compliance orders, SEC, **13:82**
- Conflicts of interest
  - CFTC investigations, **13:207**
  - SEC investigations, **13:15**
  - SRO investigations, **13:277**
- Contacts, responses to
  - CFTC, **13:205**
  - SEC, **13:13**
  - SROs, **13:275**
- Cooperation by target
  - Assistance provided, **20:15**
  - Framework for evaluation of cooperation, **20:15**
  - Remediation, **20:15**
  - SEC investigations, **13:154 to 13:157, 20:15**
  - Self-policing, **20:15**
  - Self-reporting, **20:15**
  - SROs investigations, **13:305**
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations
  - Generally, **13:322 et seq.**
  - ARS seller management liability, **13:330**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations—Cont'd
  - ARS violations, **13:326**
  - Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**
  - Criminal aspects, **13:331**
  - Government regulatory suits, **13:329**
  - Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**
  - Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
  - State law, private litigation, **13:328**
  - Subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332 to 13:339**
- Corruption, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Counsel investigations
  - CFTC, **13:219**
  - SEC, **13:27**
  - SROs, **13:281**
- Creators of residential mortgage-backed securities, investor litigation, **13:335**
- Credit Suisse Securities suit, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:337**
- Dexia v. Bear Stearns case, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:335**
- Discovery
  - CFTC
    - Generally, **13:224 et seq.**
    - Document production, **13:217**
    - Document subpoenas, **13:225**
    - FOIA requests, **13:226**
    - Production requests, **13:227**
  - SEC
    - Generally, **13:66 et seq.**
    - Document production, **13:25**
    - Document subpoenas, **13:67**
    - FOIA requests, **13:68**
    - Production requests, **13:69**
  - SROs, generally, **13:286**
- Documents
  - Production
    - CFTC, **13:217**
    - SEC, **13:25**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Documents—Cont'd
  - Third party access to
    - CFTC, **13:224 et seq.**
    - SEC, **13:66 et seq.**
    - SROs, **13:286**
- DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Enforcement actions. See **Administrative Enforcement** (this index)
- Factors influencing outcome
  - CFTC, **13:264**
  - SEC, **13:154 to 13:157**
  - SROs, **13:305**
- Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission report, summary, **13:333**
- First Amendment rights, **13:35**
- FOIA requests
  - CFTC, **13:226**
  - SEC, **13:68**
- Foreseeability, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:334**
- Formal investigations, SEC, **13:8**
- Formal orders of investigation
  - Access to orders
    - CFTC, **13:210**
    - SEC, **13:18**
  - CFTC
    - Generally, **13:208**
    - Access to orders, **13:210**
    - Content, **13:209**
    - Evaluation, **13:211**
    - Validity, **13:212**
  - Content
    - CFTC, **13:209**
    - SEC, **13:17**
  - Evaluation
    - CFTC, **13:211**
    - SEC, **13:19**
  - Issuance
    - CFTC, **13:208**
    - SEC, **13:16**
  - SEC
    - Generally, **13:16 et seq.**
    - Access to orders, **13:18**
    - Content, **13:17**
    - Evaluation, **13:19**



**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- Formal orders of investigation
  - Cont'd
  - SEC—Cont'd
  - Validity, **13:20**
  - SROs, **13:278**
  - Validity
    - CFTC, **13:212**
    - SEC, **13:20**
- Fraud, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Informal enforcement actions
  - CFTC, **13:233**
  - SROs, **13:292**
- Informal investigations, SEC, **13:8**
- Informal warnings
  - CFTC, **13:230**
  - SEC, **13:72**
  - SROs, **13:289**
- Information given by agency
  - CFTC, **13:204**
  - SEC, **13:12**
  - SROs, **13:274**
- Injunctions** (this index)
- Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)
- Investor litigation following
  - subprime mortgage crisis, **13:335**
- Investor recovery as objective of coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:324**
- JP Morgan/Bear Stearns action,
  - subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336**
- Jurisdiction
  - Generally, **11:2 et seq.**
  - See also **Jurisdiction** (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, SEC
  - investigations, **20:2, 20:6**
- Martin Act suits, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336, 13:337**
- Mortgage backed securities (MBSs),
  - subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332**
- Negotiating an outcome
  - CFTC, **13:266**
  - SEC
    - Generally, **13:161 et seq.**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- Negotiating an outcome—Cont'd
- SEC—Cont'd
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:163**
  - Authority of staff, **13:162**
  - Considerations, **13:165**
  - Objectives, **13:164**
- SROs
  - Generally, **13:308 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:310**
  - Considerations, **13:312**
  - Objectives, **13:311**
- No further action outcomes
  - CFTC, **13:229**
  - SEC, **13:71**
  - SROs, **13:288**
- Orders
  - CFTC
    - Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
    - Duration of orders, **13:243**
  - Collateral effects of orders
    - CFTC, **13:241**
    - SEC, **13:92**
    - SROs, **13:298**
  - Compliance orders, SEC, **13:82**
  - Duration of orders
    - CFTC, **13:243**
    - SEC, **13:94**
    - SROs, **13:300**
  - Formal orders of investigation,
    - above
- SEC
  - Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**
  - Compliance orders, **13:82**
  - Duration of orders, **13:94**
- SROs
  - Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**
  - Duration of orders, **13:300**
- Outcomes of investigations
  - CFTC, **13:228 et seq.**
  - SEC, **13:70 et seq.**
  - SROs, **13:287 et seq.**
  - State agencies, **13:317**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Overview, **13:1**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings
  - Generally, **13:133 et seq.**
  - Battle over discovery, **13:135**
  - CFTC references, **13:263**
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**
  - Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141, 13:142, 13:143**
  - Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**
  - Discovery, **13:139, 13:141, 13:143**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
  - Reasons for concern, **13:134**
  - SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**
- Payments to foreign government officials. **Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)
- Preliminary investigations, **13:8**
- Private investigations
  - CFTC, **13:201**
  - SEC, **13:9**
  - SROs, **13:271**
- Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
- Privileges
  - Attorney-client, SEC
    - Generally, **13:36**
    - Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**
  - CFTC investigations, generally, **13:223**
  - Claiming, strategic considerations, SEC, **13:61 to 13:65**
- SEC
  - Generally, **13:31 et seq.**
  - Attorney-client
    - Generally, **13:36**
    - Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**
  - Claiming, strategic considerations, **13:61 to 13:65**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Privileges—Cont'd
  - SEC—Cont'd
    - Self incrimination
      - Generally, **13:32**
      - Waiver, **13:33**
    - Unreasonable search and seizure, **13:34**
    - Waiver, **13:33**
    - Work product, **13:59**
  - Self incrimination
    - Generally, **13:32**
    - Waiver, **13:33**
  - SRO investigations, **13:285**
  - Unreasonable search and seizure, **13:34**
    - Waiver, **13:33, 13:37 et seq.**
  - Work product, **13:59**
- Public investigations
  - CFTC, **13:201**
  - SEC, **13:9**
  - SROs, **13:271**
- Reports
  - CFTC, **13:232**
  - SEC, **1:10, 13:74 et seq.**
  - SROs, **13:291**
- Requests for information
  - CFTC, **13:203**
  - SEC, **13:11**
  - SROs, **13:273**
- Residential mortgages, failure during subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332**
- Responses to contacts
  - CFTC, **13:205**
  - SEC, **13:13**
  - SROs, **13:275**
- Right to counsel
  - CFTC, **13:206**
  - SEC, **13:14**
  - SROs, **13:276**
- Rule 45(b) subpoenas
  - CFTC, **13:225**
  - SEC, **13:67**
- Sanctions, SEC, **13:81**
- SEC
  - Generally, **13:4 et seq.**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd

Access, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:150**

**Administrative Enforcement**  
(this index)

Adoption of changes, **20:11**

Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:79**

Analysis of tips, complaints and referrals by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**

Asset Management Unit, **20:12**

Assistance provided, **20:15**

Attorney-client privilege

Generally, **13:36**

Filip era

Changes in policy, **13:54**

Cooperation, **13:51, 13:52**

Internal investigations, **13:52**

Investor recovery, **13:55**

Joint defense, **13:54**

Relief from pressure to waive, **13:50**

Sharing agreements, **13:54**

Waiver request, **13:53**

Work product, **13:54**

Waiver

Generally, **13:37 et seq.**

Constitutional analysis, **13:42**

Constitutional violations, **13:43**

District Court reconsideration (Stein IV), **13:46**

Fee claims, **13:45**

Filip era, **13:50**

Findings, **13:41**

KPMG's actions, **13:40**

Legal fee payment, **13:39**

McNulty era, **13:48**

Pressure to waive, **13:38**

Proffers under threat of nonpayment of legal fees, **13:44**

Relief from pressure to waive, **13:48 et seq.**

Second Circuit (Stein V), **13:47**

Specter Bill, **13:49**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd

Attorney-client privilege—Cont'd  
Waiver—Cont'd

US v. Stein, **13:39 et seq.**

Audits of investigations, **13:163**

Authority for wiretap, **13:145**

Authority to investigate, **13:6**

Bounties to whistleblowers, **20:15**

Changes, **20:11**

Character of investigations, **13:5**

Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**

Collateral horrors of cooperation, **20:15**

Collection of tips, complaints and referrals by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**

Compliance orders, **13:82**

Conferences with staff, **13:26**

Conflicts of interest, **13:15**

Contacts, responses to, **13:13**

Control of wiretap results, **13:148**

Cooperation agreements, **20:15**

Cooperation by target, **13:154 to 13:157, 20:15**

Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations

Generally, **13:322 et seq.**

ARS securities and market, **13:325**

ARS seller management liability, **13:330**

ARS violations, **13:326**

Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**

Criminal aspects, **13:331**

Government regulatory suits, **13:329**

Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**

Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**

State law, private litigation, **13:328**

Counsel investigations, **13:27**

Deferred prosecution agreements, **20:15**

Delay of SEC investigations, **20:10**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SEC—Cont'd

##### Discovery

Generally, **13:66 et seq.**

Document production, **13:25**

Document subpoenas, **13:67**

FOIA requests, **13:68**

Production requests, **13:69**

Rule 34 production requests,  
**13:69**

Document production, **13:25**

Documents, third party access to,  
**13:66 et seq.**

Document subpoenas, **13:67**

Early strategy, **13:3**

Encouraging cooperation, **20:15**

Enforcement Manual 2010 revisions, **20:15**

Evaluation of cooperation, **20:15**

Experience level of investigative  
personnel, **20:10**

Expertise of investigators, **20:12**

Factors influencing outcome,  
**13:154 to 13:157**

First Amendment freedoms, **13:35**

Focus of SEC examinations, **20:10**

FOIA requests, **13:68**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
Unit, **20:12**

Foresight, need for, **13:3**

Formal investigations, **13:8**

Formal orders of investigation

Generally, **13:16 et seq.**

Access to orders, **13:18**

Content, **13:17**

Evaluation, **13:19**

Issuance, **13:16**

Validity, **13:20**

Fostering cooperation, **20:15**

Framework for evaluation of  
cooperation, **20:15**

Galleon cases, use of wiretap in  
enforcement, **13:146, 13:153**

Implications of investigations,  
**13:2**

Informal enforcement actions,  
**13:78**

Informal investigations, **13:8**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SEC—Cont'd

Informal warnings, **13:72**

Information given by agency,  
**13:12**

Insider trading, use of wiretap in  
enforcement, **13:146, 13:153**

Internal communications within  
investigations, **20:10**

Judicial approval of wiretap,  
**13:151**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:6,  
20:10 to 20:24**

Market Abuse Unit, **20:12**

Monitoring of tips, complaints and  
referrals by Office of Market  
Intelligence, **20:14**

Multiple clients, **13:15**

Municipal Securities and Public  
Pensions Unit, **20:12**

Negotiating an outcome

Generally, **13:161 et seq.**

Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:163**

Authority of staff, **13:162**

Considerations, **13:165**

Objectives, **13:164**

No further action outcomes, **13:71**

Nonprosecution agreements, **20:15**

Office of Market Intelligence,  
**20:14**

Outcomes of investigations, **13:70  
et seq.**

Overview, **13:1**

Parallel civil and criminal proceed-  
ings, **13:133 et seq.**

Preliminary investigations, **13:8**

Privacy interests, use of wiretap in  
enforcement, **13:149, 13:150**

Private investigations, **13:9**

Privileges

Generally, **13:31 et seq.**

Attorney-client

Generally, **13:36**

Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**

Claiming, strategic  
considerations, **13:61 to  
13:65**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd

Privileges—Cont'd

Self incrimination

Generally, **13:32**

Waiver, **13:33**

Waiver, **13:33**

Work product, **13:59**

Production requests, **13:69**

Proffer agreements, **20:15**

Public access, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:149**

Public investigations, **13:9**

Public reports, **13:74 et seq.**

Rajaratnam case issues yet to be resolved, **13:153**

Red flags during investigations, **20:10**

Referrals, screening by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**

Relevancy of wiretap, **13:152**

Remediation by target, **20:15**

Reports, **1:10, 13:74 et seq.**

Requests for information, **13:11**

Resolutions of examiners, **20:10**

Responses to contacts, **13:13**

Restricted immunity offers, **20:15**

Review, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:147**

Right to counsel, **13:14**

Risks of cooperation, **20:15**

Rule 34 production requests, **13:69**

Rule 45(b) subpoenas, **13:67**

Sanctions, **13:81**

Scope of investigations, **20:10**

SEA § 21(a) reports, **13:74 et seq.**

Seaboard Report, **20:15**

Self-policing by target, **20:15**

Self-reporting by target, **20:15**

Settlements, **13:154 to 13:157**

Sharing information with other agencies, etc., **20:14**

Shortening of Wells process, **20:13**

Specialized investigation units, **20:12**

Specialized investigators, **20:12**

Specificity, **13:104**

SROs, references to, **13:73**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd

Staff conferences, **13:26**

Staffing of investigations, **20:10**

Staff performance evaluation, **20:13**

State authorities, references to, **13:73**

Statistics, **13:10**

Strategy, early, **13:3**

Streamlining internal investigation procedures, **20:13**

Structured and New Products Unit, **20:12**

Subpoenas

Generally, **13:11, 13:21 et seq.**

Content, **13:22**

Document production, **13:25**

Document subpoenas, **13:67**

Evaluation, **13:23**

Responses, **13:25**

Validity challenges, **13:24**

Testimony

Generally, **13:28 et seq.**

Interrogations, **13:29**

Preparing witnesses, **13:28**

Transcripts, **13:30**

Tips and connections between tips, **20:14**

Tolling requirements for investigations, **20:13**

Training of investigators, **20:12**

Transcripts, third party access to, **13:66 et seq.**

Triggers of investigations, **13:7**

Types of investigations, **13:8 et seq.**

Unreasonable search and seizure, **13:34**

Warnings, **13:72**

Web site for post-Madoff reforms, **20:13**

Wells submissions

Generally, **13:158**

Advantages and disadvantages, **13:160**

Character, **13:159**

Timeframe, **20:13**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SEC—Cont'd

Whistleblowers, **20:14, 20:15**

Wiretap in enforcement, **13:144 et seq.**

Work product privileges, **13:59**

Self-dealing, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**

#### Settlements

SEC, **13:154 to 13:157**

SROs, **13:305**

State agencies, **13:321**

Specificity, **13:104**

#### SROs

Generally, **13:267 et seq.**

Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:293**

ARS securities and market, **13:325**

ARS seller management liability, **13:330**

ARS violations, **13:326**

Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**

#### Authority

Orders, **13:278**

Subpoenas, **13:279**

Authority to investigate, **13:268**

CFTC references of investigations to, **13:231**

Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**

Conferences with staff, **13:280**

Conflicts of interest, **13:277**

Contacts, responses to, **13:275**

Cooperation by target, **13:305**

Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, generally, **13:322 et seq.**

Counsel investigations, **13:281**

Criminal aspects, **13:331**

Criminal enforcement references, **13:304**

Discovery, **13:286**

Documents, third party access to, **13:286**

Early strategy, **13:3**

Factors influencing outcome, **13:305**

Foresight, need for, **13:3**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SROs—Cont'd

Formal orders of investigation, **13:278**

Government regulatory suits, **13:329**

Implications of investigations, **13:2**

Informal enforcement actions, **13:292**

Informal warnings, **13:289**

Information given by agency, **13:274**

Information sharing by SEC Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**

Interorganization references, **13:290**

Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**

Multiple clients, **13:277**

Negotiating an outcome  
Generally, **13:308 et seq.**

Advantages and disadvantages, **13:310**

Considerations, **13:312**

Objectives, **13:311**

No further action outcomes, **13:288**

Orders, **13:278**

Outcomes of investigations, **13:287 et seq.**

Overview, **13:1**

Private investigations, **13:271**

Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**

Privileges, **13:285**

Public investigations, **13:271**

Public reports, **13:291**

References between SROs, **13:290**

Reports, **13:291**

Requests for information, **13:273**

Responses to contacts, **13:275**

Right to counsel, **13:276**

SEC references of investigations to, **13:73**

Settlements, **13:305**

Staff conferences, **13:280**

State authorities, references to, **13:290**

State law, private litigation, **13:328**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SROs—Cont'd  
 Statistics, **13:272**  
 Strategy, early, **13:3**  
 Subpoena power, **13:270**  
 Subpoenas, **13:279**  
 Summary proceedings, **13:302**  
 Testimony  
   Generally, **13:282 et seq.**  
   Interrogations, **13:283**  
   Preparing witnesses, **13:282**  
   Transcripts, **13:284**  
 Transcripts, third party access to, **13:286**  
 Triggers of investigations, **13:269**  
 Types of investigations, **13:270**  
 Warnings, **13:289**  
 Wells submission equivalents  
   Generally, **13:306**  
   Character, **13:307**  
 Staff conferences  
   CFTC, **13:218**  
   SEC, **13:26**  
   SROs, **13:280**  
 Standard and Poor's ratings of mortgage-backed securities, **13:338**  
 State agencies  
   Generally, **13:313 et seq.**  
   ARS securities and market, **13:325**  
   ARS seller management liability, **13:330**  
   ARS violations, **13:326**  
   Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**  
   Authority, **13:314**  
   CFTC references of investigations to, **13:231**  
   Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, generally, **13:322 et seq.**  
   Criminal aspects, **13:331**  
   Government regulatory suits, **13:329**  
   Information sharing by SEC Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
   Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

State agencies—Cont'd  
   Outcomes of investigations, **13:317**  
   Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**  
   SEC references of investigations to, **13:73**  
   Settlements, **13:321**  
   SRO references of investigations to, **13:290**  
   State law, private litigation, **13:328**  
   Subpoenas, **13:315**  
 Statistics  
   CFTC, **13:202**  
   SEC, **13:10**  
   SROs, **13:272**  
 Subpoenas  
   CFTC  
     Generally, **13:203, 13:213 et seq.**  
     Content, **13:214**  
     Document production, **13:217, 13:225**  
     Evaluation, **13:215**  
     Responses, **13:217**  
     Validity challenges, **13:216**  
   Content  
     CFTC, **13:214**  
     SEC, **13:22**  
   Document production  
     CFTC, **13:217**  
     SEC, **13:25**  
   Document subpoenas  
     CFTC, **13:225**  
     SEC, **13:67**  
   Evaluation  
     CFTC, **13:215**  
     SEC, **13:23**  
   Power to issue  
     CFTC, **13:200**  
     SROs, **13:270**  
   Responses  
     CFTC, **13:217**  
     SEC, **13:25**  
 SEC  
   Generally, **13:11, 13:21 et seq.**  
   Content, **13:22**  
   Document production, **13:25**



## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Subpoenas—Cont'd
    - SEC—Cont'd
      - Document subpoenas, **13:67**
      - Evaluation, **13:23**
      - Responses, **13:25**
      - Validity challenges, **13:24**
    - SROs, **13:279**
    - State agencies, **13:315**
    - Validity challenges
      - CFTC, **13:216**
      - SEC, **13:24**
  - Subprime mortgage crisis
    - Attorney General Eric Schneiderman of New York, Martin Act suits, **13:336, 13:337**
  - Collateralized debt obligations(CDOs), **13:332**
  - Creators of residential mortgage-backed securities, investor litigation, **13:335**
  - Credit Suisse Securities suit, **13:337**
  - Dexia v. Bear Stearns case, **13:335**
  - Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission report, summary, **13:333**
  - Foreseeability, **13:334**
  - Investor litigation, **13:335**
  - JP Morgan/Bear Stearns suit, **13:336**
  - Litigation, **13:332, 13:335 to 13:339**
  - Martin Act suits, **13:336, 13:337**
  - Mortgage backed securities (MBSs), **13:332**
  - Residential mortgages, failure, **13:332**
  - Underwriters of residential mortgage-backed securities, investor litigation, **13:335**
- Summary proceedings, **13:302**
- Testimony
- CFTC
    - Generally, **13:220 et seq.**
    - Interrogations, **13:221**
    - Preparing witnesses, **13:220**
    - Transcripts, **13:222**
  - Interrogations
    - CFTC, **13:221**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Testimony—Cont'd
  - Interrogations—Cont'd
    - SEC, **13:29**
    - SROs, **13:283**
  - Preparing witnesses
    - CFTC, **13:220**
    - SEC, **13:28**
    - SROs, **13:282**
- SEC
  - Generally, **13:28 et seq.**
  - Interrogations, **13:29**
  - Preparing witnesses, **13:28**
  - Transcripts, **13:30**
- SROs
  - Generally, **13:282 et seq.**
  - Interrogations, **13:283**
  - Preparing witnesses, **13:282**
  - Transcripts, **13:284**
- Transcripts
  - CFTC, **13:222**
  - SEC, **13:30**
  - SROs, **13:284**
- Third party access to
  - CFTC, **13:224 et seq.**
  - SEC, **13:66 et seq.**
  - SROs, **13:286**
- Triggers of investigations
  - CFTC, **13:199**
  - SEC, **13:7**
  - SROs, **13:269**
- Types of investigations
  - CFTC, **13:200 et seq.**
  - SEC, **13:8 et seq.**
  - SROs, **13:270**
- Underwriters of residential mortgage-backed securities, investor litigation, **13:335**
- Warnings
  - CFTC, **13:230**
  - SEC, **13:72**
  - SROs, **13:289**
- Wells submissions
  - Generally, **13:158**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:160**
  - Character, **13:159**
  - SROs, **13:306, 13:307**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

Wells submissions—Cont'd

Timeframe, **20:13**

**INVESTMENT ADVISERS**

Control person liability, **7:456**

Insider trading, **7:470**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, fraud, **20:6**

**INVESTMENT ADVISERS ACT**

Implied private actions (IPA), **3:155**

**INVESTMENT BANKERS**

Generally, **5:172 et seq.**

Controlled company bankers, **5:175**

Controlling company bankers, **5:177**

Dual representation bankers, **5:176**

Global settlement, ancillary relief,  
**13:110**

Injunctions, global settlement and  
ancillary relief, **13:110**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, Sonja Kohn,  
**20:21**

Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**

Prior relations of, **5:182**

Qualities of bankers, **5:173**

Roles of bankers, **5:174**

Successive bankers, **5:179**

Trials, bankers for, **5:180**

Unfair terms

Generally, **5:172 et seq.**

Controlled company bankers,  
**5:175**

Controlling company bankers,  
**5:177**

Dual representation bankers, **5:176**

Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**

Prior relations of, **5:182**

Qualities of bankers, **5:173**

Roles of bankers, **5:174**

Successive bankers, **5:179**

Trials, bankers for, **5:180**

**INVESTMENT COMPANIES**

Proxy rules, applicability of, **6:205**

**INVESTMENT MANAGERS**

Madoff feeder funds, dual roles,  
**20:19**

SEC investigations, integration of  
broker-dealer and investment

**INVESTMENT MANAGERS**

—Cont'd

management examinations,  
**20:13**

**INVESTOR RECOVERY**

Objective of coordinated SEC-state-  
SRO investigations, **13:324**

**IPA**

See **Implied Private Actions** (this  
index)

**ISSUERS**

Advisers to issuers as insiders, **7:569**

Analysts' roles in full disclosure  
regulations, **7:528**

Antifraud provisions and Regulation  
FD disclosure, **7:546**

Business associates to issuers as  
insiders, **7:570**

Buyer-seller requirements, **5:121**

Compulsory disclosure. Regulation  
FD disclosure, below

Disclosure

Generally, **7:282 et seq.**

Awareness of MNPI

Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**

Possession distinguished, **7:349**

On basis of inside information,  
trades made, **7:348**

Burden of proof, nonpublic nature  
of information, **7:312**

Full disclosure

Duty triggered by partial  
disclosure, **7:536**

Regulation FD disclosure, below

Law and fact questions, nonpublic  
character of information,  
**7:314**

Limitations period, disclosure as  
starting, **7:279**

Materiality and public disclosure,  
**7:280**

Media disclosures

Generally, **7:292 et seq.**

Particular media, **7:299**

Timing, **7:297**

## INDEX

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

#### Disclosure—Cont'd

Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**

#### MNPI

Materiality, above

Nonpublic information, below

#### Nonpublic information

Generally, **7:271 et seq.**

Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:312**

Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**

Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**

Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**

Law and fact questions, **7:314**

Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**

Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**

#### Media disclosures

Generally, **7:292 et seq.**

Particular media, **7:299**

Timing, **7:297**

Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**

Motion practice, **7:311**

Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**

Pleading, **7:310**

Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**

Proof, **7:313**

Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**

Quantum of proof, **7:312**

Rumors, **7:301**

Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**

Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**

Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**

Periodic reports, **7:289**

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

#### Disclosure—Cont'd

Pleading nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**

#### Possession of MNPI

Generally, **7:316**

Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**

Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**

Connection with transaction, **7:681**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**

Precautions against trading, **7:346**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

#### Rule 10b-5

Generally, **7:318 et seq.**

Access, proof of, **7:323**

Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321**

Contact, proof of, **7:324**

Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:326**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

Trading, proof of, **7:325**

Use inferred from possession, **7:328**

#### Rule 14e-3

Generally, **7:340 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:341**

Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**

Precautions against trading, **7:346**

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Use compared, **7:317**

**ISSUERS—Cont'd**

Disclosure—Cont'd  
 Press releases, **7:283**  
 Proof of nonpublic character of information, **7:313**  
 Prospectuses, **7:286**  
 Proxy statements, **7:287**  
 Reports, **7:289**  
 Rumors, **7:301**  
 SEC filings, **7:285**  
 Shareholder communications, **7:284**  
 Tender offer statements, **7:288**  
 Tipping nonpublic information, **7:272 et seq.**  
 Use of MNPI  
 Generally, **7:316**  
 Burden of proof, **7:331**  
 Connection with transaction, **7:681**  
 Individuals, proof for, **7:332**  
 Organizations, proof for, **7:339**  
 Possession compared, **7:317**  
 Rule 10b-5  
 Generally, **7:327 et seq.**  
 Burden of proof, **7:331**  
 Individuals, proof for, **7:332**  
 Inferences, **7:328**  
 Organizations, proof for, **7:339**  
 Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**  
 Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**  
 Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**  
 Standard of proof, **7:331**  
 Timing, proof of, **7:333**  
 Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**  
 Rule 14e-3, **7:347**  
 Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**  
 Standard of proof, **7:331**  
 Timing, proof of, **7:333**  
 Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**  
 Exemption provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:548**

**ISSUERS—Cont'd**

Inside trading regulation  
 Generally, **7:557 et seq.**  
 Access criteria, **7:560**  
 Buyers, **7:563**  
 Congressional intent, **7:559**  
 Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**  
 Expansion era, **7:560**  
 Issuers  
 Generally, **7:643 et seq.**  
 Advisers, **7:652**  
 Affiliated entities, **7:647**  
 Applicability to, **7:565**  
 Business associates, **7:653**  
 Contraction era, **7:646**  
 Directors, **7:649**  
 Employees, **7:650**  
 Expansion era, **7:645**  
 Officers, **7:648**  
 Shareholders, **7:651**  
 Tippees, **7:654**  
 Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**  
 SEC efforts to define, **7:559**  
 Sellers, **7:563**  
 Third parties, applicability to, **7:566**  
 Unfairness criteria, **7:560**  
 Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**  
 Method of disclosure, Regulation FD, **7:544**  
 Periodic reports, **7:289**  
 Press releases, **7:283**  
 Privately held securities, issuer liabilities as to, **5:6**  
 Prompt disclosure requirement, Regulation FD, **7:543**  
 Prospectuses, disclosure by, **7:286**  
 Proxy statement disclosures, **7:287**  
 Publicly held securities, issuer liabilities as to, **5:7**  
 Redemptions, **6:145**  
 Registration provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:547**  
 Regulation FD disclosure  
 Generally, **7:526 et seq.**  
 Analysts' roles, **7:528**

## INDEX

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**
  - Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**
  - Companies covered, **7:545**
  - Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**
  - Exemption provisions and, **7:548**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Method of disclosure, **7:544**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Policy basis, **7:527**
  - Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
  - Registration provisions and, **7:547**
  - Regulatory gap, **7:530**
  - Scope of regulation, **7:545**
  - SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**
  - Selective disclosure
    - Generally, **7:529**
    - Avoiding, **7:553**
    - Curing violations, **7:554**
    - Materiality, **7:535**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
  - Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
  - Triggering events
    - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
    - Information, triggering, **7:534**
    - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
    - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
    - Non-intentional disclosures, **7:540**

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - Triggering events—Cont'd
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**
    - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
    - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Validity, **7:550**
  - Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Reports, disclosure, **7:289**
- SEC filing disclosures, **7:285**
- Securities professionals as insiders, **7:572**
- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Shareholder communications, disclosure by, **7:284**
- Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **6:141**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
  - Price, **6:142**
  - Redemptions, **6:145**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
- Tender offer statement disclosure, **7:288**
- Timing of FD disclosure requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:540**

### JOBS ACT

- See **Crowdfunding** (this index)

### JOINDER

- Arbitration proceedings, **15:18**

**JOINDER—Cont'd**

SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**

**JOINT AND SEVERAL LIABILITY**

Generally, **9:19 et seq.**

See also **Contribution; Proportionate Liability** (this index)

Blue sky law, **9:21**

Broker-dealer fraud, **9:31**

Commodities law, **9:46**

Common law, **9:20**

Control persons, **9:25, 9:33**

Court cases, **9:42**

Disgorgement, **9:26**

Rule 10b-5 liability, **9:39 et seq.**

Securities Exchange Act, **9:35**

Indemnification, **9:76**

Insurance, **9:76**

Knowing violators, **9:51**

Market manipulation, **9:28**

Proportionate liability compared, **9:47**

Proxy fraud, **9:29**

Registration statement fraud, **9:24**

Restitution, **9:44**

Rule 10b-5 liability

Generally, **9:37 et seq.**

Damages, **9:38**

Disgorgement, **9:39 et seq.**

SEC, false reports to, **9:32**

Securities Act

Generally, **9:22 et seq.**

Control persons, **9:25**

Disgorgement, **9:26**

Registration statement fraud, **9:24**

Section 11, **9:24**

Section 12(2), **9:23**

Section 15, **9:25**

Securities Exchange Act

Generally, **9:27 et seq.**

Broker-dealer fraud, **9:31**

Damages, **9:34**

Disgorgement, **9:35**

Market manipulation, **9:28**

Proxy fraud, **9:29**

SEC, false reports to, **9:32**

Section 9(a), **9:28**

**JOINT AND SEVERAL LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Securities Exchange Act—Cont'd

Section 14

Proxy fraud, **9:29**

Tender offer fraud, **9:30**

Section 15(c)(1), **9:31**

Section 18, **9:32**

Section 20(a), **9:33**

Section 20(A)(c), **9:36**

Tender offer fraud, **9:30**

Tipping, **9:36**

Self regulatory discipline, **9:45**

State law, **9:20**

Tender offer fraud, **9:30**

Tipping, **9:36**

**JOINT TORTFEASORS**

Common law fraud, **8:261**

**JP MORGAN/BEAR STEARNS LITIGATION**

Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336**

**JP MORGAN/MADOFF LITIGATION**

Deferred prosecution agreements, **10:5**

**JUDICIAL APPROVAL**

SEC investigations, use of wiretap, **13:151**

**JUDICIAL ENFORCEMENT ACTIONS**

Whistleblower bounty program, **22:14**

**JUDICIAL OPINIONS**

See **Court Decisions** (this index)

**JURISDICTION**

Generally, **11:2 et seq., 12:10**

Adviser activities, **11:15**

Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**

Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**

Check clearance as interstate activity, **11:11**

Class actions, **11:42**

## INDEX

### **JURISDICTION—Cont'd**

- Cryptocurrencies, CFTC jurisdiction, **25:2**
- Defenses, **11:41**
- Derivative suits, **11:43**
- Foreign and International Transactions** (this index)
- Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**
- Implied Liability** (this index)
- International transactions. **Foreign and International Transactions** (this index)
- Interstate commerce, **11:3**
- Local telephone use, **11:4**
- Mails, use of, **11:6**
- Misconduct, relation of jurisdictional means to
  - Generally, **11:8 et seq.**
  - Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**
  - Check clearances, **11:11**
  - Fraud, **11:9**
  - Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**
  - Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**
- Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**
- Pleading, **11:38**
- Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**
- Process, **11:40**
- Scope of commerce, **11:3**
- Securities exchanges and interstate commerce, **11:7**
- Service of process, **11:40**
- Telephone use, **11:4**
- Transaction, interstate, **11:10, 11:12**
- Venue, **11:39**

### **JURY TRIAL**

- Insiders and inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:26**

### **KICKSTARTER**

- Crowdfunding, **14:211**

### **KINGATE**

- Madoff feeder funds, globalization, **20:21**

### **KNOWLEDGE**

- Generally, **8:58 et seq.**

### **KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd**

- Access to information, reliance, **8:499**
- Actual knowledge
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:244**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:178**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
  - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
  - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
  - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
  - Injunctions, **8:174**
  - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
  - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
  - Proof, **8:179**
  - SEC decisions, **8:175**
  - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
- Aider-abettor liability, knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**
- Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
- Burden of proof, **8:66**
- Common law, **8:59**
- Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
- Constructive knowledge
  - Generally, **8:250**
  - Burden of proof, **8:189**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
  - Injunctions, **8:185**
  - Insufficiency, **8:188**
  - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
  - Proof, **8:190**
  - Scienter, **8:180 et seq.**
  - SEC decisions, **8:186**
  - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
- Criminal enforcement, SEC references, **13:128**
- Defendant's knowledge
  - Broker-dealer liability, **14:41**
  - Burden of proof, **8:66, 8:84**
  - Common law, **8:59**
  - Contribution, **9:70**
  - Criminal context, **8:65**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:51**
  - Manipulation, **8:120**



## KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd

- Defendant's knowledge—Cont'd
  - Proof, **8:67, 8:85**
  - Proportionate liability, **9:51, 9:60**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:64 et seq.**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:83 et seq.**
  - Scienter, **8:83 et seq.**
  - SEC, false reports to
    - Generally, **8:147 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:148**
    - Proof, **8:149**
- Defendant's knowledge and belief
  - Broker-dealer fraud
    - Burden of proof, scienter, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**
    - Scienter, **8:142**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
  - Proof, **8:142**
  - Proxy fraud
    - Generally, **8:126 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:127**
    - Proof, **8:128**
  - Scienter
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Tender offer fraud
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
- Defendant's knowledge and intent
  - Blue sky laws, **8:61**
  - Common law, **8:59**
  - SA § 11, **8:79**
- Expertise of plaintiff, reliance, **8:497**
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also **Reliance** (this index)
- Intent and scienter
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
- Long-standing relationships, reliance, **8:498**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, "knowing assistance" in fraud, **20:4 to 20:9**
- Manipulation
  - Defendant's knowledge, **8:120**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**

## KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd

- Misrepresentation, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:246**
- Nondisclosure, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:245**
- Plaintiff's knowledge
  - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge, **8:244**
  - Blue sky laws, **8:62**
  - Broker-dealer fraud
    - Generally, **14:40**
    - Scienter, **8:144**
  - Common law, **8:60**
  - Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
  - Limitation of actions, **8:70, 8:251**
  - Manipulation, **8:122**
  - Misrepresentation, **8:246**
  - Nondisclosure, **8:245**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:130**
  - SA § 11, **8:80**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:69**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:87**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **8:87**
    - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:144**
    - Manipulation, **8:122**
    - Proxy fraud, **8:130**
    - Tender offers, **8:137**
  - Tender offers, **8:137**
  - Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**
- Privity determinations, **8:315**
- Proxy fraud
  - Generally, **8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also **Reliance** (this index)
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:58**
  - See also **Scienter** (this index)
  - Actual knowledge
    - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:178**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**

## INDEX

### KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd

#### Scienter—Cont'd

##### Actual knowledge—Cont'd

Direct-impersonal transactions,  
**8:171**

Direct-personal transactions,  
**8:170**

Indirect-impersonal transactions,  
**8:172**

Injunctions, **8:174**

Insufficiency of, **8:177**

Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**

Proof, **8:179**

SEC decisions, **8:175**

Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**

##### Constructive knowledge

Generally, **8:180 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:189**

Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**

Injunctions, **8:185**

Insufficiency, **8:188**

Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**

Proof, **8:190**

SEC decisions, **8:186**

Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**

##### Criminal prosecutions

Actual knowledge, **8:176**

Constructive knowledge, **8:187**

Intent, **8:197**

##### Intent

Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**

Injunctions, **8:195**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**

##### SEC, false reports to

Generally, **8:147 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:148**

Proof, **8:149**

Sophistication of plaintiff, reliance  
and, **8:497**

##### Tender offer fraud

Generally, **8:133 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:134**

Proof, **8:135**

Tender offers fraud actions, **8:137**

Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**

### LATEST DEVELOPMENTS

Generally, **2:1 et seq.**

### LATEST DEVELOPMENTS

#### —Cont'd

Action for alleged short swing trad-  
ing by beneficial owners of 10%  
or more of a public company,  
**2:6**

##### Cryptocurrency

SEC enforcement actions, **2:3**

Securities class action, **2:5**

SEC enforcement actions, **2:2, 2:3**

Securities class action, **2:4, 2:5**

### LAWSON v. FMR LLC

Whistleblowers, **22:18 et seq.**

### LAWYERS

See **Attorneys** (this index)

### LEGALITY OR ILLEGALITY

Whistleblower bounty program,  
unlawfully obtained informa-  
tion, **22:12**

### LEGAL TRANSACTIONS

See **Transaction Planning** (this  
index)

### LEGISLATIVE INTENT

See **Congressional Intent** (this  
index)

### LERNOUT CASE

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:106**

### LETTERS

#### Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Cover letters, **6:243**

**No-Action Letters** (this index)

Transmittal letters, **6:243**

### LIES TO INVESTORS

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

Generally, **8:251, 11:45 et seq.**

Accrual, one year period, **11:71 et  
seq.**

#### Actual notice

One year period, **11:71 et seq.**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:93**

## **LIMITATION OF ACTIONS**

### **—Cont'd**

Administrative enforcement, **13:89, 13:90**  
 Arbitration, **15:9**  
 Broker-dealer liability  
   Generally, **14:17**  
   SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**  
   SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**  
 Class actions  
   Generally, **11:96 et seq.**  
   Tolling, **11:97**  
 Discovery rule, **8:251**  
   Rejected by SEC, **13:90**  
 Enforcement actions  
   Generally, **13:184 to 13:189**  
   Kokesh case decision, **13:184 to 13:189**  
   Liu v. SEC, **13:189**  
 Equitable estoppel, **11:52**  
 Equitable tolling, **11:100**  
 Express actions  
   Generally, **11:46**  
   Broker-dealer liability, **14:17**  
 Implied actions  
   Generally, **11:61 et seq.**  
   Court cases, **11:63 et seq.**  
   Cutoff, **11:64**  
   Retroactivity, **11:66, 11:70**  
   Rule 10b-5, **3:174**  
   Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:92**  
   Tolling, **11:65**  
 Injunctions, SEC, **13:99**  
 Knowledge of violation, **8:251**  
 Kokesh case decision, **13:184 to 13:189**  
 Literal application of statute, **11:48**  
 Misleading prospectus communications, **11:54 et seq.**  
 Notice, one year period, **11:71 et seq.**  
 One year period  
   Generally, **11:71 et seq.**  
   Accrual, **11:71 et seq.**  
   Actual notice, **11:71 et seq.**  
   Court cases, **11:72**  
   Misleading registration statements, **11:58**  
   Notice, **11:71 et seq.**

## **LIMITATION OF ACTIONS**

### **—Cont'd**

One year period—Cont'd  
   Prospectus fraud, **11:48**  
   Registration fraud, **11:48**  
   SEA § 11, **11:58**  
   SEA § 12(1), **11:48**  
   SEA § 12(2), **11:55**  
   Trigger, **11:71 et seq.**  
 Oral communications, **11:54 et seq.**  
 Plaintiff's knowledge of fraud, **8:70**  
 Procedure, **11:60**  
 Repose statute, **11:100**  
 Retroactivity  
   Implied actions, **11:66, 11:70**  
   Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:94**  
 RICO, **11:103**  
 Rule 10b-5 implied liability, **3:174**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act  
   Generally, **3:161, 11:87 et seq.**  
   Actual notice, **11:93**  
   Implied actions, **11:92**  
   Retroactivity, **11:94**  
   Securities Act express actions, **11:90**  
   Securities Exchange Act express actions, **11:91**  
   Tolling, **11:93**  
 SEC  
   Administrative enforcement, **13:89, 13:90**  
   Discovery rule rejected for limitation of actions, **13:90**  
   Injunctions, **13:99**  
   Investigations, tolling requirements, **20:13**  
 Securities Act  
   Generally, **11:46**  
   Equitable estoppel, **11:52**  
   Equitable tolling, **11:100**  
   Literal application of statute, **11:48**  
   One year statute, **11:48**  
   Prospectus violations, **11:47 et seq.**  
   Registration violations, **11:47 et seq.**  
   Section 11, **11:57 et seq.**  
   Section 12(1), **11:47 et seq.**

## INDEX

### LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

#### —Cont'd

- Securities Act—Cont'd
  - Section 12(2), **11:54 et seq.**
  - Three year statute, **11:53**
  - Tolling, **11:49 et seq.**
- Three year period
  - Generally, **11:53, 11:82 et seq.**
  - Accrual, **11:83 et seq.**
  - Misleading registration statements, **11:59**
  - SEA § 11, **11:59**
  - Trigger, **11:83 et seq.**
- Tolling
  - Class actions, **11:97**
  - Implied actions, **11:65**
  - One year statute, **11:49 et seq.**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:93**
- Trigger, one year period, **11:71 et seq.**
- Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:8, 22:12**

### LIQUIDATIONS

- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:119**

### LIQUIDATION VALUE

- Value indicators generally, **5:163**

### LODGING EXPENSES

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:4**

### LOOMI LAMPSHADE

- Crowdfunding, **14:211**

### LORENZO v. SEC

- Dissemination of material false information, liability for, *Lorenzo v. SEC*, **8:346**

### LOSS CAUSATION

- Causation** (this index)

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

- Generally, **20:1 et seq.**
- A. Ezra Merkin feeder funds, **20:18**
- Access International, globalized feeder funds, **20:21**
- Accountants. Civil actions against accounts for feeder funds, below
- Accounting firm, **20:9**

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

- Ad hoc sales force, feeder funds as, **20:16**
- Advertising, **20:2**
- Affiliated individuals
  - Generally, **20:4**
- Accountant, **20:9**
- “Back-office” employees, **20:9**
- Brother’s role in fraud, **20:5**
- Business associates, **20:6 to 20:8**
- Director of operations, **20:8**
- Director of trading, **20:8**
- Family members, **20:5**
- Fiduciary liability of Madoff family members, **20:5**
- Former Chief Financial Officer, **20:8**
- Frank DiPascali, Jr., business associate, **20:6**
- Marriage of Madoff niece to SEC regulator viewed as conflict of interest, **20:5**
- Niece’s role in fraud, **20:5**
- “Omissions” provision of federal Rule 10b-5(b), **20:5**
- Perjury, **20:6**
- Senior executives, **20:5**
- Sons’ role in fraud, **20:5**
- Spouse’s role in fraud, **20:5**
- Supervisors of stock trading desks, **20:5**
- Technology expert, **20:5**
- Wife’s role in fraud, **20:5**
- Affinity fraud, **20:3**
- Aggregate accounting, **20:6**
- Aiding and abetting breach of fiduciary duty, **20:5**
- Alternate account statements, **20:6**
- Analysis of tips, complaints and referrals, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Appointment of third party custodian for client assets, **20:2**
- Artistic projects, **20:3**
- Asset Management Unit, **20:12**
- Attempt to evade federal income taxes, **20:6**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

**—Cont’d**

Auditor independence forfeiture, **20:9**  
 Average annual returns, **20:2**  
 “Back-office” employees, **20:9**  
 Banco Santander, globalized feeder funds, **20:21**  
 Breach of fiduciary duty, **20:5**  
 Business associates, **20:6**  
 Charitable foundations, **20:3**  
 Chief Financial Officer, **20:6**  
 Citibank, action against by Trustee Picard  
     Court responses, **20:41**  
     Loans, swaps, and instrument derivatives tied to Madoff, **20:42**  
 Civil actions against accountants for feeder funds  
     Generally, **20:25**  
     Claims of negligence and/or negligent misrepresentations, **20:28 to 20:31**  
     Claims under federal securities laws, **20:26**  
     Common law fraud claims, **20:27**  
     GAAS and GAAP violations, **20:32**  
     Lack of privity, **20:29**  
     N.Y. Martin Act preemption, **20:31**  
     Presence of privity, **20:30**  
     Privity, **20:29, 20:30**  
 Cohmad Securities Corporation, in-house feeder fund, **20:22**  
 Collection of tips, complaints and referrals, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Compensation  
     Accounting firm, **20:9**  
     Business associates, **20:6**  
     Certain family members, **20:5**  
     Computation. Investor compensation, methods of computing, below  
 Complaints, screening by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Compliance counsel, **20:5**  
 Computer programmers, **20:7**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

**—Cont’d**

Computing customer payments.  
     Investor compensation, methods of computing, above  
 Concealment of fraud, **20:2**  
 Conduct of SEC investigations and examinations, **20:10**  
 Conflict of interest, marriage of family member to SEC regulator, **20:5**  
 Consistency of returns, **20:2**  
 Conspiracy, **20:6**  
 Controlling person liability, **20:5**  
 Cooperation agreements, **20:15**  
 Cooperation by target, **20:15**  
 Cover-up, **20:6**  
 Credibility of operation, **20:2**  
 Criminal enforcement authorities, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Custodian for client assets, **20:2**  
 Customer account statements, misrepresentations, **20:5**  
 “Customer” under Securities Investor Protection Act, **20:3, 20:24**  
 Deferred prosecution agreements, **20:15**  
     JPMorgan, **10:5**  
 Delay of SEC investigations, **20:10**  
 Depository Trust Corporation BMIS account, **20:6**  
 Dereliction of duties  
     Accounting and auditing duties, **20:9**  
     Executive duties, **20:5**  
 Director of operations, **20:8**  
 Distribution of feeder funds losses to investors, **20:23**  
 Dorothy Jo account, **20:6**  
 DTC reports falsified, **20:6**  
 Dual roles, feeder funds investment manager, **20:19**  
 Due diligence failure, **20:17, 20:18**  
 Elements, **20:2**  
 Enforcement Manual 2010 revisions, **20:15**  
 Evaluation of cooperation by individuals, **20:15**

## INDEX

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

Examinations by SEC, **20:2**  
Exclusivity of funds, **20:2**  
Experience of SEC investigative personnel, **20:10**  
Expertise of SEC investigators, **20:12**  
Fairfield Greenwich Group, feeder fund, **20:17**  
Falsified books and records, **20:6**  
Falsifying records, **20:6**  
Family members, **20:5**  
Federal agencies, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Feeder funds  
    Access International, globalization, **20:21**  
    Ad hoc sales force, **20:16**  
    A.Ezra Merkin, misrepresentation to investors, **20:18**  
    Arbitration awards, **20:18**  
    Banco Santander, globalization, **20:21**  
    Civil actions against accountants for feeder funds, above  
    Cohmad Securities Corporation, **20:22**  
    Concealment of fraud, **20:2**  
    Depth of pocket, **20:20**  
    Dual roles of investment manager, **20:19**  
    Due diligence, failure, **20:17**, **20:18**  
    Fairfield Greenwich Group, **20:17**  
    Financial resources, **20:20**  
    Globalization, **20:21**  
    Independent scrutiny, **20:16**  
    Individualized loss treatment, **20:23**  
    In-house feeder fund, **20:22**  
    Insurance policy information, **20:24**  
    Investigation of red flags, failure, **20:17**  
    Kingate, globalization, **20:21**  
    Losses, passing to investors, **20:23**  
    Misrepresentations to investors, **20:18**

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

Feeder funds—Cont'd  
    Net investment method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
    Passing losses to investors, **20:23**  
    Picower settlement, **20:24**  
    Profits raising red flags, **20:19**  
    Protection under PSLRA, **20:18**  
    Protective buffer, **20:16**  
    Red flags, failure to investigate, **20:17**  
    Restatement method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
    SIPC, definition of customer, **20:24**  
    Sonja Kohn, Austrian banker, **20:21**  
    Stanley Chai, **20:19**  
    Tremont-Rye, **20:20**  
    Valuation method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
Fees charged by feeder funds, **20:24**  
Fiduciary liability of Madoff family members, **20:5**  
Financial incentives, **20:2**  
Focus of SEC examinations, **20:10**  
Foreign Corrupt Practices Act Unit, **20:12**  
Form ADV, **20:6**  
Former Chief Financial Officer, **20:8**  
Forms 13-F, **20:6**  
Framework for evaluation of cooperation by individuals, **20:15**  
Friedling & Horowitz, auditors, **20:1**, **20:9**  
Funding to scientific and medical projects, depletion, **20:3**  
Generation of random numbers, **20:6**  
Global fraud, **20:1 et seq.**  
Globalized feeder funds, **20:21**  
HSBC Bank, action against by Trustee Picard, court responses, **20:40**  
In-house feeder fund, **20:22**  
Insurance policy information, **20:24**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

**—Cont’d**

Integration of broker-dealer and investment management examinations within SEC investigations, **20:13**  
 Internal communications within SEC investigations, **20:10**  
 Internal SEC investigation procedures, streamlining, **20:13**  
 International money laundering, **20:6**  
 Investment adviser fraud, generally, **20:6**  
 Investor compensation, methods of computing  
     Clawback claims against investors who withdrew more than they deposited, **20:35**  
     Inflation and net equity, **20:36**  
     Interest and net equity, **20:36**  
     Net losers v. net winners, **20:34**  
     Second Circuit decision, net losers v. net winners, **20:34**  
     Trustee Picard, generally, **20:33**  
 JP Morgan Chase & Co.  
     Action against Madoff’s primary bank by Trustee Picard, court responses, **20:39**  
     Deferred prosecution agreements, **10:5**  
 Kingate, globalization of feeder funds, **20:21**  
 “Knowing assistance” in fraud, **20:4 to 20:9**  
 Lies to investors, **20:6**  
 Losses of feeder funds, passing to investors, **20:23**  
 Mail fraud, **20:6**  
 Mailings to investors, **20:6**  
 Market Abuse Unit, **20:12**  
 Marriage of family member to SEC regulator, **20:5**  
 Material misrepresentations, **20:9**  
 Merrill, action against by Trustee Picard, court responses, **20:41**  
 Misrepresentations  
     Accounting firm, **20:9**  
     Customer account statements, **20:5**  
     Feeder funds, **20:18**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

**—Cont’d**

Misrepresentations—Cont’d  
     Promotional materials, **20:5**  
     SEC filings, **20:5**  
 Monitoring of tips, complaints and referrals, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Municipal Securities and Public Pensions Unit, **20:12**  
 Net investment method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
 Non-investment advisory component of BMIS, **20:8**  
 Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations (OCIE), **20:2, 20:5**  
 Office of Market Intelligence  
     Analysis of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**  
     Collection of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**  
     Criminal enforcement authorities, **20:14**  
     Federal agencies, **20:14**  
     Monitoring of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**  
     Priority criteria, **20:14**  
     Risk criteria, **20:14**  
     Screening of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**  
     Self-regulatory organizations, **20:14**  
     State agencies, **20:14**  
 “Omissions” provision of federal Rule 10b-5(b), **20:5**  
 Perjury, **20:6**  
 Picower settlement, **20:24**  
 Priority criteria, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Proffer agreements, **20:15**  
 Promotional materials, misrepresentations, **20:5**  
 Protective buffer, feeder funds as, **20:16**  
 Public pension funds, depletion, **20:3**  
 Random numbers generation, **20:6**  
 Redemptions to investors, **20:2, 20:3, 20:6**



## INDEX

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

Red Flags, **20:5, 20:17**  
Listing, **20:5**  
During SEC investigations, **20:10**  
Referrals, screening by Office of  
Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Registration as investment adviser,  
**20:6**  
Regulatory oversight failure, **20:2**  
Resolutions of SEC examiners, **20:10**  
Restatement method, distribution of  
losses to investors, **20:23**  
Retirement funds, depletion, **20:3**  
Risk criteria, Office of Market Intel-  
ligence, **20:14**  
Scope of SEC investigations, **20:10**  
SEC filings, misrepresentations, **20:5**  
SEC investigations  
Accounting firm, **20:9**  
Adoption of changes, **20:11**  
Asset Management Unit, **20:12**  
Assistance provided, **20:15**  
Bounties to whistleblowers, **20:15**  
Business associates, **20:6**  
Changes, **20:11**  
Collateral horrors, **20:15**  
Company cooperation, **20:15**  
Concealment of fraud, **20:2**  
Conduct of investigations and  
examinations, **20:6, 20:10**  
Cooperation, **20:15**  
Cooperation agreements, **20:15**  
Deferred prosecution agreements,  
**20:15**  
Delay, **20:10**  
Encouraging cooperation, **20:15**  
Enforcement Manual 2010 revi-  
sions, **20:15**  
Experience of investigative person-  
nel, **20:10**  
Expertise of investigator, **20:12**  
Feeder funds, **20:16 et seq.**  
Focus of examinations, **20:10**  
Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
Unit, **20:12**  
Fostering cooperation, **20:15**

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

SEC investigations—Cont'd  
Framework for evaluation of  
cooperation, **20:15**  
Integration of broker-dealer and  
investment management  
examinations, **20:13**  
Internal communications, **20:10**  
Internal procedures, streamlining,  
**20:13**  
Market Abuse Unit, **20:12**  
Municipal Securities and Public  
Pensions Unit, **20:12**  
Nonprosecution agreements, **20:15**  
Office of Market Intelligence,  
**20:14**  
Proffer agreements, **20:15**  
Red flags during investigations,  
**20:10**  
Remediation by target, **20:15**  
Resolutions of examinations,  
**20:10**  
Restricted immunity offers, **20:15**  
Risks of cooperation, **20:15**  
Scope of investigations, **20:10**  
Seaboard Report, **20:15**  
Self-policing by target, **20:15**  
Self-reporting by target, **20:15**  
Sharing information with other  
agencies, etc., **20:14**  
Shortening of Wells process, **20:13**  
Specialization of investigators,  
**20:12**  
Specialized units, **20:12**  
Staffing, **20:10**  
Staff performance evaluation,  
**20:13**  
Streamlining structure and  
procedures, **20:13**  
Structured and New Products Unit,  
**20:12**  
Tips and connections between tips,  
**20:14**  
Tolling requirements, **20:13**  
Training, **20:12**  
Web site for post-Madoff reforms,  
**20:13**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

**—Cont'd**

SEC investigations—Cont'd  
Wells submissions, timeframe, **20:13**  
Whistleblowers, **20:14, 20:15**  
SEC staff performance evaluation, **20:13**  
Section 10(b) and Rule 10b-5, **20:5**  
Securities Investor Protection Act and Corporation, definition of “customer,” **20:3, 20:24**  
Self-regulatory organizations, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Senior executives, **20:5**  
703 slush fund, **20:6**  
Shared ethnic and religious bonds, **20:3**  
Shifting counterparties, **20:6**  
Shortening of Wells process, **20:13**  
Should have known, **20:5**  
Silence as to investment with firms, **20:2**  
SIPC, definition of customer, **20:24**  
‘Social status’ of funds, **20:2**  
Sonja Kohn and global feeder funds, **20:21**  
Special accounts, **20:6**  
Specialization of SEC investigators, **20:12**  
Specialized SEC investigation units, **20:12**  
Split-strike conversion, **20:6**  
Spouse’s role in fraud, **20:5**  
Staffing of SEC investigations, **20:10**  
State agencies, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Stature in securities industry, **20:2**  
Streamlining SEC investigation structure and procedures, **20:13**  
Structured and New Products Unit, **20:12**  
Suicide by investors, **20:3**  
Supervisors of stock trading desks, **20:5**  
Tax evasion, **20:6**  
Tax fraud, **20:9**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

**—Cont'd**

Technical support to falsify documents, **20:7**  
Technology expert, **20:5**  
Third party custodian for client assets, **20:2**  
Third party verification of returns, **20:2**  
Tips and connections between tips, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Tolling requirements for SEC investigations, **20:13**  
Training of SEC investigators, **20:12**  
Transhumanism project, **20:3**  
Tremont-Rye feeder funds, **20:20**  
Trustee Picard  
Actions against banks involved with Madoff, **20:38 to 20:41**  
Citibank  
Action against, **20:41**  
Action against banks, **20:42**  
Compensation for investors, methods of computing, **20:33 to 20:37**  
Court responses  
Citibank, action against, **20:41**  
HSBC Bank, action against, **20:40**  
JP Morgan Chase & Co., action against Madoff’s primary bank, **20:39**  
Merrill, action against, **20:41**  
HSBC Bank, action against, **20:40**  
JP Morgan Chase & Co., action against Madoff’s primary bank, **20:39**  
Merrill, action against banks, **20:41, 20:42**  
Valuation method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
Verification of returns with independent third-parties, **20:2**  
Victims, **20:3**  
Web site for post-Madoff reforms, **20:13**  
Wells submissions, timeframe, **20:13**  
Whistleblowers, **20:14, 20:15**

## INDEX

### **MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Wire fraud, **20:6**
- Withdrawal of funds in timely manner, **20:2, 20:3**

### **MAIL AND WIRE FRAUD**

- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:171, 7:463**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:594**
  - Scienter, **7:413**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### **MANAGEMENT**

- Directors, Corporate** (this index)
- Mismanagement** (this index)
- Mutual fund violations, **17:19**
- Officers, Corporate** (this index)

### **MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (MD&A)**

- Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
- Private actions, **7:17**

### **MANIPULATION**

- Generally, **7:118 et seq., 8:102 et seq.**
- Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
- Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
- Burden of proof, **8:104**
- Circular trading, **7:135**
- Cornering the market, **7:134**
- Cross trading, **7:135**
- Defendant's intent, **8:119**
- Defendant's knowledge, **8:120**
- Defendant's purpose
  - Generally, **8:103 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:104**
  - Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**
  - Direct evidence, **8:106**
  - Indirect evidence, **8:107**
  - Large blocks, **8:108**
  - Large proportion of trading, **8:109**
  - Painting the tape, **8:110**
  - Playoff of markets, **8:114**
  - Price action, **8:113**
  - Profit, **8:115**
  - Proof, **8:105**
  - Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**
  - Stimulating demand, **8:110, 8:111**

### **MANIPULATION—Cont'd**

- Defendant's purpose—Cont'd
  - Suppressing supply, **8:112**
- Defendant's willfulness, **8:121**
- Definition, **7:119**
- Depressing prices, **7:124**
- Federal securities laws, **7:120**
- Front running
  - Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **7:142**
  - SEC interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
  - SRO interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Criticisms, **7:141**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
  - Insider trading, **7:168**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:113**
- Joint and several liability, **9:28**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**
- Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**
- Matched orders, **7:121**
- Materiality, **8:54**
- Painting the tape, **7:132, 8:110**
- Parking
  - Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
  - Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**
  - Control fights, use in, **7:146**
  - Definitions, **7:144**
  - Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**
  - Record keeping violations, **7:149**
  - Tax evasion uses, **7:150**
- Pegging, **7:136**
- Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**
- Playoff of markets, **8:114**
- Price action, **8:113**
- Proof, **8:105**
- Raising prices, **7:124**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **7:130 et seq.**
  - Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
  - Capping, **7:136**
  - Circular trading, **7:135**
  - Control, **7:138**

**MANIPULATION—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Cornering the market, **7:134**
  - Cross trading, **7:135**
  - Domination, **7:138**
  - Front running, above
  - Marking the close, **7:131**
  - Painting the tape, **7:132**
  - Parking, above
  - Pegging, **7:136**
  - Short selling, **7:137**
  - Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**
- SEA § 9(a)(1), **7:121**
- SEA § 9(a)(2)
  - Generally, **7:122 et seq.**
  - Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
  - Depressing prices, **7:124**
  - Purpose, **7:125**
  - Raising prices, **7:124**
  - Series of transactions, **7:123**
- SEA § 9(a)(3), **7:126**
- SEA § 9(a)(4), **7:126**
- SEA § 9(a)(5), **7:126**
- SEA § 9(a)(6), **7:127**
- SEA § 9(b), **7:128**
- SEA § 9(e), **7:129**
- Securities Exchange Act materiality requirement, **8:54**
- Short selling, **7:137**
- Stimulating demand, **8:110**
- Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**
- Suppressing supply, **8:112**
- Wash sales, **7:121**

**MARGIN RULES**

- Generally, **14:59**
- Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
- Court cases, **14:60**
- NASD risk disclosure requirements for margin trading, **6:286**
- Parking to avoid, **7:148**
- SEA § 7, **14:59**

**MARKET ABUSE UNIT**

- SEC investigations, **20:12**

**MARKET IMPACT**

- Materiality tests, **8:21**

**MARKET INSIDERS**

- Generally, **7:575**

**MARKET MANIPULATION**

- See **Manipulation** (this index)

**MARKETS**

- See **Exchanges** (this index)

**MARKET TIMING**

- See **Mutual Fund Violations** (this index)

**MARKET TRADES**

- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)

**MARKING THE CLOSE**

- Manipulation, **7:131**

**MARKUPS AND MARKDOWNS**

- See **Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)

**MARTHA STEWART CASE**

- Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
- Acquittal, **7:411**
- Background of case, **7:404**
- Imclone stock sale, generally, **7:404**
- Indictment, **7:405**
- Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
- Insiders and inside trading, generally, **7:403 et seq.**
- Intent inference test, **7:410**
- Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
- Misrepresentation, **7:406**
- Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**
- Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**

**MARTIN ACT SUITS**

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336, 13:337**

**MATCHED ORDERS**

- Manipulation, **7:121**

**MATERIALITY**

- Generally, **6:165 et seq., 6:248 et seq., 8:4 et seq.**

## INDEX

### **MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

- Aggregate, **6:253, 7:225**
- Blue sky law, **8:7**
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:82**
- Burden of proof, **7:226**
- Compensation, private actions, **8:43**
- Component tests, **8:15**
- Contingent information factor, **8:36**
- Definition, **8:9**
- Enron connection, **8:40**
- Evidence inside information, **7:229 et seq.**
- Factors
  - Generally, **8:33 et seq.**
  - Compensation, interference from, **8:43**
  - Contingent information, **8:36**
  - Enron connection, **8:40**
  - Federal security law, **8:33 et seq.**
  - GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**
  - Interference from compensation and profits, **8:43**
  - Intersection with scienter and GAAP, **8:44**
  - Miscellaneous factors, **8:48**
  - Other elements, relation to, **8:39 et seq.**
  - Profits, interference from, **8:43**
  - Public information, relation to, **8:38**
  - Puffery, **8:35**
  - Quantity, **8:47**
  - Related party reporting and GAAP, **8:42**
  - Reliability, **8:34**
  - Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**
  - Soft information, **8:37**
  - Specificity, **8:35**
  - Time factors, **8:46**
  - Vagueness, **8:35**
- Federal security law
  - Factors, **8:33 et seq.**
  - Tests of, **8:8 et seq.**
- GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**
- Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
- Inside information
  - Generally, **7:218 et seq.**

### **MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

- Inside information—Cont'd
  - Acquisitions
    - Negotiations, **7:262 et seq.**
    - Nonnegotiated, **7:270**
  - Actual market impact after release, **7:236**
  - Burden of proof, **7:226**
  - Dividend information, **7:247**
  - Evidence, **7:229 et seq.**
  - Expectations, relation to, **7:233**
  - Factors, **7:229 et seq.**
  - Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
  - Law or fact issue, **7:227**
  - Magnitude relative to company, **7:230**
  - Market release, actual impact of, **7:236**
  - Probability relative to company, **7:230**
  - Proof, **7:226**
  - Public disclosure and materiality, **7:280**
  - Public information, relation of inside information to, **7:234**
  - Readily available information compared, **7:234**
  - Reasonable investor test
    - Generally, **7:221**
    - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
  - Regulation FD triggering disclosures, **7:535**
  - Relation to expectations, **7:233**
  - Reliability, **7:231**
  - Specificity, **7:232**
  - Standard of proof, **7:228**
  - Substantial market impact test
    - Generally, **7:222**
    - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
- Tests of materiality
  - Generally, **7:219 et seq.**
  - Aggregate materiality test, **7:225**
  - Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
  - Mosaic theory, **7:225**

**MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

Inside information—Cont'd

Tests of materiality—Cont'd

Reasonable investor test

Generally, **7:221**

Substantial market impact test  
compared, **7:223**

Significant alteration of total  
mix, **7:221**

Substantial market impact test  
Generally, **7:222**

Reasonable investor test  
compared, **7:223**

Use as test of materiality, **7:235**

Interference from compensation and  
profits, **8:43**

Intersection with scienter and GAAP,  
**8:44**

Law and fact questions, **8:23**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**

Magnitude relative to company,  
**7:230**

Market impact test, **8:21**

Merger challenges, **6:165 et seq.**

Might, use of term, **6:249**

Might test

Mills case, **8:13**

Would test compared, **8:12**

Mosaic theory, **7:225**

Pleading and proof, **5:107**

Practical problems, **6:251**

Private actions

Generally, **8:4 et seq.**

Accumulation of information, **8:27**

Blue sky law, **8:7**

Causation, **8:31**

Class certification, **8:550**

Common law tests, **8:6**

Company publicity, **8:28**

Component tests, **8:15**

Contingent information factor,  
**8:36**

Court's view, **8:26**

Definition, **8:9**

Dissemination of material false  
information, liability for,  
Lorenzo v. SEC, **8:346**

Enron connection, **8:40**

**MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

Private actions—Cont'd

Factors

Generally, **8:33 et seq.**

Compensation, interference  
from, **8:43**

Contingent information, **8:36**

Enron connection, **8:40**

Federal security law, **8:33 et  
seq.**

GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**

Interference from compensation  
and profits, **8:43**

Intersection with scienter and  
GAAP, **8:44**

Miscellaneous factors, **8:48**

Other elements, relation to, **8:39  
et seq.**

Profits, interference from, **8:43**

Public information, relation to,  
**8:38**

Puffery, **8:35**

Quantity, **8:47**

Related party reporting and  
GAAP, **8:42**

Reliability, **8:34**

Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**

Soft information, **8:37**

Specificity, **8:35**

Time factors, **8:46**

Vagueness, **8:35**

Federal security law

Factors, **8:33 et seq.**

Tests of, **8:8 et seq.**

Flexibility, **8:25**

GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**

Individual responses to informa-  
tion, High Court recognition,  
**8:29**

Intersection with scienter and  
GAAP, **8:44**

Law and fact questions, **8:23**

Market impact test, **8:21**

Materiality of alleged misrepresen-  
tation, **8:550**

Might test

Mills case, **8:13**

Would test compared, **8:12**

## INDEX

### **MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

#### Private actions—Cont'd

- Probability-magnitude test, **8:19**
- Product liability suits, **8:28**
- Professional views, **8:31**
- Proxy fraud, **8:56**
- Puffery, **8:35**
- Quantitative factors, **8:47**
- Reasonable investors react like professionals, **8:32**
- Related party reporting and GAAP, **8:42**
- Reliability factor, **8:34**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:507**
  - Distinctions, **8:519**
  - Presumptive reliance and materiality of omissions, **8:509**
  - Substitutions of theories, **8:524**
- Reviewed, **8:24**
- Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**
- Securities Act
  - Generally, **8:49 et seq.**
  - Registration fraud, **8:51**
  - Sales fraud, **8:50, 8:52**
  - Section 11, **8:51**
  - Section 12(a)(2), **8:50**
  - Section 17(a), **8:52**
  - Tests of, **8:10**
- Securities Exchange Act
  - Generally, **8:53 et seq.**
  - Market manipulation, **8:54**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:56**
  - Section 9(a), **8:54**
  - Section 10, **8:55**
  - Section 14, **8:57**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:57**
  - Tests of, **8:11**
- Soft information factor, **8:37**
- Specificity factor, **8:35**
- State laws, **8:7**
- Statistics, **8:30, 8:31**
- Tests of
  - Generally, **8:8 et seq.**
  - Accumulation of information, **8:27**
  - Causation, **8:31**

### **MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

#### Private actions—Cont'd

#### Tests of—Cont'd

- Company publicity, **8:28**
- Component tests, **8:15**
- Court's view, **8:26**
- Definition, **8:9**
- Extension to other provisions, **8:16**
- Fact vs information, **8:20**
- Federal security law, **8:8 et seq.**
- Flexibility, **8:25**
- Individual responses to information, High Court recognition, **8:29**
- Information vs fact, **8:20**
- Law and fact questions, **8:23**
- Market impact test, **8:21**
- Might test
  - Mills case, **8:13**
  - Would test compared, **8:12**
- Mills case, **8:13**
- Parties, nature of, **8:17**
- Probability-magnitude test, **8:19**
- Product liability suits, **8:28**
- Professional views, **8:31**
- Reasonable investors react like professionals, **8:32**
- Reviewed, **8:24**
- Securities Act, **8:10**
- Securities Exchange Act, **8:11**
- Statistics, **8:30, 8:31**
- Time of determination, **8:22**
- Transaction, nature of, **8:18**
- TSC cases, **8:14**
- Violation, nature of, **8:17**
- Would test
  - Might test compared, **8:12**
  - TSC cases, **8:14**
  - Zicam, **8:27, 8:28**
- Time factors, **8:46**
- Vagueness factor, **8:35**
- Would test
  - Might test compared, **8:12**
  - TSC cases, **8:14**
  - Zicam, **8:27, 8:28**
- Probability-magnitude test, **8:19**
- Probably would, use of term, **6:250**



**MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

- Profits, private actions, **8:43**
- Proxy fraud, **8:56**
- Public disclosure and materiality, **7:280**
- Puffery, **8:35**
- Quantitative factors, **8:47**
- Readily available information compared, **7:234**
- Reasonable investor test
  - Generally, **7:221**
  - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
- Regulation FD triggering disclosures, **7:535**
- Related party reporting and GAAP, **8:42**
- Reliability
  - Generally, **8:34**
  - Inside information, **7:231**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:507**
  - Distinctions, **8:519**
  - Presumptive reliance and materiality of omissions, **8:509**
  - Substitutions of theories, **8:524**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **6:168**
  - Violations, materiality of, **12:2**
- Rule 14a-9, **6:166**
- Rule 14c-6, **6:167**
- Safe harbor for predictions and projections, **7:35, 7:38**
- Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**
- Securities Act
  - Generally, **8:49 et seq.**
  - Registration fraud, **8:51**
  - Sales fraud, **8:50, 8:52**
  - Section 11, **8:51**
  - Section 12(a)(2), **8:50**
  - Section 17(a), **8:52, 8:442**
  - Tests of, **8:10**
- Securities Exchange Act
  - Generally, **8:53 et seq.**
  - Market manipulation, **8:54**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:56**
  - Section 9(a), **8:54**
  - Section 10, **8:55**

**MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

- Securities Exchange Act—Cont'd
  - Section 14, **8:57**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:57**
  - Tests of materiality, **8:11**
- Selective disclosures, materiality of, **7:535**
- Soft information factor, **8:37**
- Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
- Specificity
  - Generally, **8:35**
  - Inside information, **7:232**
- State laws, **8:7**
- Substantial market impact test
  - Generally, **7:222**
  - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
- Tests of
  - Generally, **7:219 et seq.**
  - Aggregate materiality test, **7:225**
  - Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
  - Mosaic theory, **7:225**
  - Reasonable investor test
    - Generally, **7:221**
    - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
  - Significant alteration of total mix, **7:221**
  - Substantial market impact test
    - Generally, **7:222**
    - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
  - Time factors, **8:46**
  - Use of inside information as test of materiality, **7:235**
  - Vagueness factor, **8:35**
  - Weiss decision, lawyers issuing improper legal opinions, **8:442**
  - Would test
    - Might test compared, **8:12**
    - TSC cases, **8:14**
    - Use of term generally, **6:249**

**MATERIAL NONPUBLIC INFORMATION (MNPI)**

- Generally, **7:152**
- See also **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)

## INDEX

### **MCAFEE, INC.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:11**

### **MCCARRAN ACT**

Generally, **6:203**

### **MCNULTY DECISION**

SEC investigations, **13:48, 13:65**

### **MD&A**

See **Management Discussion and Analysis** (this index)

### **MEDIATION**

Generally, **15:69**

### **MERCURY INTERACTIVE CORP.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:1, 18:10**

### **MERGERS**

Generally, **6:146 et seq.**

See also **Acquisitions** (this index)

Antifraud provisions

Generally, **6:158 et seq.**

Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**

Causation

Generally, **6:179 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:181**

Rule 14a-9, **6:179**

Rule 14c-6, **6:180**

Comparative language, **6:164**

Connection requirement

Generally, **6:183 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:185**

Rule 14a-9, **6:183**

Rule 14c-6, **6:184**

Federal laws generally, **6:151**

Jurisdictional means

Generally, **6:188 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:190**

Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**

Materiality standard

Generally, **6:165 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:168**

Rule 14a-9, **6:166**

Rule 14c-6, **6:167**

Operation, areas of, **6:163**

Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**

Privity

Generally, **6:172 et seq.**

### **MERGERS—Cont'd**

Antifraud provisions—Cont'd

Privity—Cont'd

Rule 10b-5, **6:175**

Rule 14a-9, **6:173**

Rule 14c-6, **6:174**

Reliance

Generally, **6:176 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:178**

Rule 14a-9, **6:176**

Rule 14c-6, **6:177**

Rule 10b-5

Causation, **6:181**

Jurisdictional means, **6:190**

Materiality standard, **6:168**

Private actions, **6:162**

Privity, **6:175**

Relation of proxy rules to, **6:159 et seq.**

Reliance, **6:178**

Scienter standard, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9

Causation, **6:179**

Jurisdictional means, **6:188, 6:189**

Materiality standard, **6:166**

Private actions, **6:160**

Privity, **6:173**

Reliance, **6:176**

Scienter standard, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6

Causation, **6:180**

Materiality standard, **6:167**

Private actions, **6:161**

Privity, **6:174**

Reliance, **6:177**

Scienter standard, **6:170**

Scienter standard

Generally, **6:169 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

SEA § 14(e), **6:186**

Securities Act, **6:187**

State law

Generally, **6:191 et seq.**

Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**

Delaware law, **6:196**

## MERGERS—Cont'd

- Antifraud provisions—Cont'd
  - State law—Cont'd
    - Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**
    - Equitable approach, **6:197**
    - Standing approach, **6:196**
    - Violations covered, **6:164**
  - Appraisal rights, state law, **6:192, 6:193**
  - Background, **6:148 et seq.**
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:118**
  - Congressional intent
    - Generally, **6:154 et seq.**
    - Information statement rules, **6:156**
    - Proxy rules, **6:155**
    - Rule 10b-5, **6:157**
    - SEA § 14(a), **6:155**
    - SEA § 14(c), **6:156**
  - Cybersecurity, **26:2**
  - Definition, **6:147**
  - Federal laws
    - Generally, **6:149**
    - Antifraud provisions, **6:151**
    - Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), mitigation of risks, **19:15**
    - Proxy rules, **6:150**
    - SA registration requirements, **6:152**
  - Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), mitigation of risks, **19:15**
  - Investment Bankers** (this index)
  - Private actions
    - Generally, **6:160 et seq.**
    - Rule 10b-5, **6:162**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:160**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:161**
  - Proxy solicitations
    - Generally, **6:146 et seq., 6:198 et seq.**
    - See also **Proxy Fraud** (this index)
  - Securities covered
    - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
    - Insurance companies
      - Generally, **6:201**

## MERGERS—Cont'd

- Proxy solicitations—Cont'd
  - Securities covered—Cont'd
    - Insurance companies—Cont'd
      - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
      - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
      - McCarran Act, **6:203**
    - Investment companies, **6:205**
    - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
  - Roles of bankers, **5:174**
  - SA registration requirements, **6:152**
  - State laws, **6:153**
  - Tender Offer Fraud** (this index)
  - Types of direct-impersonal dealings, **6:1**

## MERRILL LYNCH v. CURRAN

- Private actions, loss causation in
  - Supreme Court decision, **8:562**

## MILLS DECISION

- Private actions, loss causation in
  - Supreme Court decision, **8:558**

## MISAPPROPRIATION

- Cybersecurity** (this index)
- Fiduciary breach, **7:315**
- Insider liabilities
  - Generally, **7:577**
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Close family relationships, **7:587**
  - Connection element, **7:597**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
  - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
  - Enforcement actions, **7:578**
  - Family relationships, **7:587**
  - Fiduciary breach, **7:315**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**
  - Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**
  - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
  - SEC v. Mark Cuban, stress test for misappropriation theory, generally, **7:604 to 7:622**
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**

## MISMANAGEMENT

- Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
- Abuse of trading process, **5:76**

## INDEX

### **MISMANAGEMENT—Cont'd**

Fraud as part of, **5:75**  
Meaning, **5:73**  
Pleading, **5:78**  
Policies, **5:77**  
Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**  
Reasons, **5:77**  
Strict view, **5:74**

### **MISPRICING FUND SHARES**

Mutual fund violations, sales practices, **17:16**

### **MISREPRESENTATION**

**Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)

**Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)

### **MISREPRESENTATION, COMMON LAW**

See **Common Law Fraud** (this index)

### **MITIGATION**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), risks in mergers and acquisitions, **19:15**

### **MNPI**

See **Material Nonpublic Information** (this index)

### **MODELS**

Crowdfunding, **14:210**

### **MODIFICATION**

Arbitration, challenging awards, **15:58**

### **MONETARY CIVIL PENALTIES**

See **Civil Penalties** (this index)

### **MONEY LAUNDERING**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### **MONSTER WORLDWIDE INC.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:7, 18:11**

### **MORGAN STANLEY PROCEEDING**

Mutual fund violations, **17:14, 17:15**

### **MORRISON CASE**

Jurisdiction, foreign cubed case, **11:16 to 11:37**

### **MORTGAGE-BACKED SECURITIES (MBSS)**

Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332**

### **MOTIVE**

Generally, **8:203 et seq.**

Absence, effect of, **8:207**

Burden of proof, **8:208**

Pleading, **11:139**

Presence, effect of, **8:207**

Proof, **8:209**

Scienter

Generally, **8:203 et seq.**

Absence, effect of, **8:207**

Burden of proof, **8:208**

Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**

Presence, effect of, **8:207**

Proof, **8:209**

Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:204**

### **MUNICIPAL SECURITIES**

Suitability rules, **14:193**

### **MUNICIPAL SECURITIES AND PUBLIC PENSIONS UNIT**

SEC investigations, **20:12**

### **MUTUAL FUND VIOLATIONS**

Generally, **17:1 et seq.**

Breakpoint discounts, sales charges, **17:15**

Broker fraud, **17:8**

Canary complaint, generally, **17:2**

Charges, sales practices, **17:15**

Directors, **17:20**

Disclosure, misleading prospectuses, **17:7**

Fund distribution payments, sales practices, **17:14**

Governance rules, SEC's, **17:20**

Hedge funds, **17:21**

Injunctions, ancillary relief, **13:114**

Inside information, trading on, **17:9**

Intermediaries, **17:18**

**MUTUAL FUND VIOLATIONS**

—**Cont'd**

- Late trading, **17:3, 17:4, 17:10, 17:11**
- Managements, **17:19**
- Market timing
  - Generally, **17:5 to 17:12**
  - Broker fraud, **17:8**
  - Inside information, trading on, **17:9**
  - Misleading prospectuses, **17:7**
- Misleading prospectuses, **17:7**
- Mispricing fund shares, sales practices, **17:16**
- Morgan Stanley proceeding, **17:14, 17:15**
- Parties' roles and responsibilities in mutual fund scandal, generally, **17:17 to 17:21**
- Prospectus disclosure, misleading prospectuses, **17:7**
- Responsibilities in mutual fund scandal, generally, **17:17 to 17:21**
- Sales practice issues
  - Generally, **17:13 to 17:17**
  - Breakpoint discounts, sales charges, **17:15**
  - Charges, **17:15**
  - Fund distribution payments, **17:14**
  - Mispricing fund shares, **17:16**
- SEC governance rules, **17:20**
- Senior management, **17:19**
- Solutions proposed by SEC, **17:11, 17:12**

**NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF SECURITIES DEALERS (NASD)**

- See also **Self Regulatory Organizations** (this index)
- Broker-dealer supervision requirements, **14:172**
- Day trading risk disclosure requirements, **6:284**
- Extended hour trading, risk disclosure requirements, **6:285**
- Implied liabilities under SRO rules
  - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**

**NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF SECURITIES DEALERS (NASD)—Cont'd**

- Implied liabilities under SRO rules
  - Cont'd
  - See also **Self Regulatory Organizations** (this index)
- Margin trading risk disclosure requirements, **6:286**
- Markup and markdown practices
  - Generally, **14:157 et seq.**
  - Contemporaneous defined, **14:161**
  - Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**
  - Five percent policy, **14:162**
  - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
  - Non dominating market makers, **14:160**
- Risk disclosure requirements
  - Generally, **6:283 et seq.**
  - Day trading, **6:284**
  - Extended hour trading, **6:285**
  - Margin trading, **6:286**
  - Short selling, **6:287**
  - Uninsured products, **6:288**
- Short selling risk disclosure requirements, **6:287**
- Suitability rules
  - Generally, **14:185**
  - Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**
  - NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**
- Uninsured products, risk disclosure requirements, **6:288**

**NATIONAL SECURITIES MARKETS IMPROVEMENT ACT (NSMIA)**

- Generally, **3:187 et seq.**
- Administrative enforcement, **3:199**
- Enactment, **3:32**
- Federal preemption of registration
  - Generally, **3:187 et seq.**
- Buyer characteristics, **3:193**
- Exemptions, **3:195 et seq.**
- Government enforcement, **3:199**
- Mutual funds, **3:191**
- Nationally traded securities, **3:190**
- Private rights, effects on, **3:198**

## INDEX

### NATIONAL SECURITIES

#### MARKETS IMPROVEMENT ACT (NSMIA)—Cont'd

- Federal preemption of registration  
—Cont'd
  - Qualified purchasers, **3:192**
  - Regulation preemption, **3:188**
  - Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**
  - Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**
  - Securities characteristics, **3:194**
  - Securities covered, **3:189 et seq.**
  - Securities exemptions, **3:196**
  - Transaction exemptions, **3:195**
- Government enforcement, **3:199**
- Mutual funds registration, **3:191**
- Qualified purchasers, **3:192**
- Regulation preemption, **3:188**
- Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**
- Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**
- SLUSA scope compared, **3:207**

### NEGATIVE IMPLICATION

- Contraction era, **3:87**
- Expansion era, **3:65**

### NEGLIGENCE

- Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
- Burden of proof, **8:238**
- Criminal cases, **8:236**
- Injunctions, **8:234**
- Insufficiency, **8:237**
- Misrepresentation claims,  
consideration of, **7:52**
- Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
- Proof, **8:239**
- Scienter, **8:234**
- SEC decisions, **8:235**
- Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Suitability claims, **14:203**
- Versions of scienter, relations among,  
**8:230**
- Weiss decision, SEC action against  
bond counsel issuing improper  
legal opinion, **8:442**

### NEGOTIATED TRANSACTIONS

- See **Transaction Planning** (this  
index)

### NEGOTIATIONS

- See also **Compromise and Settle-  
ment** (this index)
- Acquisition negotiation disclosures.  
See **Acquisitions** (this index)
- SEC investigations
  - Generally, **13:161 et seq., 13:266**
  - Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:163**
  - Authority of staff, **13:162**
  - Considerations, **13:165**
  - Objectives, **13:164**
- SRO investigations
  - Generally, **13:308 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:310**
  - Considerations, **13:312**
  - Objectives, **13:311**
  - Procedures, **13:309**

### NEWMAN/CHIASSON CASES

- Court decisions, **7:387 et seq.**

### NEW YORK STOCK EXCHANGE (NYSE)

- Broker-dealer supervision require-  
ments, **14:173**
- Disclosure rules, **App F**
- Implied liabilities under SRO rules  
Generally, **14:62 et seq.**  
See also **Self Regulatory  
Organizations** (this index)
- Insider trading rules, **App F**

### 1933 ACT

- See **Securities Act** (this index)

### 1934 ACT

- See **Securities Exchange Act** (this  
index)

### NO-ACTION LETTERS

- SEC, **1:12**

### NONDISCLOSURE LIABILITY

- See **Disclosure** (this index)
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:75 et seq.**
- Concealment of fraud, **8:501**
- Conspirators, **8:306**
- Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**

**NONDISCLOSURE LIABILITY  
—Cont'd**

Fraud on the market  
 Generally, **8:520 et seq.**  
 See also **Reliance** (this index)  
**Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)  
 Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**  
 Pleading, **11:131**  
 Predictions, **8:2**  
 Reliance  
     Generally, **8:484 et seq.**  
     See also **Reliance** (this index)  
     Concealment of fraud, **8:501**  
 Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**  
 Rule 10b-5 liability, **14:75 et seq.**

**NON-INVESTMENT ADVISORY  
COMPONENT**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:8**

**NONPUBLIC INFORMATION**

See **Insiders and Insider Trading**  
 (this index)  
 Cybersecurity, **26:2, 26:3**

**NOTATIONS**

Generally, **1:2**

**NYSE**

See **New York Stock Exchange** (this index)

**OFF-BALANCE SHEET  
TRANSACTIONS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:413**

**OFFICE OF COMPLIANCE  
INSPECTIONS AND  
EXAMINATIONS (OCIE)**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:5**

**OFFICE OF MARKET  
INTELLIGENCE**

SEC investigations, **20:14**

**OFFICERS, CORPORATE**

Actions in concert, **8:294**  
 Backdating of stock options,  
     ramifications, **18:3, 18:7**  
 Bar orders against individuals, **13:87**

**OFFICERS, CORPORATE—Cont'd**

Blackout periods  
     Generally, **8:475**  
     Trading prohibitions, **8:472**  
 Collateral bar orders against  
     individuals, **13:87, 13:88**  
 Conflict of interest, **8:417**  
 Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**  
 Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**  
 Corporate governance, **8:414**  
 Correction of violations, responsibil-  
     ity for, **8:418**  
 Ethics codes, **8:483**  
 Indemnification, **9:76**  
 Injunctions against, **13:117**  
 Insider reports, **8:471**  
 Insider trading liability, **7:648**  
 Insurance, **9:76**  
 Internal controls, **8:466**  
 Loan prohibitions, **8:481**  
 Market, responsibilities to inform  
     Generally, **8:421**  
     Business changes, **8:422**  
     Grace case, **8:423**  
     National Telephone case, **8:422**  
     Second-guessing disclosure  
         counsel, **8:423**  
 Parties and privity  
     Generally, **8:413 et seq.**  
     See also **Private Actions** (this index)  
 Prevention of violations, responsibil-  
     ity for, **8:418**  
 Responsibilities, **8:413**  
 Rule 10b-5 liability  
     Generally, **8:413 et seq.**  
     Actions in concert, **8:294**  
     Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**  
     Backdating of stock options, **18:3, 18:10**  
     Concerted action, **8:294**  
     Conflict of interest, **8:417**  
     Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**  
     Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**  
     Cooper case, **8:419**  
     Corporate governance, **8:414**



## INDEX

### OFFICERS, CORPORATE—Cont'd

#### Rule 10b-5 liability—Cont'd

Correction of violations,  
responsibility for, **8:418**

Court cases, **8:415 et seq.**

Gould case, **8:417**

Gutfreund case, **8:420**

Inducement, **8:295**

Informed, responsibility to be,  
**8:415 et seq.**

Injunction suits, **8:303**

Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**

Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**

Market, responsibilities to inform

Generally, **8:421**

Business changes, **8:422**

Grace case, **8:423**

National Telephone case, **8:422**

Second-guessing disclosure  
counsel, **8:423**

Participants generally, **8:292**

Participants in violations generally,  
**8:294**

#### Pleading

Generally, **8:319 et seq.**

Affirmative conduct, **8:321**

Aiding-abetting, **8:324**

Choice of parties, **8:320**

Conspiracy, **8:325**

No affirmative conduct, **8:322**

Participation, **8:323**

Special elements, **8:326**

Prevention of violations,  
responsibility for, **8:418**

Stirling Homex case, **8:416**

#### Sarbanes-Oxley Act

Backdating of stock options, **18:3**

Blackout periods

Generally, **8:475**

Trading prohibitions, **8:472**

Certification, **8:462**

Ethics codes, **8:483**

Inside trading reports, **8:471**

Liabilities, **3:169**

Loan prohibitions, **8:481**

Regulation

Generally, **8:461 et seq.**

Acquisition method, **8:474**

### OFFICERS, CORPORATE—Cont'd

#### Sarbanes-Oxley Act—Cont'd

##### Regulation—Cont'd

Bar from office, **8:482**

Blackout periods, **8:475**

Blackout trading prohibitions,  
**8:472**

Certification, **8:462**

Disclosure controls, **8:466**

Enforcement, **8:476**

Ethics codes, **8:483**

Evaluations, **8:468**

Exemptions, **8:479**

Fair presentation, **8:465**

Forfeiture on accounting restate-  
ment, **8:480**

Inside trading reports, **8:471**

Internal controls, **8:466**

Liability, **8:476**

Loan prohibitions, **8:481**

Non-financial information,  
**8:467**

Notice, **8:478**

Profit measure, **8:477**

Regulation BTR, **8:473**

Response to evidence of viola-  
tions, **8:470**

SEC implementation, **8:464,**  
**8:473**

Section 302 legislation, **8:463**

Section 906, **8:469**

Regulation BTR, **8:473**

Whistleblower bounty program, orig-  
inal information, **22:9**

### OGRE

Crowdfunding, **14:211**

### O'HAGAN CASE

Private actions, loss causation in  
Supreme Court decision, **8:568**

### OMISSIONS

Accountants, **8:408**

**Insiders and Insider Trading** (this  
index)

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**OPEN-MARKET TRADES**

**Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)

**OPINIONS**

See also **Court Decisions** (this index)  
Broker-dealer liability, **14:81**

**OPPOSITE SIDE TRADERS**

Damages, **7:522**  
Definition, **7:494**  
Elements of action, **7:518**

**ORIGINAL INFORMATION**

**Whistleblowers** (this index)

**OVER THE COUNTER (OTC) MARKET**

Defined, **1:2**  
Direct-personal transactions distinguished, **1:2**  
Doorstep sales, **1:2**

**PAINTING THE TAPE**

Manipulation, **7:132**

**PARKING**

Generally, **7:143 et seq.**  
Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**  
Control fights, use in, **7:146**  
Definitions, **7:144**  
Margin requirements, use to avoid, **7:148**  
Record keeping violations, **7:149**  
Tax evasion uses, **7:150**

**PARMALAT CASE**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:111**

**PARTIES**

Generally, **8:258 et seq.**  
See also **Private Actions** (this index)  
Accountants, liability of  
    Generally, **8:404 et seq.**  
    See also **Accountants** (this index)  
Aider-abettors  
    Generally, **8:327 et seq.**  
    See also **Aider-Abettors** (this index)  
Attorneys  
    Generally, **8:409 et seq.**

**PARTIES—Cont'd**

Attorneys—Cont'd  
    See also **Attorneys** (this index)  
Broker-dealer supervisory liabilities  
    Generally, **14:164 et seq.**  
    Amex requirements, **14:174**  
    Branch office managers, **14:178**  
    Chief executive officers, **14:180**  
    Compliance officers, **14:181**  
    Court cases, **14:176**  
    Deficiencies, **14:175**  
    General counsel, **14:182**  
    Heads of functional areas, **14:179**  
    Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**  
Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**  
NASD requirements, **14:172**  
NYSE requirements, **14:173**  
Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**  
Safe harbor programs, **14:175**  
Sanctions, **14:175**  
SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**  
SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**  
SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**  
SEA § 19, **14:170**  
SEA § 20(a), **14:167**  
SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**  
Conspirators  
    Generally, **8:304 et seq.**  
    See also **Conspiracies and Conspirators** (this index)  
**Contribution** (this index)  
Control persons  
    Generally, **8:373 et seq.**  
    See also **Control Person Liability** (this index)  
Corporate officers and directors  
    Generally, **8:413 et seq.**  
    See also **Directors, Corporate; Officers, Corporate** (this index)  
Indemnification, **9:76**  
Insurance, **9:76**  
**Joint and Several Liability** (this index)  
**Mutual Fund Violations** (this index)

## INDEX

### **PARTIES—Cont'd**

**Proportionate Liability** (this index)

### **PAYMENTS**

Arbitration, disciplinary sanctions for failure to pay arbitral award, **15:64**

Foreign government officials.

**Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA)** (this index)

### **PEGGING**

Manipulation, **7:136**

### **PENALTIES**

See **Civil Penalties** (this index)

### **PENNY STOCK SALES**

Generally, **14:141 et seq.**

Blank check companies, **14:145**

Criticisms of Reform Act, **14:146**

Pre-quotation requirements, **14:147**

Pre-sale requirements, **14:142**

Reform Act of 1990 generally, **14:143**

Rule 3a51-1, **14:144**

Rule 15c2-11, **14:147**

Rule 15g-1, **14:144**

Rule 15g-8, **14:145**

Rule 15g-9, **14:142**

Rule 174, **14:145**

Rule 419, **14:145**

Secondary market trading, **14:144**

### **PENSIONS**

**Employee Benefit Plans** (this index)

Employee interests in as securities, **5:27**

### **PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:11**

### **PERJURY**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### **PICOWER**

Madoff feeder funds, **20:24**

### **PIPER CASE**

Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:561**

### **“PIPE” SCHEMES**

SEC actions against attorneys, **8:443**

### **PLAIN ENGLISH**

Generally, **6:278**

See also **Disclosure** (this index)

### **PLANNING**

See **Transaction Planning** (this index)

### **PLEA BARGAINING**

See **Criminal Enforcement** (this index)

### **PLEADING**

Generally, **11:104 et seq., 11:133 et seq.**

See also **Private Actions** (this index)

Analysts' statements, **11:127**

Broker-dealer fraud, scienter, **8:145**

Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**

Causation

Acceptance of loss causation pleading, **8:571 to 8:574**

Rejection of loss causation pleading, **8:575 to 8:577**

Circumstantial evidence of recklessness, **11:162**

Company as buyer seller, **5:126**

Connection requirement, **5:140**

Conscious behavior, **11:162**

Contents, **11:120**

Deception, **5:88**

Fact statements, **11:120 et seq.**

Failure to anticipate, **11:131**

Falsity, **11:116**

Forward looking statements, **11:132**

Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:546**

Group statements, **11:123**

Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**

Implied liability, **8:257**

Information and belief, **11:128**

Insider trading charges, **7:364**

Jurisdiction, **11:38**

Loss causation. Causation, above

Manipulation, **8:123**

Materiality, **5:107**

Misleading character, **11:118**

**PLEADING—Cont’d**

- Mismanagement, **5:78**
- Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
- Motive, **11:139**
- Nondisclosure, **11:131**
- Opportunity, **11:139**
- Particularity
  - Generally, **11:104 et seq., 11:115 et seq.**
  - Analysts’ statements, **11:127**
  - Conflicting concerns, **11:109, 11:110**
  - Contents, **11:120**
  - Discovery stays, **11:120 et seq.**
  - Fact statements, **11:120 et seq., 11:122**
  - Failure to anticipate, **11:131**
  - Falsity, **11:116, 11:117**
  - Forward looking statements, **11:132**
  - FRCP Rule 9(b)
    - Conflicting concerns, **11:109**
    - Purposes, **11:107**
    - Tactical importance, **11:105**
  - Group statements, **11:123, 11:124**
  - Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**
  - Implied liability, **11:114**
  - Information and belief, **11:128**
  - Misleading character, **11:118, 11:119**
  - Motive, **11:139**
  - Nondisclosure, **11:131**
  - Parties, **11:120**
  - Place, **11:120**
  - Predictions, **11:132**
  - Private Securities Litigation Reform Act, **11:104 et seq.**
  - Purposes of rule, **11:107, 11:108**
  - Registration fraud, **11:112**
  - Rule 10b-5 liability
    - Generally, **11:115 et seq.**
    - Analysts’ statements, **11:127**
    - Fact statements, **11:120 et seq., 11:122**
    - Failure to anticipate, **11:131**
    - Falsity, **11:116, 11:117**
    - Forward looking statements, **11:132**

**PLEADING—Cont’d**

- Particularity—Cont’d
  - Rule 10b-5 liability—Cont’d
    - Group statements, **11:123, 11:124**
    - Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**
    - Information and belief, **11:128, 11:129**
    - Misleading character, **11:118, 11:119**
    - Nondisclosure, **11:131**
    - Predictions, **11:132**
    - Scienter, **11:133 et seq.**
    - Third party statements, **11:127**
    - Unattributed statements, **11:125, 11:126**
  - SA § 11, **11:112**
  - SA § 12(2), **11:111**
  - Sales fraud, **11:111**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **11:133 et seq.**
    - Bases for inferring, **11:135**
    - Circumstantial evidence of recklessness, **11:162**
    - Conscious behavior, **11:162**
    - Motive, **11:139**
    - Opportunity, **11:139**
    - Recklessness
      - Generally, **11:141**
      - Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**
    - Securities Exchange Act, **11:134**
  - SEA § 21D(b)
    - Conflicting concerns, **11:110**
    - Purposes, **11:108**
    - Tactical importance, **11:106**
  - Securities Act
    - Registration fraud, **11:112**
    - Sales fraud, **11:111**
  - Securities Exchange Act, **11:113**
  - Tactical importance, **11:105, 11:106**
  - Third party statements, **11:127**
  - Time, **11:120**
  - Unattributed statements, **11:125, 11:126**
  - Parties, **11:120**
  - Place, **11:120**

## INDEX

### PLEADING—Cont'd

Predictions, **11:132**

Privity

Generally, **8:319 et seq.**

Affirmative conduct, **8:321**

Aiding-abetting, **8:324**

Choice of parties, **8:320**

Conspiracy, **8:325**

No affirmative conduct, **8:322**

Participation, **8:323**

Special elements, **8:326**

Proportionate liability, **9:58**

Proxy fraud, scienter, **8:131**

Recklessness

Generally, **11:141**

Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**

SA § 11 requirements, **8:81**

Scienter

Generally, **8:81**

Bases for inferring, **11:135**

Broker-dealer fraud, **8:145**

Manipulation, **8:123**

Particularity, **11:133 et seq.**

Proxy fraud, **8:131**

SEC, false reports to, **8:152**

Tender offer fraud, **8:138**

SEA § 21D(b) requirements, **11:134**

Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**

Tender offer fraud scienter, **8:138**

Third party statements, **11:127**

Time, **11:120**

Unattributed statements, **11:125**

Unfair terms, **5:152**

### PONZI SCHEME

**Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)

### PORTALS

Crowdfunding, **14:217**

Description, **14:223**

### PREDICTIONS

Generally, **7:5 et seq.**

See also **Forward Looking Information** (this index)

Broker-dealer liability, **14:81**

Broker predictions, **7:7**

Brokers, **7:7**

### PREDICTIONS—Cont'd

Disclosure obligations

Generally, **7:10 et seq.**

Capital resources, **7:15**

Liquidity, **7:14**

With MD&A requirement

Administrative enforcement,  
**7:13**

Private actions, **7:17**

Operation results, **7:16**

Private actions on MD&A require-  
ments, **7:17**

Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**

Safe harbor

Generally, **7:19 et seq.**

Background, **7:20**

Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**

PSLRA

Generally, **7:23 et seq.**

Actual knowledge prong,  
**7:36**

Attacking cautionary state-  
ments, **7:29**

Caution prong, **7:26**

Corrections, **7:45**

Definition of forward looking  
statement, **7:25**

Discovery stays, **7:44**

Drafting cautionary state-  
ments, **7:28**

Eligible makers, **7:37**

Exclusions, **7:40**

Expandability, **7:41**

Falsity, actual knowledge of,  
**7:36**

Later disclosures, **7:30**

Motion practice, **7:43**

Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**

Oral statements referencing  
caution, **7:31, 7:39**

Procedural aspects, **7:42**

Prohibited uses, **7:40**

Scope of Act, **7:24**

Statements with cautions,  
**7:27**

Update duty, **7:45**

**PREDICTIONS—Cont'd**

- Disclosure obligations—Cont'd
  - Safe harbor—Cont'd
    - Readily available cautionary statements
      - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
      - SEC filings, **7:33**
      - Timing, **7:32**
    - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
    - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
  - SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
  - With SEC encouragement, **7:12**
  - Without SEC rule, **7:11**
- Earnings
  - Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**
  - Insider use, **7:204**
  - Misrepresentations, **6:255**
  - Nondisclosure, **6:257**
- Forecasts distinguished, **7:5**
- Forward looking information generally, **7:5**
- Fraud, predictions and projections as, **7:6**
- Inherently misleading earnings statements, **6:256**
- Misrepresentations, **7:46**
- Nondisclosure
  - Generally, **8:2**
  - Earnings information, **6:257**
- Pleading particularity, **11:132**
- Projections distinguished, **7:5**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
- Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
- Background, **7:20**
- Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
- Later disclosures, **7:30**
- Motion practice, **7:43**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**

**PREDICTIONS—Cont'd**

- Safe harbor—Cont'd
- PSLRA—Cont'd
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**

**PREEMPTION**

- Federal
  - See also **Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act; State Law** (this index)
  - Employee benefit plans, **5:43**
  - ERISA, **5:43**
  - Mutual funds registration, **3:191**
  - Nationally traded securities, **3:190**
  - NSMIA preemption of registration
    - Generally, **3:187 et seq.**
    - Buyer characteristics, **3:193**
    - Exemptions, **3:195 et seq.**
    - Government enforcement, **3:199**
    - Mutual funds, **3:191**
    - Nationally traded securities, **3:190**
    - Private rights, effects on, **3:198**

## INDEX

### PREEMPTION—Cont'd

- Federal—Cont'd
  - NSMIA preemption of registration—Cont'd
    - Qualified purchasers, **3:192**
    - Regulation preemption, **3:188**
    - Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**
    - Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**
    - Securities characteristics, **3:194**
    - Securities covered, **3:189 et seq.**
    - Securities exemptions, **3:196**
    - Transaction exemptions, **3:195**

### PRE-PURCHASE MODEL

- Crowdfunding, **14:210**

### PRESS RELEASES

- Disclosures by, **7:283**

### PRESUMPTIONS

- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:521**
- Materiality, presumptive reliance and, **8:509**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:508 et seq.**
  - See also **Reliance** (this index)
- Ute presumption, **8:484**

### PRICE

- Market based price determinations, **8:525**
- Retroactive pricing of stock option grants. See **Backdating of Stock Options** (this index)

### PRICE DROP

- Private actions, correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

### PRICE INFLATION

- Private actions, Proposition 1, **8:579**

### PRIVACY

- SEC investigations, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:149, 13:150**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS

- Generally, **8:1 et seq.**
- Absolute liability, **8:243**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Admission of wrongdoing, compromise and settlement, **13:176 to 13:181**
- Aider-abettor liability
  - Generally, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Absence of benefit, **8:366**
  - Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**
  - Definitions, **8:349**
  - Dissemination of material false information, liability for, **Lorenzo v. SEC, 8:346**
- Elements, **8:352**
- Extent of benefit, **8:367**
- High conscious intent, **8:358**
- Janus Capital
  - Federal securities laws, applicability, **8:336 to 8:345**
  - Impact of Janus decision, **8:337**
  - Insiders, liability for statements of their corporations, **8:339, 8:340**
  - Legal entity, liability for statements of another, **8:338**
  - Observations and tentative conclusions, **8:342 et seq.**
  - Preparation for or assistance to another, **8:336 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), **8:345**
  - SEC enforcement actions, applicability, **8:343**
  - Shield function, **8:341**
  - State law, applicability to, **8:344**
- Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**
- Legal entity, liability for statements of another, Janus Capital, **8:338**
- Nature of benefit, **8:367**
- Origins of doctrine, **8:351**
- Preparation for or assistance to another, Janus Capital, **8:336 et seq.**
- Presence of benefit, **8:365**
- Primary violations, **8:355**
- PSLRA, **8:347**
- Requirements, **8:352**



**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont’d**

Aider-abettor liability—Cont’d  
 Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), Janus Capital, **8:345**  
 SEA § 20(f), **8:348**  
 SEC enforcement actions, applicability, Janus Capital, **8:343**  
 State law, applicability to, Janus Capital, **8:344**  
 Substantial assistance  
   Generally, **8:359 et seq.**  
   Extraordinary actions, **8:362**  
   Inaction, **8:363**  
   Ordinary actions, **8:362**  
   Proximate cause, **8:360**  
   Silence, **8:363**  
   Timing, **8:361**  
 Amicus curiae participation by agencies  
   CFTC, **13:234**  
   SEC, **13:79**  
   SROs, **13:293**  
 Ancillary remedies, **9:17**  
 Arbitration compared, **15:6**  
 Backdating stock options, **18:10**  
 Basic case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:565**  
 Blue Chip case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:560**  
 Bonds, actions on, SLUSA limitations, **3:211**  
 Borak, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:557**  
 Broker-dealer liability  
   Generally, **14:1 et seq.**  
   See also **Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)  
   Attorneys’ fees, express actions, **14:53**  
   Broker’s knowledge, express actions, **14:41**  
   Burden of proof, SA § 12(a)(2), **14:42**  
   Causation, **14:91 et seq.**  
   **Churning** (this index)  
   Class actions  
     SA § 11, **14:18**  
     SA § 12, **14:57**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont’d**

Broker-dealer liability—Cont’d  
 Costs, express actions, **14:53**  
 Damages  
   Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**  
   Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**  
 Debt securities markups, **14:163**  
 Due diligence defense  
   Generally, **14:5**  
   SEC view, **14:9**  
 Express actions  
   Generally, **14:2 et seq.**  
   Attorneys’ fees, **14:53**  
   Broker’s knowledge, **14:41**  
   Class actions  
     SA § 11, **14:18**  
     SA § 12, **14:57**  
   Costs, **14:53**  
   Damages, **14:46, 14:51**  
   Due diligence defense  
     Generally, **14:5**  
     SEC view, **14:9**  
   Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**  
   Interest, **14:48**  
   Limitation of actions, **14:17**  
     SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**  
     SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**  
   Misrepresentations, **14:39**  
   Offerors, brokers as  
     SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**  
     SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**  
   Omissions, **14:39**  
   In pari delicto defense, **14:21**  
   Privity, **14:34**  
   Proximate cause, **14:35**  
   Punitive damages, **14:54**  
   Purchaser, plaintiff as  
     SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**  
     SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**  
   Purchaser’s knowledge, **14:40**  
   Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**  
   Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**  
   SA § 11  
     Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**  
     Court cases, **14:6**  
     Damages, **14:15**

## INDEX

### **PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
  - Express actions—Cont'd
    - SA § 11—Cont'd
      - Due diligence defense
        - Generally, **14:5**
        - SEC view, **14:9**
      - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
      - Later filings, effect of, **14:10**
      - Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**
      - Participating underwriters, **14:13**
      - Policy considerations, **14:12**
      - Reasonable investigation defense
        - Generally, **14:5**
        - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
        - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
      - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**
      - SEC Rule 176, **14:7**
      - SEC Rule 412, **14:7**
      - SEC view of due diligence techniques, **14:9**
    - Underwriters
      - Generally, **14:4**
      - Due diligence, **14:14**
  - SA § 12(a)(1)
    - Generally, **14:19 et seq.**
    - Broker as defendant, **14:20**
    - Class actions, **14:57**
    - Exemptions from SA § 5, **14:24**
    - Limitation of actions, **14:25**
    - Offerors, brokers as, **14:22**
    - In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
    - Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:23**
    - Sellers, brokers as, **14:22**
    - Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**
  - SA § 12(a)(2)
    - Generally, **14:27 et seq.**
    - Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
    - Broker as defendant, **14:28**
    - Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
    - Burden of proof, **14:42**

### **PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
  - Express actions—Cont'd
    - SA § 12(a)(2)—Cont'd
      - Class actions, **14:57**
      - Costs, **14:53**
      - Damages, **14:46, 14:51**
      - Interest, **14:48**
      - Limitation of actions, **14:56**
      - Misrepresentations, **14:39**
      - Offerors, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**
      - Omissions, **14:39**
      - Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**
      - Privity, **14:34**
      - Proximate cause, **14:35**
      - Punitive damages, **14:54**
      - Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:44**
      - Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
      - Reasonable care, **14:43**
      - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**
      - Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**
      - Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**
      - SEA § 10(b) and, overlap between, **14:55**
      - Sellers, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**
      - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**
      - Tax considerations, **14:48**
      - Tender, **14:49**
      - Transactional coverage, **14:58**
    - Sellers, brokers as
      - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**
      - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**
    - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**
    - Tax considerations, **14:48**
    - Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**
  - Implied actions
    - Margin rules
      - Generally, **14:59**
      - Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
      - Court cases, **14:60**
      - SEA § 7, **14:59**
    - Rule 10b-5
      - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
- Implied actions—Cont'd
- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **14:94**
  - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
  - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Elements of action, **14:74**
  - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
  - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
  - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
  - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
  - Materiality, **14:82**
  - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
  - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Proximate cause, **14:92**
  - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Lost profits, **14:101**
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**
  - Restitution, **14:104**
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
  - SRO rules
    - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
    - Arbitration, **14:72**
    - Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**
    - Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**
    - Contraction era, **14:71**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
- Implied actions—Cont'd
- SRO rules—Cont'd
  - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
- Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
- Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
- Limitation of actions
  - Generally, **14:17**
  - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
- Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**
- Margin rules
  - Generally, **14:59**
  - Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
  - Court cases, **14:60**
  - SEA § 7, **14:59**
- Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
- Markup and markdown practices
  - Generally, **14:148 et seq.**
- Basis
  - Generally, **14:150 et seq.**
  - Contemporaneous defined, **14:156**
  - Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**
  - Dominating market makers, **14:154**
  - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
  - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
  - Market-makers, retail, **14:153**
  - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
  - NASD criteria, **14:157 et seq.**
  - Non dominating market makers, **14:160**
  - Non market makers
    - NASD criteria, **14:159**
    - SEC criteria, **14:152**
  - Retailer market makers, **14:153**
- Debt securities markups, **14:163**

## INDEX

### **PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
  - Markup and markdown practices—Cont'd
    - Disclosure, **14:149**
    - Five percent policy, **14:162**
    - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
    - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
    - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
- Materiality, **14:82**
- Misrepresentations, **14:39**
- Offerors, brokers as, express actions, **14:22, 14:29 et seq.**
- Omissions, **14:39**
- Opinions, **14:81**
- Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
- In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
- Penny Stock Sales** (this index)
- Predictions, **14:81**
- Privity, **14:34**
- Proximate cause
  - Generally, **14:92**
  - Express actions, **14:35**
- Punitive damages, **14:54**
- Purchaser, plaintiff as
  - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**
- Reasonable investigation defense
  - Generally, **14:5**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
- Reasonable investigation requirement
  - SA § 11, **14:11**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**
- Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
- Recommendations, **14:81**
- Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**
- Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
- Rescission
  - Chasins measure, **14:97**
  - Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**
  - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Lost profits, **14:101**

### **PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
  - Rescission—Cont'd
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**
  - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **14:94**
  - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
  - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Elements of action, **14:74**
  - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
  - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
  - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
  - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
  - Materiality, **14:82**
  - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
  - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Proximate cause, **14:92**
  - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Lost profits, **14:101**
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**
  - Restitution, **14:104**
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
- SA § 11, reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**
- SA § 12(a)(1), broker as defendant, **14:20**
- SA § 12(a)(2)
  - Broker as defendant, **14:28**
  - Burden of proof, **14:42**
  - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Sellers, brokers as, **14:22, 14:29 et seq.**
  - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, express actions, **14:35**
- Suitability** (this index)
- Supervisory duties
  - Generally, **14:164 et seq.**
  - Amex requirements, **14:174**
  - Branch office managers, **14:178**
  - Chief executive officers, **14:180**
  - Compliance officers, **14:181**
  - Court cases, **14:176**
  - Deficiencies, **14:175**
  - General counsel, **14:182**
  - Heads of functional areas, **14:179**
  - Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**
  - Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
  - NASD requirements, **14:172**
  - NYSE requirements, **14:173**
  - Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**
  - Safe harbor programs, **14:175**
  - Sanctions, **14:175**
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
  - SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**
  - SEA § 19, **14:170**
  - SEA § 20(a), **14:167**
  - SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**
- Burden of Proof** (this index)
- Causation
  - Generally, **8:555 et seq.**
  - Basic case, **8:565**
  - Blue Chip case, **8:560**
  - Borak decision, **8:557**
  - Correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**
  - Dirks case, **8:563**
  - Dura Pharmaceuticals case, **8:569**
  - 8th Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:574**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Causation—Cont'd
  - 11th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:577**
  - Halliburton, **8:570**
  - Holmes case, **8:567**
  - Insider trading, **7:517**
  - Merrill Lynch v. Curran, **8:562**
  - Mills decision, **8:558**
  - 9th Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:571**
  - O'Hagan, **8:568**
  - Piper case, **8:561**
- Pleading
  - Acceptance of loss causation pleading, **8:571 to 8:574**
  - Rejection of loss causation pleading, **8:575 to 8:577**
- Price inflation, Proposition 1, **8:579**
- Procedural aspects, **8:581**
- Randall case, **8:564**
- Resolution of issues, **8:578 to 8:581**
- 2nd Circuit
  - Cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:572**
  - Cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:575**
- 7th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:576**
- Supreme Court decisions, **8:556 to 8:570**
- 3rd Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:573**
- Transaction causation, **8:484**
- Ute Indians, **8:484, 8:559**
- Virginia bankshares, **8:566**
- CFTC, amicus curiae participation, **13:234**
- Churning** (this index)
- Class Actions** (this index)
- Compromise and settlement, admission of wrongdoing, **13:176 to 13:181**
- Congressional intent, **3:16**
- Conspirators, common law fraud, **8:261**
- Constructive fraud, **8:242**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**
- Contribution** (this index)
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **8:373 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **8:394 et seq.**
  - Corporate policy of affairs, control over, **8:382 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **8:380 et seq.**
  - Culpable participation, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**
  - Element of control, **8:379**
  - Good faith defense
    - Generally, **8:393 et seq.**
    - Broker-dealers, **8:394 et seq.**
    - SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**
    - SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**
  - Law and fact questions, **8:381**
  - Legislative history, **8:375**
  - Participation, culpable, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**
  - Standard of participation, **8:377**
  - Statutory language, **8:374**
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:327, 13:328**
- Correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**
- Defenses, interrelations of fraud rules generally, **3:51**
- Direct-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
- Direct-Personal Dealing** (this index)
- Dirks case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:563**
- Dura Pharmaceuticals case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:569**
- 8th Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:574**
- Elements of actions under fraud rules, **3:50**
- 11th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:577**
- Equitable fraud, **8:242**
- Expert testimony, churning, **14:132**
- Express actions. Implied and express actions, below

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Federal security law
  - Materiality factors, **8:33 et seq.**
  - Materiality tests, **8:8 et seq.**
- Federal vs state private actions, relative advantages, **3:200**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), allegations and settlements, **19:12, 19:13**
- Fraud on the market. Reliance, below
- Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**
- Halliburton, loss causation, **8:570**
- Holmes case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:567**
- Implied and express actions
  - Generally, **3:54 et seq., 8:242 et seq.**
- See also **Implied Liability** (this index)
- Absolute liability, **8:243**
- Actual knowledge of plaintiff, **8:244**
- Broker-dealer liability, above
- Burden of proof, **8:255**
- Constructive fraud, **8:242**
- Contributory negligence, **8:253**
- Cort v Ash, **3:95 et seq.**
- Current status of 10b-5 actions, **3:146 et seq.**
- Elements, **3:50**
- Equitable fraud, **8:242**
- Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**
- Innocent defendants, **8:243**
- Insider trading, express causes of action, **7:491 et seq., 7:493 et seq.**
- Interrelations of fraud rules generally, **3:50**
- Limitation of actions, **11:46**
- Misrepresentation, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:246**
- Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**
- Nondisclosure, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:245**
- Overlapping remedies in contraction era, **3:102 et seq.**
- Overlapping remedies in expansion era, **3:69 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Implied and express actions—Cont'd

Plaintiff's knowledge

Generally, **8:244 et seq.**

Actual knowledge, **8:244**

Comparative knowledge, **8:249**

Constructive knowledge, **8:250**

Limitation of actions, **8:251**

Misrepresentation, **8:246**

Nondisclosure, **8:245**

Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**

Pleading, **8:257**

Proof, **8:256**

Reliance, **8:484**

Strict liability, **8:243**

Indemnification, **9:76**

**Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)

Injunctions, scienter requirement

Actual knowledge, **8:174**

Constructive knowledge, **8:185**

Intent, **8:195**

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

Insider trading

Generally, **7:160, 7:478 et seq., 7:491 et seq.**

Amount of liability, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**

Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**

Background, **7:501**

Burden of proof

Generally, **7:366**

Defenses, **7:369**

Institutions, **7:367**

Causation

Generally, **7:517**

Implied liability, **7:517**

Connection with requirement

Market transactions, **7:370**

Rule 10b-5, **7:370**

Rule 14e-3, **7:371**

Tender offers, **7:371**

Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**

Control persons, actions against, **7:486, 7:512**

Convertibles traders, suits by, **7:508**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd

Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**

Defenses

Generally, **7:350**

Amount defined, **7:355**

Binding contract defense, **7:351**

Burden of proving, **7:369**

Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**

Date defined, **7:357**

Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**

Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**

Institutional defenses, **7:361**

Instructions defense, **7:352**

Overriding limitations, **7:359**

Price defined, **7:356**

Relation to other laws, **7:362**

Systematic plans defense, **7:353**

Tracking plans defense, **7:354**

Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**

Express actions

Generally, **7:478 et seq.**

Amount of liability, **7:488**

Ancillary relief, **7:490**

Control persons, actions against, **7:486**

Damages, **7:488**

Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**

Parties defendant, **7:483**

Parties plaintiff

Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**

Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**

Relation to other liabilities, **7:489**

Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**

Tipsters, actions against, **7:485**

Traders

Actions against, **7:484**

Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**

Who can be sued, **7:483**



## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Express actions—Cont'd
    - Who may sue
      - Express causes of action,  
**7:480 et seq.**
      - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
- Fiduciary theory
  - Generally, **7:498**
  - Scienter, **7:385**
- Implied liability
  - Generally, **7:491 et seq.**
  - Amount of liability, **7:521 et seq.**
  - Ancillary relief, **7:525**
  - Background, **7:501**
  - Causation, **7:517**
  - Contemporaneous traders,  
actions by, **7:503 et seq.**
  - Control persons, actions against,  
**7:512**
  - Convertible traders, suits by,  
**7:508**
  - Damages, **7:521 et seq.**
  - Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**
  - Fiduciary theory, **7:498**
  - Market, relation of parties to,  
**7:493 et seq.**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:499**
  - Opposite side traders
    - Damages, **7:522**
    - Elements of action, **7:518**
    - Relations of parties to market,  
**7:494**
    - Suits by, **7:504**
  - Option traders, suits by, **7:507**
  - Parties defendant, **7:509**
  - Relation to other liabilities,  
**7:524**
  - Reliance, **7:516**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:500**
  - Same side traders
    - Damages, **7:523**
    - Elements of action, **7:519**
    - Relations of parties to market,  
**7:495**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Implied liability—Cont'd
    - Same side traders—Cont'd
      - Suits by, **7:505**
    - Standing, **7:520**
    - Tipsters, actions against, **7:511**
    - Traders, actions against, **7:510**
    - Who can be sued, **7:509**
    - Who can sue, **7:502**
- Institutional defenses, **7:361**
- Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**
- Janus Capital, liability for state-  
ments of their corporations,  
**8:339, 8:340**
- Market, relation of parties to,  
**7:493 et seq.**
- Misappropriation theory
  - Generally, **7:499**
  - Scienter, **7:386**
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- Opposite side traders
  - Damages, **7:522**
  - Elements of action, **7:518**
  - Relations of parties to market,  
**7:494**
  - Suits by, **7:504**
- Option traders, suits by, **7:507**
- Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**
- Parties, **7:363**
- Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**
- Parties plaintiff
  - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**
  - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **7:364**
  - Scienter, **7:398**
- Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
- Proof, **7:368**
- Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
- Relation to other liabilities, **7:489, 7:524**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **7:516**
  - Implied liability, **7:516**
- RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
- Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
     Rule 14e-3, **7:500**  
     Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**  
     Same side traders  
         Damages, **7:523**  
         Elements of action, **7:519**  
         Relations of parties to market, **7:495**  
         Suits by, **7:505**  
     Scienter  
         Generally, **7:372 et seq.**  
         Fiduciary theory  
             Tippers, **7:381**  
             Trading insiders, **7:377**  
             Trading tippees, **7:385**  
         Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**  
         Misappropriation theory  
             Tippers, **7:382**  
             Trading insiders, **7:378**  
             Trading tippees, **7:386**  
         Pleading, **7:398**  
         Proof, **7:399 et seq.**  
         Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**  
         Rule 14e-3, **7:412**  
         Tippers  
             Generally, **7:379 et seq.**  
             Proof, **7:401**  
         Trading insiders  
             Generally, **7:375 et seq.**  
             Proof, **7:400**  
         Trading tippees  
             Generally, **7:383 et seq.**  
             Proof, **7:402**  
     Standing, **7:520**  
     Tippers  
         Actions against, **7:485, 7:511**  
         Scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
     Traders  
         Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**  
         Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**  
     Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**  
     Who can sue  
         Generally, **7:502**  
         Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
     Who can sue—Cont'd  
         Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
     Insurance, **9:76**  
     **Joint and Several Liability** (this index)  
     Joint tortfeasors, common law fraud, **8:261**  
     Jurisdiction  
         Generally, **11:2 et seq.**  
         Adviser activities, **11:15**  
         Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
         Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**  
         Check clearance as interstate activity, **11:11**  
         Class actions, **11:42**  
         Defenses, **11:41**  
         Derivative suits, **11:43**  
         Foreign transactions, **11:16**  
         Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**  
         International transactions, **11:16**  
         Interstate commerce, **11:3**  
         Local telephone use, **11:4**  
         Mails, use of, **11:6**  
         Misconduct, relation of jurisdictional means to  
             Generally, **11:8 et seq.**  
             Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
             Check clearances, **11:11**  
             Fraud, **11:9**  
             Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**  
             Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**  
         Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**  
         Pleading, **11:38**  
         Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**  
         Process, **11:40**  
         Scope of commerce, **11:3**  
         Securities exchanges and interstate commerce, **11:7**  
         Service of process, **11:40**  
         Telephone use, **11:4**  
         Transaction, interstate nature of, **11:10, 11:12**  
         Venue, **11:39**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

#### **Limitation of Actions** (this index)

Loss causation. Causation, above

#### **Manipulation**

Generally, **8:102 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:104**

#### **Defendant's purpose**

Generally, **8:103 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:104**

Direct evidence, **8:106**

Indirect evidence, **8:107**

Large blocks, **8:108**

Large proportion of trading,  
**8:109**

Painting the tape, **8:110**

Playoff of markets, **8:114**

Price action, **8:113**

Profit, **8:115**

Proof, **8:105**

Stimulating demand, **8:110**

Suppressing supply, **8:112**

Indirect evidence of purpose,  
**8:107**

Materiality, **8:54**

Painting the tape, **8:110**

Playoff of markets, **8:114**

Price action, **8:113**

Proof, **8:105**

#### **Martha Stewart case**

Generally, **7:403 et seq.**

Acquittal, **7:411**

Background of case, **7:404**

Imclone stock sale, **7:404**

Indictment, **7:405**

Inferences from evidence, **7:409**

Insiders and insider trading, gener-  
ally, **7:403 et seq.**

Intent inference test, **7:410**

Limits on argument and evidence,  
**7:407**

Misrepresentation, **7:406**

Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**

Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**

MD&A predictions and projections,  
disclosure requirements, **7:17**

#### **Merger challenges**

Rule 10b-5, **6:162**

Rule 14a-9, **6:160**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

#### **Merger challenges—Cont'd**

Rule 14c-6, **6:161**

Merrill Lynch v. Curran, loss causa-  
tion in Supreme Court decision,  
**8:562**

Mills, loss causation in Supreme  
Court decision, **8:558**

Misappropriation theory of insider  
liabilities, **7:579, 7:603**

#### **Misrepresentations**

Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**

Omnicare decision, fact vs.  
opinion standard, **8:3**

Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:246**

Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**

#### **Motion practice**

Fraud on the market theory  
(FOMT), **8:547**

Insider trading charges, **7:365**

Proportionate liability, **9:59**

Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**

9th Circuit, cases accepting loss  
causation pleading, **8:571**

#### **Nondisclosure**

Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**

Omnicare decision, fact vs.  
opinion standard, **8:3**

Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**

Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**

NSMIA preemption, **3:198**

Observations, **13:182**

O'Hagan case, loss causation in  
Supreme Court decision, **8:568**

#### **Parallel civil and criminal proceed- ings**

Generally, **13:133 et seq.**

Battle over discovery, **13:135**

CFTC references, **13:263**

Civil-criminal flow of information,  
**13:139**

Continuation of criminal proceed-  
ings, **13:140**

Continuations of civil proceedings,  
**13:137, 13:138**

Criminal-civil flow of information,  
**13:141, 13:143**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings—Cont'd
  - Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**
  - Discovery, **13:139, 13:142, 13:143**
    - Continuation of civil proceedings with, **13:138**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
  - Reasons for concern, **13:134**
  - SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**
  - Parallel criminal proceedings, **13:143**
- Parties
  - Generally, **8:258 et seq.**
  - Aider-abettors
    - Implied liability, **8:279**
    - SA § 12(2), **8:269**
  - Blue sky law, **8:262**
  - Brokers
    - Implied liability, **8:276**
    - SA § 12(2), **8:266**
  - Buyers, **8:265**
  - Common law, **8:259**
  - Conspirators
    - Generally, **8:261**
    - Implied liability, **8:280**
    - SA § 12(2), **8:270**
  - Contribution** (this index)
  - Control persons, **8:271**
  - Distinctions, **8:258**
  - Implied liability
    - Generally, **8:274 et seq.**
    - Aider-abettors, **8:279**
    - Brokers, **8:276**
    - Buyers, **8:275**
    - Conspirators, **8:280**
    - Control persons, **8:281**
    - Insiders, **8:277**
    - Participants, **8:278**
  - Indemnification, **9:76**
  - Insiders
    - Implied liability, **8:277**
    - SA § 12(2), **8:267**
  - Insurance, **9:76**
  - Joint and Several Liability** (this index)

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Parties—Cont'd
  - Joint tortfeasors, **8:261**
  - Participants, **8:268**
  - Proportionate Liability** (this index)
  - Proxy fraud, **8:284**
  - Registration fraud, **8:273**
  - SA § 11, **8:273**
  - Sales fraud
    - Generally, **8:263 et seq.**
    - Aider-abettors, **8:269**
    - Brokers, **8:266**
    - Buyers, **8:265**
    - Conspirators, **8:270**
    - Control persons, **8:271**
    - Implied liability, **8:274 et seq.**
    - Insiders, **8:267**
    - Others, **8:272**
    - Participants, **8:268**
    - SA § 17(a), **8:274 et seq.**
    - Sellers, **8:264**
  - SEA § 9, **8:282**
  - SEA § 10, **8:283**
  - SEA § 14
    - Proxy fraud, **8:284**
    - Tender offer fraud, **8:285**
  - SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:286**
  - SEA § 18, **8:287**
  - Securities Act, **8:263 et seq.**
  - Securities Exchange Act, **8:282 et seq.**
  - Sellers, **8:264**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:285**
- Penny Stock Sales** (this index)
- Piper case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:561**
- Plaintiff's knowledge
  - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge, **8:244**
  - Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
  - Limitation of actions, **8:251**
  - Misrepresentation, **8:246**
  - Nondisclosure, **8:245**
  - Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**
- Pleading** (this index)
- Price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

Price inflation, Proposition 1, **8:579**

Privity

Generally, **8:288 et seq.**

Accountants, liability of, **8:404**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Agreement, **8:314**

Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**

Aider-abettors, **8:327 et seq.**

Aiding and abetting generally, **8:292**

Attorneys, **8:409**

Benefit, **8:317**

Combination, **8:314**

Concerted action, **8:294**

Conspiracy generally, **8:292**

Conspirators, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**

Distinctions, **8:258**

Extent of liability, **8:318**

Implied liability, **8:288 et seq.**

Inducement, **8:295**

Injunction suits, **8:303**

Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**

Intent, **8:316**

Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**

Knowledge, **8:315**

Liability, extent of, **8:318**

Limits, **8:291**

Officers and directors, **8:413**

Participants generally, **8:292**

Participants in violations generally, **8:294**

Participation generally, **8:292**

Pleading

Generally, **8:319 et seq.**

Affirmative conduct, **8:321**

Aiding-abetting, **8:324**

Choice of parties, **8:320**

Conspiracy, **8:325**

No affirmative conduct, **8:322**

Participation, **8:323**

Special elements, **8:326**

Policies, **8:289**

Reasons, **8:289**

Rescission, availability of, **8:290**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

Privity—Cont'd

Rule 10b-5, **8:288 et seq.**

Suability, meaning of generally, **8:293**

Theory of action, **8:290**

Procedural aspects, **8:581**

Process, **11:40**

**Proof** (this index)

**Proportionate Liability** (this index)

Quantum of proof

Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:548**

Insider trading charges, **7:366**

Proportionate liability, **9:63**

Randall case, loss causation in

Supreme Court decision, **8:564**

Reduction in price, Proposition 2, **8:580**

Reliance

Generally, **8:484 et seq.**

Access to information, **8:499**

Anti-reliance devices, **8:511 et seq.**

Blue sky law, **8:488**

Buyer-seller requirement, **8:582**

Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**

Class actions

Generally, **8:515 et seq.**

Desirability of class actions, **8:526**

Utility of class actions, **8:526**

Common law, **8:487**

Concealment of fraud, **8:501**

Damages

Causation, **8:553**

Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:552**

Disclaimers, **8:514**

Due diligence, **8:506**

Expertise of plaintiff, **8:497**

Fiduciary relationships, **8:500**

Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)

Generally, **8:520 et seq.**

Background, **8:521**

Burden of proof, **8:548**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Reliance—Cont'd

Fraud on the market theory  
(FOMT)—Cont'd  
Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**  
Class certification, **8:550**  
Common law, **8:531**  
Damages measure, **8:552**  
Desirability of class actions, **8:526**  
Disclosure policy and, **8:533**  
Fairness, **8:527**  
Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:539 et seq.**  
Indirect reliance, **8:521**  
Market based price determinations, **8:525**  
Materiality as substitute for reliance, **8:524**  
Materiality of alleged misrepresentation, **8:550**  
Motion practice, **8:547**  
Nature of market, **8:536 et seq.**  
Novelty of theory, **8:529**  
Parties, **8:545**  
Pleading, **8:546**  
Policies, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**  
Presumption, treatment as, **8:521**  
Presumptions, **8:510**  
Price determinations, market based, **8:525**  
Procedural aspects of theory, **8:545 et seq.**  
Proof, **8:549, 8:550**  
Quantum of proof, **8:548**  
Reasons, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**  
Rebuttal of theory, **8:542 et seq.**  
Scope of theory, **8:522**  
Statutory bases, **8:532**  
Utility of class actions, **8:526**  
Fraud to enter the market theory (FEMT)  
Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:541**  
Nature of market, **8:538**  
Rebuttal of theory, **8:544**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Reliance—Cont'd

Generality of misrepresentation, **8:504**  
Indirect reliance, **8:521**  
Insider trading, **7:516**  
Integration clauses, **8:513**  
Justifiable, **8:496**  
Long-standing relationships, **8:498**  
Materiality  
Generally, **8:507**  
Distinctions, **8:519**  
Presumptive reliance and materiality of omissions, **8:509**  
Substitutions of theories, **8:524**  
No-reliance clauses, **8:512**  
Opportunity to detect fraud, **8:502**  
Plaintiff initiation, **8:503**  
Presumptions  
Generally, **8:508 et seq.**  
Fraud on the market, above  
Material omissions, **8:509**  
Ute presumption, **8:484**  
Proof of subjective reliance, **8:485**  
Registration fraud, **8:491**  
Rule 10b-5, **8:493 et seq.**  
SA § 11, **8:491**  
SA § 12(a)(2), **8:490**  
SA § 17(a), **8:492**  
SA generally, **8:489 et seq.**  
Sales fraud  
Generally, **8:489 et seq.**  
Express liability, **8:490**  
Implied liability, **8:492**  
Sophistication of plaintiff, **8:497**  
Specificity of misrepresentation, **8:504**  
State law, **8:488**  
Subjective reliance, **8:485**  
Transaction planning, **8:511 et seq.**  
Ute presumption, **8:484**  
**Remedies** (this index)  
Residue, **8:583**  
Restitution to defrauded investors, SEC role in  
In court, **10:3**  
Out of court, **10:2**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Sales fraud
  - Generally, **8:489 et seq.**
  - Aider-abettors, **8:269**
  - Brokers, **8:266**
  - Buyers, **8:265**
  - Conspirators, **8:270**
  - Control persons, **8:271**
  - Insiders, **8:267**
  - Others, **8:272**
  - Participants, **8:268**
  - Parties, **8:263 et seq.**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:274 et seq.**
  - Sellers, **8:264**
- Same side traders
  - Damages, **7:523**
  - Elements of action, **7:519**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
  - Suits by, **7:505**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act liability, **8:476**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:58 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge
    - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:178**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
    - Injunctions, **8:174**
    - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
    - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
    - Proof, **8:179**
    - SEC decisions, **8:175**
    - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
  - Bad faith
    - Generally, **8:210 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:219**
    - Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
    - Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**
    - Insufficiency, **8:215**
    - Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Bad faith—Cont'd
    - Proof, **8:220**
    - Sufficiency, **8:214**
  - Belief of defendant, **8:240**
  - Blue sky law
    - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:61**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**
- Broker-dealer fraud
  - Generally, **8:139 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
  - Pleading, **8:145**
  - Proof, **8:142**
- Burden of proof, **8:66**
- Common law
  - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:59**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:60**
- Constructive knowledge
  - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:189**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
  - Injunctions, **8:185**
  - Insufficiency, **8:188**
  - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
  - Proof, **8:190**
  - SEC decisions, **8:186**
  - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
- Defendant's knowledge and intent
  - Blue sky laws, **8:61**
  - Common law, **8:59**
- Defendant standards, **8:164**
- Definitions, **8:155 et seq.**
- Diligence, lack of
  - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:238**
  - Criminal cases, **8:236**
  - Injunctions, **8:234**
  - Insufficiency, **8:237**



**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Scienter—Cont'd

Diligence, lack of—Cont'd

Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**

Proof, **8:239**

SEC decisions, **8:235**

Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**

Intent

Generally, **8:191 et seq.**

Absence of intent, effect of,  
**8:200**

Burden of proof, **8:201**

Criminal cases, **8:197**

Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**

Injunctions, **8:195**

Insufficiency, **8:199**

Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**

Presence of intent, effect of,  
**8:200**

Proof, **8:202**

SEC decisions, **8:196**

Sufficiency, **8:198**

Limitation of actions, plaintiff's  
knowledge of fraud, **8:70**

Manipulation

Generally, **8:102 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:104**

Defendant's intent, **8:119**

Defendant's knowledge, **8:120**

Defendant's purpose

Generally, **8:103 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:104**

Defense of proper purpose,  
**8:118**

Direct evidence, **8:106**

Indirect evidence, **8:107**

Large blocks, **8:108**

Large proportion of trading,  
**8:109**

Painting the tape, **8:110**

Playoff of markets, **8:114**

Price action, **8:113**

Profit, **8:115**

Proof, **8:105**

Proper purpose as defense,  
**8:118**

Stimulating demand, **8:110,**  
**8:111**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Scienter—Cont'd

Manipulation—Cont'd

Defendant's purpose—Cont'd

Suppressing supply, **8:112**

Defendant's willfulness, **8:121**

Direct evidence, **8:106**

Indirect evidence of purpose,  
**8:107**

Large block trades, **8:108**

Large proportion of trading,  
**8:109**

Painting the tape, **8:110**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**

Playoff of markets, **8:114**

Pleading, **8:123**

Price action, **8:113**

Proof, **8:105**

Stimulating demand, **8:110**

Suppressing supply, **8:112**

Materiality, **8:44, 8:45**

Motive

Generally, **8:203 et seq.**

Absence, effect of, **8:207**

Burden of proof, **8:208**

Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**

Presence, effect of, **8:207**

Proof, **8:209**

Negligence

Generally, **8:229 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:238**

Criminal cases, **8:236**

Injunctions, **8:234**

Insufficiency, **8:237**

Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**

Proof, **8:239**

SEC decisions, **8:235**

Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**

Other elements, relation of scienter  
to, **8:163**

Plaintiff's knowledge

Blue sky laws, **8:62**

Common law, **8:60**

Plaintiff standards, **8:164**

Pleading

Particularity

Generally, **11:133 et seq.**

Bases for inferring, **11:135**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Pleading—Cont'd
    - Particularity—Cont'd
      - Circumstantial evidence of recklessness, **11:162**
      - Conscious behavior, **11:162**
      - Motive, **11:139**
      - Opportunity, **11:139**
      - Recklessness, **11:141, 11:162**
      - SEA § 21D(b), **11:134**
      - SEC, false reports to, **8:152**
- Proof
  - Actual knowledge, **8:179**
- Proxy fraud
  - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Intent, **8:129**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
  - Pleading, **8:131**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Recklessness
  - Generally, **8:221 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:227**
  - Insufficiency, **8:226**
  - Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**
  - Proof, **8:228**
  - Sufficiency, **8:225**
- Registration statement fraud, **8:72 et seq.**
- Reputation, **8:218**
- Rule 10b-5 fraud
  - Generally, **8:154 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge
    - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:178**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
    - Injunctions, **8:174**
    - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
    - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
    - Proof, **8:179**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5 fraud—Cont'd
    - Actual knowledge—Cont'd
      - SEC decisions, **8:175**
      - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
- Bad faith
  - Generally, **8:210 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:219**
  - Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
  - Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**
  - Insufficiency, **8:215**
  - Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**
  - Proof, **8:220**
  - Sufficiency, **8:214**
- Belief of defendant, **8:240**
- Breadth of rule, **8:160**
- Congressional intent, **8:158**
- Constructive knowledge
  - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:189**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
  - Injunctions, **8:185**
  - Insufficiency, **8:188**
  - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
  - Proof, **8:190**
  - SEC decisions, **8:186**
  - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
- Defendant standards, **8:164**
- Diligence, lack of
  - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
  - Injunctions, **8:234**
- Flexibility, need for, **8:162**
- Formulations, **8:155**
- Intent
  - Generally, **8:191 et seq.**
  - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Burden of proof, **8:201**
  - Criminal cases, **8:197**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
  - Insufficiency, **8:199**
  - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
  - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Scienter—Cont'd  
 Rule 10b-5 fraud—Cont'd  
   Intent—Cont'd  
     Proof, **8:202**  
     SEC decisions, **8:196**  
     Sufficiency, **8:198**  
   Motive  
     Generally, **8:203 et seq.**  
     Absence, effect of, **8:207**  
     Burden of proof, **8:208**  
     Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**  
     Presence, effect of, **8:207**  
     Proof, **8:209**  
   Negligence  
     Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
     Injunctions, **8:234**  
   Other elements, relation of scienter to, **8:163**  
   Plaintiff standards, **8:164**  
   Policy, **8:161**  
   Reasons, **8:161**  
   Recklessness, **8:221 et seq.**  
   Reputation, **8:218**  
   Scope of rule, **8:160**  
   Semantic confusion, **8:156, 8:157**  
   Unreasonable conduct  
     Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
     Injunctions, **8:234**  
   Willfulness, **8:241**  
 SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**  
 SEC, false reports to  
   Generally, **8:146**  
   Defendant's intent, **8:150**  
   Defendant's knowledge  
     Generally, **8:147 et seq.**  
     Burden of proof, **8:148**  
     Proof, **8:149**  
   Good faith, **8:150**  
   Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:151**  
   Pleading, **8:152**  
   Privity, **8:287**  
   Quantitative factors, **8:153**  
 Securities Exchange Act  
   Generally, **8:101 et seq.**  
   Rule 10b-5 fraud, **8:154 et seq.**  
   Section 9(a), **8:102 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Scienter—Cont'd  
 Securities Exchange Act—Cont'd  
   Section 10, **8:124**  
   Section 14, **8:125, 8:132 et seq.**  
   Section 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**  
   Section 18, **8:146 et seq.**  
 Stimulating demand, **8:110**  
 Tender offer fraud  
   Defendant's intent, **8:136**  
   Defendant's knowledge and belief  
     Generally, **8:133 et seq.**  
     Burden of proof, **8:134**  
     Proof, **8:135**  
   Intent, **8:136**  
   Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**  
   Pleading, **8:138**  
 Unreasonable conduct  
   Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
   Burden of proof, **8:238**  
   Criminal cases, **8:236**  
   Injunctions, **8:234**  
   Insufficiency, **8:237**  
   Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**  
   Proof, **8:239**  
   SEC decisions, **8:235**  
   Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**  
 Versions of scienter, relations among  
   Actual knowledge, **8:166**  
   Bad faith, **8:211**  
   Constructive knowledge, **8:181**  
   Diligence, lack of, **8:230**  
   Intent, **8:192**  
   Motive, **8:204**  
   Negligence, **8:230**  
   Purpose, **8:204**  
   Recklessness, **8:222**  
   Unreasonable conduct, **8:230**  
   Willfulness, **8:241**  
**Scienter** (this index)  
 2nd Circuit  
   Cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:572**  
   Cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:575**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- SEC role in restitution to defrauded investors
  - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:324**
  - In court, **10:3**
  - Out of court, **10:2**
- SEC, amicus curiae participation, **13:79**
- Service of process, **11:40**
- 7th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:576**
- SROs, amicus curiae participation, **13:293**
- Standing
  - Distinctions, **8:258**
  - Implied liability, **7:520**
  - Insider trading, **7:520**
- Strict liability, **8:243**
- Suitability** (this index)
- Supreme Court, loss causation, **8:556 to 8:570**
- 3rd Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:573**
- Ute Indians, **8:484, 8:559**
- Venue, **11:39**
- Virginia bankshares, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:566**
- Whistleblowers, employers, **22:16**

### PRIVATE CLASS ACTIONS

- ESG, **29:3**

### PRIVATE COMPANIES

- Whistleblowers, employees, **22:17**

### PRIVATE INFORMATION

- See **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)

### PRIVATE SECURITIES

#### LITIGATION REFORM ACT (PSLRA)

- Aider-abettor liability, **8:347**
- Congressional intent, **3:214**
- Discovery stays, **7:44**
- Feeder fund protection, **20:18**
- Forward looking statement defined, **7:25**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:86, 7:97**

### PRIVATE SECURITIES

#### LITIGATION REFORM ACT (PSLRA)—Cont'd

- Pleading** (this index)
- Predictions and projections
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Readily available cautionary statements
    - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
    - SEC filings, **7:33**
    - Timing, **7:32**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Proportionate Liability** (this index)
- Rule 10b-5 and, **3:1**
- Scope of Act, **7:24**
- SLUSA and, **3:214**

### PRIVATE TRANSACTIONS

- See **Direct-Personal Dealing** (this index)

### PRIVILEGES

- Generally, **13:31 et seq.**
- Attorney-client
  - Generally, **13:36**

**PRIVILEGES—Cont'd**

Attorney-client—Cont'd

Filip era

- Changes in policy, **13:54**
- Cooperation, **13:51, 13:52**
- Internal investigations, **13:52**
- Investor recovery, **13:55**
- Joint defense, **13:54**
- Relief from pressure to waive, **13:50**
- Sharing agreements, **13:54**
- Waiver request, **13:53**
- Work product, **13:54**

Waiver

- Generally, **13:37 et seq.**
- CFTC, **13:57**
- Constitutional analysis, **13:42**
- Constitutional violations, **13:43**
- District Court reconsideration (Stein IV), **13:46**
- Fee claims, **13:45**
- Filip Era, **13:50**
- Findings, **13:41**
- KPMG's actions, **13:40**
- Legal fee payment, **13:39**
- McNulty era, **13:48**
- Pressure not to pay legal fees, **13:58**
- Pressure to waive, **13:38**
- Proffers under threat of nonpayment of legal fees, **13:44**
- Relief from pressure to waive, **13:48 et seq.**
- SEC, **13:56**
- Second Circuit (Stein V), **13:47**
- Specter Bill, **13:49**
- US v. Stein, **13:39 et seq.**
- CFTC investigations, **13:223**
- Claiming, strategic considerations, **13:61 to 13:65**
- SEC investigations, **13:31 et seq.**
- Self incrimination
  - Generally, **13:32**
  - Waiver, **13:33**
- SRO investigations, **13:285**
- Waiver, **13:33**
- Work product, **13:59**

**PRIVITY**

Generally, **6:172 et seq., 8:258 et seq.**

See also **Private Actions** (this index)

- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Agreement, **8:314**
- Benefit, **8:317**
- Combination, **8:314**
- Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
- Extent of liability, **8:318**
- Implied liability, Rule 10b-5, **3:176**
- Intent, **8:316**
- Knowledge, **8:315**
- Liability, extent of, **8:318**
- Merger challenges, **6:172 et seq.**
- Participation, pleading, **8:323**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **6:175**
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
  - Implied liability, **3:176**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
- Rule 14a-9, **6:173**
- Rule 14c-6, **6:174**
- Suability, meaning of generally, **8:293**

## INDEX

### PROBABLE CAUSE

Insiders and inside trading, Raj  
Rajaratnam case, **21:15**

### PROCESS

Generally, **11:40**

### PROFITS

Madoff feeder funds, **20:19**  
Private actions, materiality, **8:43**

### PRO FORMA FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities based  
on, **3:170**

### PROJECTIONS

Generally, **7:5, 7:5 et seq.**  
See also **Forward Looking Infor-  
mation** (this index)  
Analyst projections, **7:9**  
Company projections, **7:8**  
Disclosure obligations  
Generally, **7:10 et seq.**  
Capital resources, **7:15**  
Liquidity, **7:14**  
With MD&A requirement  
Administrative enforcement,  
**7:13**  
Private actions, **7:17**  
Operation results, **7:16**  
Private actions on MD&A require-  
ments, **7:17**  
Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**  
Safe harbor  
Generally, **7:19 et seq.**  
Background, **7:20**  
Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**  
Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**  
PSLRA  
Generally, **7:23 et seq.**  
Actual knowledge prong,  
**7:36**  
Attacking cautionary state-  
ments, **7:29**  
Caution prong, **7:26**  
Corrections, **7:45**  
Definition of forward looking  
statement, **7:25**  
Discovery stays, **7:44**

### PROJECTIONS—Cont'd

Disclosure obligations—Cont'd  
Safe harbor—Cont'd  
PSLRA—Cont'd  
Drafting cautionary state-  
ments, **7:28**  
Eligible makers, **7:37**  
Exclusions, **7:40**  
Expandability, **7:41**  
Falsity, actual knowledge of,  
**7:36**  
Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**  
Later disclosures, **7:30**  
Motion practice, **7:43**  
Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**  
Oral statements referencing  
caution, **7:31, 7:39**  
Procedural aspects, **7:42**  
Prohibited uses, **7:40**  
Scope of Act, **7:24**  
Statements with cautions,  
**7:27**  
Update duty, **7:45**  
Readily available cautionary  
statements  
Generally disseminated, **7:34**  
SEC filings, **7:33**  
Timing, **7:32**  
SA Rule 175, **7:21**  
SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**  
SEC, traditional position, **7:18**  
With SEC encouragement, **7:12**  
Without SEC rule, **7:11**  
Forecasts distinguished, **7:5**  
Fraud, predictions and projections as,  
**7:6**  
Predictions distinguished, **7:5**  
Safe harbor  
Generally, **7:19 et seq.**  
Background, **7:20**  
Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**  
Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**  
Motion practice, **7:43**  
Oral statements referencing cau-  
tion, **7:31, 7:39**  
PSLRA  
Generally, **7:23 et seq.**  
Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**

**PROJECTIONS—Cont'd**

- Safe harbor—Cont'd
  - PSLRA—Cont'd
    - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
    - Caution prong, **7:26**
    - Corrections, **7:45**
    - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
    - Discovery stays, **7:44**
    - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
    - Eligible makers, **7:37**
    - Exclusions, **7:40**
    - Expandability, **7:41**
    - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
    - Later disclosures, **7:30**
    - Motion practice, **7:43**
    - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
    - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
    - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
    - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
    - Scope of Act, **7:24**
    - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
    - Update duty, **7:45**
  - Readily available cautionary statements
    - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
    - SEC filings, **7:33**
    - Timing, **7:32**
  - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
  - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**

**PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**PROOF**

- Bad faith, scienter, **8:220**
- Broker-dealer fraud
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**
  - Scienter, **8:142**
- Churning, **14:132**
- Class certification, materiality of alleged misrepresentation, **8:550**
- Constructive knowledge, **8:190**

**PROOF—Cont'd**

- Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**
- Diligence, lack of, **8:239**
- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:549, 8:550**
- Implied liability
  - Generally, **8:256**
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:177**
- Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)
  - Intent, **8:202**
  - Motive, **8:209**
  - Negligence, **8:239**
  - Proportionate liability, **9:64**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:128**
  - Recklessness, **8:228**
  - Reliance, **8:485**
  - Retaliatory intent under Sarbanes-Oxley Act, UBS Securities decision, **22:24**
- Rule 10b-5 implied liability, **3:177**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:67**
  - Actual knowledge, **8:179**
  - Bad faith, **8:220**
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:142**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:190**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**
  - Diligence, lack of, **8:239**
  - Intent, **8:202**
  - Motive, **8:209**
  - Negligence, **8:239**
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **8:128**
  - Recklessness, **8:228**
  - SEC, false reports to, **8:149**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:135**
  - Unreasonable conduct, **8:239**
- SEC, false reports to, **8:149**
- Securities Act
  - Scienter, **8:67**
  - Section 11, **8:78**
  - Section 17(a), **8:85**
- Subjective reliance, **8:485**
- Tender offer fraud, **8:135**
- Unreasonable conduct, **8:239**



## INDEX

### PROPORTIONATE LIABILITY

- Generally, **9:47 et seq., 9:57**
- See also **Joint and Several Liability** (this index)
- Additions to, **9:54**
- Apportionment determinations, **9:61**
- Background, **9:48**
- Burden of proof, **9:63**
- Contribution and, **9:69**
- Control persons, **9:53**
- Damage limitations, effect of, **9:55**
- Fair share liability, **9:52**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Joint and several liability compared, **9:47**
- Knowing violators
  - Generally, **9:51**
  - Determinations, **9:60**
- Legislative history, **9:48**
- Measure of liability, **9:49 et seq.**
- Motion practice, **9:59**
- Nature of liability, **9:49 et seq.**
- Nondisclosures to jury, **9:62**
- Nonknowing violators, **9:52**
- Parties, **9:57**
- Pleadings, **9:58**
- Private Securities Litigation Reform Act, **9:48**
- Procedural aspects, **9:56 et seq.**
- Proof, **9:64**
- Quantum of proof, **9:63**
- Scope of liability, **9:50**
- Securities Act provisions, **9:48**
- Securities Exchange Act provisions, **9:48**
- Settlement, effect of, **9:65**

### PROSPECTUS DISCLOSURE

- Mutual fund violations, misleading prospectuses, **17:7**

### PROSPECTUS FRAUD

- Contextual definitions, **3:43**
- Disclosure by, **7:286**
- Issuer disclosure by, **7:286**
- Limitation of actions, **11:47 et seq.**
- Meanings of, **3:41 et seq.**
- Penny Stock Sales** (this index)

### PROSPECTUS FRAUD—Cont'd

- Statutory definition, **3:42**
- Suitability** (this index)

### PROXIMATE CAUSE

- See also **Causation** (this index)
- Aider-abettor liability, substantial assistance, **8:360**
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:92**

### PROXY FRAUD

- Generally, **6:198 et seq.**
- See also **Direct-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
- Antifraud provisions
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:3**
- Causation
  - Generally, **6:179 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:181**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:179**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:180**
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **6:183 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:185**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:183**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:184**
- Jurisdictional means
  - Generally, **6:188 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:190**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**
- Materiality standard
  - Generally, **6:165 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:168**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:166**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:167**
- Mergers
  - Generally, **6:158 et seq.**
  - Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**
- Causation
  - Generally, **6:179 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:181**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:179**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:180**
- Comparative language, **6:164**
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **6:183 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:185**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:183**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:184**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Antifraud provisions—Cont'd

Mergers—Cont'd

Jurisdictional means

Generally, **6:188 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:190**

Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**

Materiality standard

Generally, **6:165 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:168**

Rule 14a-9, **6:166**

Rule 14c-6, **6:167**

Operation, areas of, **6:163**

Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**

Privity

Generally, **6:172 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:175**

Rule 14a-9, **6:173**

Rule 14c-6, **6:174**

Reliance

Generally, **6:176 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:178**

Rule 14a-9, **6:176**

Rule 14c-6, **6:177**

Rule 10b-5, relation of proxy  
rules to, **6:159 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5 private actions,  
**6:162**

Rule 14a-9 private actions,  
**6:160**

Rule 14c-6 private actions,  
**6:161**

Scienter standard

Generally, **6:169 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

SEA § 14(e), **6:186**

Securities Act, **6:187**

State law

Generally, **6:191 et seq.**

Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**

Delaware law, **6:196**

Effect of merger or dissolu-  
tion, **6:194**

Equitable approach, **6:197**

Standing approach, **6:196**

Violations covered, **6:164**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Antifraud provisions—Cont'd

Privity

Generally, **6:172 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:175**

Rule 14a-9, **6:173**

Rule 14c-6, **6:174**

Proxy rules, **6:24**

Reliance

Generally, **6:176 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:178**

Rule 14a-9, **6:176**

Rule 14c-6, **6:177**

Rule 10b-5

Causation, **6:181**

Materiality standard, **6:168**

Privity, **6:175**

Proxy rules, relation to, **6:159 et  
seq.**

Reliance, **6:178**

Scienter standard, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9

Causation, **6:179**

Materiality standard, **6:166**

Privity, **6:173**

Reliance, **6:176**

Scienter standard, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6

Causation, **6:180**

Materiality standard, **6:167**

Privity, **6:174**

Reliance, **6:177**

Scienter standard, **6:170**

Scienter standard

Generally, **6:169 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

SEA § 14(e), **6:186**

Securities Act, **6:187**

State law

Generally, **6:191 et seq.**

Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**

Delaware law, **6:196**

Effect of merger or dissolution,  
**6:194**

Equitable approach, **6:197**

Standing approach, **6:196**

## INDEX

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

#### Antifraud provisions—Cont'd

##### Tender offers

Generally, **6:22 et seq.**

Connection, **6:26**

Jurisdictional means, **6:27**

Opposition, applicability to,  
**6:23**

Proxy rules, **6:24**

SEA § 14(e), **6:24**

Conflict of interest transactions,  
**5:108**

Definitions, **6:208, 6:209**

Direct-personal dealing, **5:108**

#### Disclosures

Generally, **6:212 et seq., 6:267**

##### Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Aggregate materiality, **6:253**

Annual reports, **6:242**

Application of funds, **6:260**

##### Assets

Generally, **6:261 et seq.**

Existence of, **6:262**

Reasons, **6:273**

Value of assets, below

Balance, **6:229**

Buried facts, **6:232**

Cash flow, **6:260**

Clarity, **6:225**

Comparative tables, **6:219**

Consistency, **6:228**

Conspicuity. Prominence, below

Context, **6:235**

Corrections, **6:302**

Generally, **6:290 et seq.**

See also Supplementary communications, below

Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**

Blue sky laws, **6:292**

Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**

Common law, **6:291**

False reports to SEC, **6:313**

Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

#### Disclosures—Cont'd

##### Corrections, **6:302**—Cont'd

How long correction is necessary

Rule 14a-9, **6:304**

Rule 14c-6, **6:308**

SA § 11, **6:296**

How long is correction necessary

Generally, **6:323**

Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:325**

Direct-personal transactions,  
**6:324**

Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**

How must correction be made

Rule 10b-5, **6:328**

Rule 14a-9, **6:306**

Rule 14c-6, **6:310**

SA § 11, **6:298**

Market manipulation, **6:300**

Proxy fraud, **6:302**

Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5 requirements

Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**

How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**

How must correction be made, **6:328**

What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**

What must be corrected,  
**6:327**

Who entitled to correction,  
**6:328**

Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**

Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**

SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**

SA § 12(2), **6:293**

SA § 17(a), **6:299**

##### Sales fraud

Express liability, **6:293**

Implied liability, **6:299**

SEA § 9(a), **6:300**

SEA § 10, **6:301**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Disclosures—Cont'd  
 Corrections, **6:302—Cont'd**  
     SEA § 14, **6:302**  
     State law, **6:292**  
     Tender offer fraud, **6:311**  
     What makes correction necessary  
         Generally, **6:319**  
         Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:321**  
         Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**  
         Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:303**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:307**  
         SA § 11, **6:295**  
     What must be corrected  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:327**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:305**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:309**  
         SA § 11, **6:297**  
     Who entitled to correction  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
         SA § 11, **6:298**  
 Cross references, **6:233**  
 Detail, **6:234**  
 Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**  
 Earnings  
     Generally, **6:254**  
     Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**  
     Interim, **6:259**  
     Misrepresentations, **6:255**  
     Nondisclosure of, **6:257**  
     Predictions, **6:255**  
 Form and substance, **6:235**  
 Interim earnings, **6:259**  
 Interpretation, **6:236**  
 Level, **6:227**  
 Locus, **6:214 et seq.**  
 Materiality  
     Generally, **6:248 et seq.**  
     Aggregate, **6:253**  
     Might, use of term, **6:249**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Disclosures—Cont'd  
 Materiality—Cont'd  
     Practical problems, **6:251**  
     Probably would, use of term, **6:250**  
     Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**  
     Would, use of term, **6:249**  
 Misrepresentations  
     Earnings, **6:255**  
     Value of assets  
         Generally, **6:270**  
         Defenses, **6:271**  
         Precautions, **6:272**  
 Numerical information, **6:237**  
 Opposition communications, **6:247**  
 Organization, **6:226**  
 Overall effect, **6:238**  
 Predictions, earning, **6:255**  
 Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**  
 Prominence  
     Generally, **6:230 et seq.**  
     Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**  
     Similar emphasis, **6:231**  
 Repetition, **6:233**  
 Risk  
     Generally, **6:275 et seq.**  
     CFTC requirements, **6:289**  
     Context, **6:275**  
     Court cases, **6:281**  
     Day trading, **6:284**  
     Extended hour trading, **6:285**  
     Margin trading, **6:286**  
     NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**  
     Plain English requirements, **6:278**  
     Safe harbor, **6:282**  
     SA filings, **6:279**  
     SEA filings, **6:280**  
     Short selling, **6:287**  
     Specific requirements, **6:277**  
     Uninsured products, **6:288**  
 Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**  
 SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**  
 Scattered facts, **6:232**  
 SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**

## INDEX

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

#### Disclosures—Cont'd

SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**

Sources of funds, **6:260**

#### Sources of requirements

Generally, **6:220 et seq.**

Antifraud provisions, **6:222**

Specific items, **6:221**

Timing, **6:223**

Style, **6:224 et seq.**

#### Supplementary communications

Generally, **6:239 et seq.**

See also Corrections, above

#### Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Annual reports, **6:242**

Cover letters, **6:243**

Followup solicitations, **6:244**

Generally available information,  
**6:246**

Other communications, **6:245**

Transmittal letters, **6:243**

Timing requirements, **6:223**

#### Value of assets

Generally, **6:263 et seq.**

Firm offers, **6:265**

Hard data, **6:264**

#### Misrepresentation

Defenses, **6:271**

Precautions, **6:272**

Misrepresentations, generally,  
**6:270**

#### Modified view

Disposition plans, **6:266**

Hard data, **6:264**

Other situations, **6:268**

Policies, **6:269**

Reasons, **6:269**

Replacement costs, **6:267**

Traditional view, **6:263**

Disclosures of nonpublic information  
through, **7:287**

Federal laws generally, **6:150**

Joint and several liability, **9:29**

Materiality, private actions, **8:56**

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

#### Mergers

Generally, **6:146 et seq., 6:198 et  
seq.**

See also **Mergers** (this index)

#### Disclosures

Generally, **6:212 et seq., 6:267**

#### Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Aggregate materiality, **6:253**

Annual reports, **6:242**

Application of funds, **6:260**

#### Assets

Generally, **6:261 et seq.**

Existence of, **6:262**

Reasons, **6:273**

Balance, **6:229**

Buried facts, **6:232**

Cash flow, **6:260**

Clarity, **6:225**

Comparative tables, **6:219**

Consistency, **6:228**

Conspicuity. Prominence, below

Context, **6:235**

Cross references, **6:233**

Detail, **6:234**

Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**

#### Earnings

Generally, **6:254**

Inherently misleading state-  
ments, **6:256**

Interim, **6:259**

Misrepresentations, **6:255**

Nondisclosure of, **6:257**

Predictions, **6:255**

Form and substance, **6:235**

Interim earnings, **6:259**

Interpretation, **6:236**

Level, **6:227**

Locus, **6:214 et seq.**

#### Materiality

Generally, **6:248 et seq.**

Aggregate, **6:253**

Might, use of term, **6:249**

Practical problems, **6:251**

Probably would, use of term,  
**6:250**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Materiality—Cont'd
    - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
    - Would, use of term, **6:249**
- Misrepresentations
  - Earnings, **6:255**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
- Numerical information, **6:237**
- Opposition communications, **6:247**
- Organization, **6:226**
- Overall effect, **6:238**
- Predictions, earning, **6:255**
- Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**
- Prominence
  - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
  - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
  - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
- Repetition, **6:233**
- Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**
- SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**
- Scattered facts, **6:232**
- SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**
- SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**
- Sources of funds, **6:260**
- Sources of requirements
  - Generally, **6:220 et seq.**
  - Antifraud provisions, **6:222**
  - Specific items, **6:221**
  - Timing, **6:223**
- Style, **6:224 et seq.**
- Supplementary communications
  - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
  - Advance letters
    - Proxy rules, **6:240**
    - Registration under SA, **6:241**
  - Annual reports, **6:242**
  - Cover letters, **6:243**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Supplementary communications—Cont'd
    - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
    - Generally available information, **6:246**
    - Other communications, **6:245**
    - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
  - Timing requirements, **6:223**
- Value of assets
  - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - Firm offers, **6:265**
  - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**
- Scope of regulations
  - Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
  - Annual reports, **6:211**
  - Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
  - Proxy defined, **6:208**
  - Solicitation defined, **6:209**
- Securities covered
  - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
  - Insurance companies
    - Generally, **6:201**
    - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
    - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
    - McCarran Act, **6:203**
  - Investment companies, **6:205**
  - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
- Nonmerger solicitations, **6:274**
- Nonpublic information disclosures through, **7:287**

## INDEX

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

- Private actions
  - Materiality, **8:56**
  - Merger challenges, **6:160 et seq.**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Intent, **8:129**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
  - Pleading, **8:131**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Privity, **8:284**
- Risk disclosures. Disclosures, above
- Rule 10b-5, relation of proxy rules to, **6:159 et seq.**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Intent, **8:129**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
  - Pleading, **8:131**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Scope of regulations
  - Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
  - Annual reports, **6:211**
  - Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
  - Proxy defined, **6:208**
  - Solicitation defined, **6:209**
- SEA § 14(e)
  - Generally, **6:186**
  - Proxy rules, relation to, **6:24**
- SEC rules, Congressional intent, **6:155**
- Securities covered
  - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
- Insurance companies
  - Generally, **6:201**
  - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
  - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
  - McCarran Act, **6:203**
  - Investment companies, **6:205**
  - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
- Tender Offer Fraud (this index)

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

- Types of direct-impersonal dealings, **6:1**
- ### PUBLIC ACCESS
- SEC investigations, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:149**
- ### PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM
- Whistleblower bounty program, original information from employees, **22:10**
- ### PUBLIC COMPANIES
- Whistleblowers, employees, **22:17**
- ### PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD (PCAOB)
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP violations, **7:61**
- ### PUBLIC INFORMATION
- See **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)
- ### PUBLIC PENSION FUNDS
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**
- ### PUBLIC SALES
- See also **Direct-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
  - Disclosure, **6:12**
  - Interrelations of fraud rules, **3:40**
  - Types of direct-impersonal dealings, **6:1**
- ### PUBLIC UTILITY HOLDING COMPANIES
- Proxy rules, applicability to, **6:206**
- ### PUFFERY
- Materiality factors, **8:35**
- ### "PUMP-AND-DUMP" SCHEMES
- SEC actions against attorneys, **8:443**
- ### PUNITIVE DAMAGES
- Generally, **9:12**
  - Arbitration
    - Generally, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**
    - Broker-dealer liability, **14:111**
  - Broker-dealer liability
    - Generally, **14:106 et seq., 15:74**



**PUNITIVE DAMAGES—Cont'd**

Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd  
 Arbitration, **14:111**  
 Federal securities law, **14:106**  
 State law, **14:107 et seq.**  
 State law, **14:107 et seq.**

**PURPOSE**

Generally, **8:203**  
 Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**  
**Intent** (this index)  
**Knowledge** (this index)  
 Manipulation, defendant's purpose  
   Generally, **8:103 et seq.**  
   Burden of proof, **8:104**  
   Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**  
   Direct evidence, **8:106**  
   Indirect evidence, **8:107**  
   Large blocks, **8:108**  
   Large proportion of trading, **8:109**  
   Painting the tape, **8:110**  
   Playoff of markets, **8:114**  
   Price action, **8:113**  
   Profit, **8:115**  
   Proof, **8:105**  
   Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**  
   Stimulating demand, **8:110, 8:111**  
   Suppressing supply, **8:112**  
**Motive** (this index)  
 Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**  
**Scienter** (this index)  
 Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:204**

**RANDALL CASE**

Private actions, loss causation in  
 Supreme Court decision, **8:564**

**REASONABLE INVESTIGATION  
 DEFENSE**

SA § 11  
 Generally, **14:5**  
 Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**  
 SEC Rule 176, **14:8**

**REASONABLE INVESTOR  
 STANDARD**

Misrepresentation claims,  
 consideration of, **7:51**

**REASONABLENESS OF  
 CONDUCT**

See **Unreasonable Conduct** (this  
 index)

**RECKLESSNESS**

Generally, **8:221 et seq., 11:141**  
 Broker-dealer liability, **14:83 et seq.**  
 Burden of proof, **8:227**  
 Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**  
 Court cases, **11:141 et seq., 11:162 et  
 seq., 14:83 et seq.**  
 Insufficiency, **8:226**  
 Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**  
 Pleading  
   Generally, **11:141**  
   Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**  
 Proof, **8:228**  
 Securities Litigation Uniform Stan-  
 dards Act (SLUSA), **3:214**  
 Sufficiency, **8:225**  
 Versions of scienter, relations among,  
**8:222**

**RECORDS AND RECORD  
 KEEPING**

CFTC inspection of records, **13:195**  
 Parking rule violations, **7:149**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act actions, **3:171**

**REDEMPTIONS**

Issuer tender offers, **6:145**  
 Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:3,  
 20:6**

**RED FLAGS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5, 20:17**

**REDUCTION IN PRICE**

Private actions, correction and price  
 drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

**REFERENCES**

Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases,  
**11:28**

**REFORM ACT**

See **Private Securities Litigation  
 Reform Act** (this index)

## INDEX

### REGISTRATION AS INVESTMENT ADVISER

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES

Crowdfunding, **14:216**

Fraud rules applicable to registered offerings generally, **3:39, 3:45**

Limitation of actions, **11:47 et seq.**

Mutual funds, **3:191**

Nationally traded securities, **3:190**

NSMIA preemption

Generally, **3:187 et seq.**

Buyer characteristics, **3:193**

Exemptions, **3:195 et seq.**

Government enforcement, **3:199**

Mutual funds, **3:191**

Nationally traded securities, **3:190**

Private rights, effects on, **3:198**

Qualified purchasers, **3:192**

Regulation preemption, **3:188**

Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**

Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**

Securities characteristics, **3:194**

Securities covered, **3:189 et seq.**

Securities exemptions, **3:196**

Transaction exemptions, **3:195**

Regulation FD disclosures, **7:547**

Regulation preemption, NSMIA, **3:188**

### REGULATION A

Crowdfunding, application of law, **14:215**

### REGULATION D

Crowdfunding, application of law, **14:215**

### REGULATION G

Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP violations, **7:73**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities, **3:170**

### REGULATION S-P

Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**

### RELEASE OF INFORMATION

See also **Disclosure** (this index)

Dividend actions, materiality, **7:247**

### RELEASE OF INFORMATION

#### —Cont'd

Inside information, timely disclosure

Generally, **7:238 et seq.**

Acquisition information

Generally, **7:248 et seq.**

Agreements

Disclosure not required, **7:261**

Disclosure required, **7:260**

Company, trading by, **7:256**

Definitions, **7:250**

Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**

Leaks, **7:255**

Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**

Preliminary negotiations

Misleading statements, **7:253**

No statement made, **7:252**

Other situations, **7:254**

Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**

Rumors, **7:255**

Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**

Target response to tender offers, **7:258**

When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**

When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**

Business judgment considerations, **7:241**

Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**

Delays, justifications for, **7:240**

Dividend actions

Evolving information, **7:245**

Materiality, **7:247**

When disclosure required, **7:246**

Justification for delay, **7:240**

Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**

Ripeness and timing, **7:243**

Tender offers

Generally, **7:267**

Materiality, **7:270**

**RELEASE OF INFORMATION**

—**Cont'd**

- Inside information, timely disclosure  
—**Cont'd**
- Tender offers—**Cont'd**
  - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
  - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Ripeness and timely disclosure, **7:243**

**RELEVANCY**

- SEC investigations, use of wiretap, **13:152**

**RELIANCE**

- Generally, **6:176 et seq., 8:484 et seq.**
- Access to information, **8:499**
- Administrative enforcement actions, **10:1**
- Anti-reliance devices, **8:511 et seq.**
- Blue sky law, **8:488**
- Broker-dealer liability
  - Generally, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
- Buyer-seller requirement, **8:582**
- Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
- Class actions
  - Desirability of class actions, **8:526**
  - Utility of class actions, **8:526**
- Common law, **8:487**
- Concealment of fraud, **8:501**
- Damages
  - Causation, **8:553**
  - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:552**
- Disclaimers, **8:514**
- Due diligence, **8:506**
- Expertise of plaintiff, **8:497**
- Fiduciary relationships, **8:500**
- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - Background, **8:521**
  - Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
  - Common law, **8:531**
  - Damages measure, **8:552**

**RELIANCE—Cont'd**

- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)
  - Cont'd**
  - Desirability of class actions, **8:526**
  - Disclosure policy and, **8:533**
  - Fairness, **8:527**
  - Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:539 et seq.**
  - Indirect reliance, **8:521**
  - Market based price determinations, **8:525**
  - Materiality as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
  - Nature of market, **8:536 et seq.**
  - Novelty of theory, **8:529**
  - Parties, **8:545**
  - Policies, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**
  - Presumptions, **8:510**
    - Treatment as, **8:521**
  - Price determinations, market based, **8:525**
  - Procedural aspects of theory, **8:545 et seq.**
  - Reasons, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**
  - Rebuttal of theory, **8:542 et seq.**
  - Scope of theory, **8:522**
  - Statutory bases, **8:532**
  - Utility of class actions, **8:526**
- Fraud to enter the market theory (FEMT)
  - Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:541**
  - Nature of market, **8:538**
  - Rebuttal of theory, **8:544**
- Generality of misrepresentation, **8:504**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:76 to 7:78, 7:80**
- Indirect reliance, **8:521**
- Integration clauses, **8:513**
- Justifiable
  - Generally, **14:89**
  - Rule 10b-5, **8:496**
- Long-standing relationships, **8:498**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **8:507**
  - Distinctions, **8:519**

## INDEX

### RELIANCE—Cont'd

#### Materiality—Cont'd

Presumptive reliance and materiality of omissions, **8:509**

Substitutions of theories, **8:524**

Merger challenges, **6:176 et seq.**

No-reliance clauses, **8:512**

Opportunity to detect fraud, **8:502**

Overview, **8:486**

Plaintiff initiation, **8:503**

#### Presumptions

Generally, **8:508 et seq.**

Fraud on the market, **8:510**

Material omissions, **8:509**

Ute presumption, **8:484**

Proof, subjective reliance, **8:485**

Registration fraud, **8:491**

SA § 11, **8:491**

SA § 12(a)(2), **8:490**

SA § 17(a), **8:492**

SA generally, **8:489 et seq.**

Sales fraud, **8:489 et seq.**

Sophistication of plaintiff, **8:497**

Specificity of misrepresentation, **8:504**

State law, **8:488**

Subjective reliance, **8:485**

Transaction planning, **8:511 et seq.**

Ute presumption, **8:484**

### RELIEF IN PRIVATE ACTIONS

See **Remedies** (this index)

### REMEDIES

Generally, **9:1 et seq.**

#### Ancillary relief

Generally, **9:17**

Insider trading, **7:419, 7:437, 7:490**

Attorneys' fees, **9:18**

**Contribution** (this index)

**Damages** (this index)

**Disgorgement** (this index)

#### Fraud on the market

Generally, **8:520 et seq.**

See also **Reliance** (this index)

Implied liability, **3:178**

Indemnification, **9:76**

**Injunctions** (this index)

### REMEDIES—Cont'd

#### Insider trading charges

Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**

Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq., 7:465**

Insurance, **9:76**

Interest, prejudgment, **9:16**

Interpretation, flexibility to achieve remedial purpose

Contraction era, **3:88**

Expansion era, **3:66**

**Joint and Several Liability** (this index)

Multiple recoveries, **9:15**

#### Penalty actions

Generally, **7:438 et seq.**

See also **Civil Penalties** (this index)

Prejudgment interest, **9:16**

**Proportionate Liability** (this index)

#### Reliance

Generally, **8:484 et seq.**

See also **Reliance** (this index)

**Rescission** (this index)

**Restitution** (this index)

Rule 10b-5 implied liability, **3:178**

Sanctions. See **Administrative Enforcement** (this index)

### REMOTENESS

Indirect-impersonal dealing, curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:76**

### REPORTING

See also **Securities and Exchange Commission** (this index)

Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**

**Insider and Insider Trading** (this index)

Whistleblowers, preservation of employee's right to report, **22:33**

### REPUTATION

Scienter, aspects of, **8:218**

### RESCISSION

#### Broker-dealer liability

Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**

Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**

**RESCISSION—Cont'd**

Chasins measure, **14:97**  
 Damages, rescissional, **14:51**  
 Lost profits, **14:101**  
 Nye measure, **14:101**  
 Privity, **8:290**  
 Rolf measure, **14:100**

**RESIDENTIAL**

**MORTGAGE-BACKED  
 SECURITIES**

Coordinated investigations, investor  
 litigation against creators,  
**13:335**

**RESIDENTIAL MORTGAGES  
 FAILURES**

Coordinated investigations following  
 subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:332**

**RESIDUE**

Private actions, **8:583**

**RESPONDEAT SUPERIOR**

See also **Control Person Liability**  
 (this index)  
 Insider trading, **7:450**

**RESTITUTION**

Broker-dealer liability, **14:104**  
 Criminal prosecutions, **7:465**  
 Insiders, **7:465**  
 Joint and several liability, **9:44**

**RETALIATORY INTENT**

UBS Securities decision, Sarbanes-  
 Oxley Act, **22:24**

**RETIREMENT ACCOUNTS**

Suitability and fiduciary duty, **14:206**

**RETIREMENT FUNDS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

**RETROACTIVE PRICING OF  
 STOCK OPTION GRANTS**

Generally, **18:1 et seq.**  
 See also **Backdating of Stock  
 Options** (this index)

**REVIEW**

SEC investigations, use of wiretap in  
 enforcement, **13:147**

**REWARD MODEL**

Crowdfunding, **14:210**

**RICO VIOLATIONS**

Arbitration of RICO claims, **15:66**  
 Insider trading violations, **7:414,**  
**7:464**  
 Limitation of actions, **11:103**

**RIGHT TO COUNSEL**

See **Attorneys** (this index)

**RISK DISCLOSURES**

Generally, **6:275 et seq.**  
 See also **Disclosure** (this index)

**RISK MANAGEMENT**

Final rule, cybersecurity, **26:9**

**RISK MITIGATION**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
 (FCPA), mergers and acquisi-  
 tions, **19:15**

**SA**

See **Securities Act** (this index)

**SAFECAST GEIGER COUNTER**

Crowdfunding, **14:211**

**SALE-LEASEBACKS FOR FIXED  
 RETURNS**

SEC v. Edwards case, **5:31**

**SALES OF ASSETS**

See **Mergers** (this index)

**SALES PRACTICES**

Feeder funds in Madoff Ponzi  
 scheme, **20:2, 20:16**  
**Mutual Fund Violations** (this index)

**SAME SIDE TRADERS**

Generally, **7:519**  
 Damages, **7:523**  
 Definition, **7:495**

**SANCTIONS**

See also **Administrative Enforce-  
 ment** (this index)  
**Arbitration** (this index)  
 Collateral bars against individuals  
 Generally, **13:87**  
 Corporate office orders, **13:88**

## INDEX

### **SANCTIONS—Cont'd**

- Collateral bars against individuals  
—Cont'd
- Injunctions including, **13:117**
- Criminal Enforcement** (this index)
- SEC, **13:81**

### **SARBANES-OXLEY ACT**

- Generally, **3:156 et seq.**
- Analysts' certifications, IPA based on, **3:168**
- Attorneys
- Generally, **8:424 et seq.**
- Follow-up reporting obligations, **8:427**
- Implied private actions against, **3:165**
- Reporting obligations, **8:426**
- SEC, reporting to, **8:432 et seq.**
- SEC actions against
- Generally, **8:436 et seq.**
- Auditors, furnishing false information to, **8:440**
- Financial or accounting fraud, **8:440**
- Form 8-K, **8:439**
- Form 10, **8:439**
- Form 10-K, **8:439**
- Form 10-Q, **8:439**
- Form 13D, **8:439**
- Form ADV, **8:439**
- Form BD, **8:439**
- Forms 12b-25, **8:445**
- Manipulating stock option exercise dates, **8:444**
- Offering circulars, **8:439**
- Participating in preparation and filing of false and misleading forms, **8:439**
- "PIPE" schemes, **8:443**
- Prospectuses, **8:439**
- Proxy statements, **8:439**
- "Pump-and-dump" schemes, **8:443**
- Reflections, **8:448**
- Trading on inside information, **8:447**
- Unethical and obstructive professional conduct, **8:446**

### **SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Attorneys—Cont'd
- SEC actions against—Cont'd
- Unregistered distributions of securities, activities in connection with, **8:441**
- Audit committee financial experts, **3:166**
- Audit committee standards
- Generally, **8:450 et seq.**
- Administrative implementation, **8:451**
- Advisers, **8:455**
- Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**
- Complaint procedures, **8:454**
- Enforcement, **8:458**
- Exemptions, **8:457**
- Financial experts, **8:459**
- Funding, **8:456**
- Independence requirements, **8:452**
- Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**
- Audit records, actions based on, **3:171**
- Backdating of stock options, violations of federal securities laws, **18:2, 18:3**
- Blackout periods
- Generally, **8:475**
- Trading prohibitions, **8:472**
- Certification, **8:462**
- Director and officer regulation
- Generally, **8:461 et seq.**
- Acquisition method, **8:474**
- Backdating of stock options, **18:2, 18:3**
- Bar from office, **8:482**
- Blackout periods, **8:475**
- Blackout trading prohibitions, **8:472**
- Certification, **8:462**
- Disclosure controls, **8:466**
- Enforcement, **8:476**
- Ethics codes, **8:483**
- Evaluations, **8:468**
- Exemptions, **8:479**
- Fair presentation, **8:465**
- Forfeiture on accounting restatement, **8:480**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont’d**

- Director and officer regulation
  - Cont’d
  - Inside trading reports, **8:471**
  - Internal controls, **8:466**
  - Liability, **8:476**
  - Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
  - Non-financial information, **8:467**
  - Notice, **8:478**
  - Option grant reporting, **18:1**
  - Profit measure, **8:477**
  - Regulation BTR, **8:473**
  - Response to evidence of violations, **8:470**
  - SEC implementation, **8:464, 8:473**
  - Section 302 legislation, **8:463**
  - Section 906, **8:469**
- Disclosure controls, **8:466**
- Enforcement, **8:476**
- Ethics codes, **8:483**
- Exemptions, **8:479**
- Financial experts, **3:166, 8:459**
- Financial report certifications, **3:169**
- History of enactment, **3:159**
- Implied private actions (IPA)
  - Generally, **3:156 et seq.**
  - Analysts’ certifications, actions based on, **3:168**
  - Attorneys, implied private actions against, **3:165**
  - Audit committee financial experts, **3:166**
  - Audit records, actions based on, **3:171**
  - Express actions negating, **3:162**
  - Financial report certifications, **3:169**
  - History of enactment, **3:159**
  - Legislative intent, **3:158**
  - Limitation of actions, **3:161**
  - Off-balance sheet transactions, **3:167**
  - Officers’ certifications of financial reports, **3:169**
  - Overview, **3:157**
  - Pro forma financial information, liabilities based on, **3:170**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont’d**

- Implied private actions (IPA)
  - Cont’d
  - Provisions adversely impacting, **3:163**
  - Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**
  - Rejection of, **3:161**
  - SEC rules and releases, **3:164 et seq.**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, restrictions on pro forma or non-GAAP financial information, **7:72**
- Inside general counsel, backdating of stock options, **18:11**
- Inside trading reports, **8:471**
- Internal controls, **8:466**
- Legislative intent, **3:158**
- Liability, **8:476**
- Limitation of actions
  - Generally, **3:161, 11:87 et seq.**
  - Actual notice, **11:93**
  - Retroactivity, **11:94**
  - Securities Act express actions, **11:90**
  - Securities Exchange Act express actions, **11:91**
  - Tolling, **11:93**
- Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
- Notice, **8:478**
- Off-balance sheet transactions, **3:167**
- Officers’ certifications of financial reports, **3:169**
- Pro forma financial information, liabilities based on, **3:170**
- Regulation BTR, **8:473**
- Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**
- Rule 10b-5 IPA compared, **3:172**
- Whistleblowers** (this index)

**SARS-COV-2**

- Covid-19 Pandemic** (this index)

**SCALPING**

- Generally, **12:3**

**SCIENTER**

- Generally, **6:169 et seq., 8:58 et seq.**
- Actual knowledge
  - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**



## INDEX

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Actual knowledge—Cont'd
  - Burden of proof, **8:178**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
  - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
  - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
  - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
  - Injunctions, **8:174**
  - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
  - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
  - Proof, **8:179**
  - SEC decisions, **8:175**
  - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
- Bad faith
  - Generally, **8:210 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:219**
  - Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
  - Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**
  - Insufficiency, **8:215**
  - Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**
  - Proof, **8:220**
  - Sufficiency, **8:214**
- Belief of defendant, **8:240**
- Blue sky laws
  - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:61**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**
- Broker-dealer fraud
  - Generally, **8:139 et seq., 14:83 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
  - Churning, **14:129**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Implied liability
    - Generally, **8:139 et seq.**
    - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
    - Defendant's knowledge and belief
      - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:141**
      - Proof, **8:142**

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Broker-dealer fraud—Cont'd
  - Implied liability—Cont'd
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
    - Pleading, **8:145**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
  - Pleading, **8:145**
  - Proof, **8:142**
  - SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**
- Burden of proof, **8:74, 8:77**
- CFTC
  - Enforcement actions, **13:237**
  - Injunctions, **13:247**
- Churning, **14:129**
- Common law
  - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:59**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:60**
- Constructive knowledge
  - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:189**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
  - Injunctions, **8:185**
  - Insufficiency, **8:188**
  - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
  - Proof, **8:190**
  - SEC decisions, **8:186**
  - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
- Court cases, **14:83 et seq.**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Actual knowledge, **8:176**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:187**
  - Intent, **8:197**
  - SEC references, **13:127**
- Defendant's knowledge and intent
  - Blue sky laws, **8:61**
  - Common law, **8:59**
  - SA § 11, **8:79**
- Defendant standards, **8:164**
- Definitions, **8:155 et seq.**
- Diligence, lack of
  - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:238**
  - Criminal cases, **8:236**
  - Injunctions, **8:234**
  - Insufficiency, **8:237**
  - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
  - Proof, **8:239**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

- Diligence, lack of—Cont'd
  - SEC decisions, **8:235**
  - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Fiduciary theory, insider trading charges
  - Tippers, **7:381**
  - Trading insiders, **7:377**
  - Trading tippees, **7:385**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:69, 7:99**
- Injunctions
  - Actual knowledge, **8:174**
  - CFTC, **13:247**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:185**
  - Intent, **8:195**
  - SEC, **13:102**
- Insiders, tippee violations, **7:672**
- Insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
  - Fiduciary theory
    - Tippers, **7:381**
    - Trading insiders, **7:377**
    - Trading tippees, **7:385**
  - Misappropriation theory
    - Tippers, **7:382**
    - Trading insiders, **7:378**
    - Trading tippees, **7:386**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
  - Tippers
    - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
    - Fiduciary theory, **7:381**
    - Misappropriation theory, **7:382**
    - Trading insiders, **7:375 et seq.**
    - Trading tippees, **7:383 et seq.**
- Intent
  - Generally, **8:191 et seq.**
  - See also **Intent** (this index)
  - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Burden of proof, **8:201**
  - Criminal cases, **8:197**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
  - Insufficiency, **8:199**
  - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
  - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

- Intent—Cont'd
  - Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**
  - Proof, **8:202**
  - SEC decisions, **8:196**
  - Sufficiency, **8:198**
- Knowledge
  - See also **Knowledge** (this index)
- Manipulation
  - Generally, **8:102 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:104**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:119**
  - Defendant's knowledge, **8:120**
  - Defendant's purpose
    - Generally, **8:103 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:104**
    - Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**
  - Direct evidence, **8:106**
  - Indirect evidence, **8:107**
  - Large blocks, **8:108**
  - Large proportion of trading, **8:109**
  - Painting the tape, **8:110**
  - Playoff of markets, **8:114**
  - Price action, **8:113**
  - Profit, **8:115**
  - Proof, **8:105**
  - Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**
  - Stimulating demand, **8:110, 8:111**
  - Suppressing supply, **8:112**
  - Defendant's willfulness, **8:121**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**
  - Proof, **8:105**
- Merger challenges, **6:169 et seq.**
- Misappropriation theory insider trading charges
  - Tippers, **7:382**
  - Trading insiders, **7:378**
  - Trading tippees, **7:386**
- Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**
- Motive
  - Generally, **8:203 et seq.**
  - Absence, effect of, **8:207**

## INDEX

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

#### Motive—Cont'd

Burden of proof, **8:208**  
Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**  
Pleading, **11:139**  
Presence, effect of, **8:207**  
Proof, **8:209**

#### Negligence

Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:238**  
Criminal cases, **8:236**  
Injunctions, **8:234**  
Insufficiency, **8:237**  
Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**  
Proof, **8:239**  
SEC decisions, **8:235**  
Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**

#### Opportunity, **11:139**

#### Plaintiff's knowledge

Blue sky laws, **8:62**  
Common law, **8:60**  
SA § 11, **8:80**

#### Plaintiff standards, **8:164**

#### Pleading

Motive, **11:139**

Opportunity, **11:139**

#### Particularity

Generally, **11:133 et seq.**  
Bases for inferring, **11:135**  
Circumstantial evidence of  
recklessness, **11:162**  
Conscious behavior, **11:162**  
Motive, **11:139**  
Opportunity, **11:139**  
Recklessness  
Generally, **11:141**  
Circumstantial evidence,  
**11:162**  
SEA § 21D(b), **11:134**  
Recklessness  
Generally, **11:141**  
Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**

Proof, **8:75, 8:78**

#### Proxy fraud

Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:127**  
Intent, **8:129**

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

#### Proxy fraud—Cont'd

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**  
Pleading, **8:131**  
Proof, **8:128**

PSLRA and section 21D(b),  
Recklessness, **11:44.10**

#### Recklessness

Generally, **8:221 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:227**  
Insufficiency, **8:226**  
Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**  
Pleading  
Generally, **11:141**  
Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**  
Proof, **8:228**  
PSLRA and section 21D(b),  
**11:44.10**  
Sufficiency, **8:225**

Registration statement fraud, **8:72 et seq.**

Reputation, **8:218**

#### Rule 10b-5

Generally, **6:171, 8:154 et seq.**

#### Actual knowledge

Generally, **8:165 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:178**  
Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**  
Direct-impersonal transactions,  
**8:171**  
Direct-personal transactions,  
**8:170**  
Indirect-impersonal transactions,  
**8:172**  
Injunctions, **8:174**  
Insufficiency of, **8:177**  
Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**  
Proof, **8:179**  
SEC decisions, **8:175**  
Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**

#### Bad faith

Generally, **8:210 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:219**  
Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**  
Good reputation, effect of,  
**8:218**  
Insufficiency, **8:215**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Bad faith—Cont'd
    - Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**
    - Proof, **8:220**
    - Sufficiency, **8:214**
  - Belief of defendant, **8:240**
  - Breadth of rule, **8:160**
  - Congressional intent, **8:158**
  - Constructive knowledge
    - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:189**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
    - Injunctions, **8:185**
    - Insufficiency, **8:188**
    - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
    - Proof, **8:190**
    - SEC decisions, **8:186**
    - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
  - Criminal prosecutions
    - Actual knowledge, **8:176**
    - Constructive knowledge, **8:187**
    - Intent, **8:197**
  - Defendant standards, **8:164**
  - Diligence, lack of
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
    - Proof, **8:239**
    - SEC decisions, **8:235**
    - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
  - Flexibility, need for, **8:162**
  - Formulations, **8:155**
  - Intent
    - Generally, **8:191 et seq.**
    - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
    - Burden of proof, **8:201**
    - Criminal cases, **8:197**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
    - Injunctions, **8:195**
    - Insufficiency, **8:199**
    - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
    - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Intent—Cont'd
    - Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**
    - Proof, **8:202**
    - SEC decisions, **8:196**
    - Sufficiency, **8:198**
  - Motive
    - Generally, **8:203 et seq.**
    - Absence, effect of, **8:207**
    - Burden of proof, **8:208**
    - Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**
    - Presence, effect of, **8:207**
    - Proof, **8:209**
  - Negligence
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
    - Proof, **8:239**
    - SEC decisions, **8:235**
    - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
  - Other elements, relation of scienter to, **8:163**
  - Plaintiff standards, **8:164**
  - Policy, **8:161**
  - Reasons, **8:161**
  - Recklessness
    - Generally, **8:221 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:227**
    - Insufficiency, **8:226**
    - Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**
    - Proof, **8:228**
    - Sufficiency, **8:225**
  - Reputation, **8:218**
  - Scope of rule, **8:160**
  - Semantic confusion, **8:156, 8:157**
  - Touting, SA § 17(b), **8:95**
  - Unreasonable conduct
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**

## INDEX

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

#### Rule 10b-5—Cont'd

##### Unreasonable conduct—Cont'd

Proof, **8:239**

SEC decisions, **8:235**

Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**

Willfulness, **8:241**

Rule 14a-9, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

#### SEC

##### False reports to

Generally, **8:146**

Defendant's intent, **8:150**

Defendant's knowledge

Generally, **8:147 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:148**

Proof, **8:149**

Good faith, **8:150**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:151**

Pleading, **8:152**

Privity, **8:287**

Quantitative factors, **8:153**

Injunctions, **13:102**

#### Securities Act

Burden of proof, **8:66**

Registration statement fraud, **8:72 et seq.**

Sales fraud, **8:63 et seq.**, **8:82 et seq.**

#### Section 11

Generally, **8:72 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:74 et seq.**

Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:79**

Expert parts, **8:76 et seq.**

Nonexpert parts, **8:73 et seq.**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:80**

Pleading, **8:81**

Proof, **8:75, 8:78**

#### Section 12(2)

Generally, **8:63 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:66**

Defendant's intent, **8:68**

Defendant's knowledge

Generally, **8:64 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:66**

Criminal context, **8:65**

Proof, **8:67**

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

#### Securities Act—Cont'd

##### Section 12(2)—Cont'd

Limitation of actions, plaintiff's knowledge of fraud, **8:70**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:69, 8:70**

Pleading, **8:71**

Proof, **8:67**

##### Section 17(a)

Generally, **8:82**

Bond counsel issuing improper legal opinion, **8:442**

Burden of proof, **8:84**

Defendant's intent, **8:86**

Defendant's knowledge, **8:83 et seq.**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:87**

Pleading, **8:88**

Proof, **8:85**

##### Section 17(b), touting

Generally, **8:89 to 8:71.22**

Class action complaints, undisclosed touting, **8:90**

Criminal context, **8:99**

Dismissal motions, legal standard, **8:91**

Janus case, **8:94**

Loss causation, **8:93**

Requirements, **8:92, 8:96**

Rule 10b-5, **8:95**

Scheme liability, reliance on, **8:97**

SEC enforcement, **8:98**

#### Securities Exchange Act

Generally, **8:101 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5 fraud, **8:154 et seq.**

Section 9(a), **8:102 et seq.**

Section 10, **8:124**

Section 14, **8:125, 8:132 et seq.**

Section 18, **8:146 et seq.**

#### Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), **3:214**

Semantic confusion, **8:156, 8:157**

Strong inference, **11:136.10**

Tellabs, **11:137, 11:138**

Tender offer fraud

Defendant's intent, **8:136**

## SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Tender offer fraud—Cont'd
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
  - Intent, **8:136**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
  - Pleading, **8:138**
- Tippers, insider trading charges, **7:379 et seq.**
- Unreasonable conduct
  - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:238**
  - Criminal cases, **8:236**
  - Injunctions, **8:234**
  - Insufficiency, **8:237**
  - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
  - Proof, **8:239**
  - SEC decisions, **8:235**
  - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Versions of scienter, relations among
  - Actual knowledge, **8:166**
  - Bad faith, **8:211**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:181**
  - Diligence, lack of, **8:230**
  - Intent, **8:192**
  - Motive, **8:204**
  - Negligence, **8:230**
  - Purpose, **8:204**
  - Recklessness, **8:222**
  - Unreasonable conduct, **8:230**
  - Willfulness, **8:241**

## SEA

- See **Securities Exchange Act** (this index)

## SEARCH AND SEIZURE

- SEC investigations, **13:34**

## SEC

- See **Securities and Exchange Commission** (this index)

## SECONDARY LIABILITY

- Parties** (this index)
- Proportionate Liability** (this index)
- Vicarious Liability** (this index)

## SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

- Generally, **1:14**
- Administrative intent, **3:19**
- Antifraud provisions and Regulation
  - FD disclosure, **7:546**
- Authority of SEC
  - Generally, **3:5**
  - Regulation FD, **7:550**
- Caption changes, 10b-5, **3:22**
- Comparative language, **3:1**
- Connection requirement
  - 10b-5, **6:185**
  - 14c-6, **6:184**
- Crowdfunding, **14:215**
- Depression rules, **3:24**
- Integration proposals, **3:52**
- Interrelations of fraud rules
  - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
  - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
  - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
  - Causation, **3:48**
  - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
  - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
  - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
  - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
  - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
- Implied Liability** (this index)
- Integration proposals, **3:52**
- Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
- Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
- Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
- Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
- Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
- Public offerings, **3:40**
- Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
- Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
- Transactions covered, **3:38**
- Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
- Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
- Mergers, 14a-9 connection requirement, **6:183**

## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

Numbering  
10b-5 changes, **3:21**  
Generally, **1:2**  
Organization, **1:2**  
Parties subject to rules  
10b-5, **3:49**  
15c1-2, **3:49**  
Private transactions, application of  
10b-5 to  
Generally, **3:26**  
Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**  
Proposed ESG regulations, **29:4**  
Prosperity rules, **3:24**  
Proxy rules  
10b-5, relation to, **6:159 et seq.**  
14a-9  
Privity, **6:173**  
Scienter standard, **6:169**  
14c-6, causation, **6:180**  
Congressional intent, **6:155**  
SEA § 14(e), relation to, **6:24**  
Registered offerings, fraud rules  
applicable to, **3:39, 3:45**  
Registration provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:547**  
Regulation BTR, **8:473**  
Regulation FD disclosure  
Generally, **7:526 et seq.**  
Analysts' roles, **7:528**  
Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**  
Avoiding selective disclosure,  
**7:553**  
Companies covered, **7:545**  
Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**  
Curing violations, **7:554**  
Eliminating nonpublic information,  
**7:552**  
Enforcement, **7:549**  
Exemption provisions and, **7:548**  
Filing with SEC, compliance by,  
**7:555**  
Information, triggering, **7:534**  
Intentional and nonintentional  
partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd  
Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**  
Method of disclosure, **7:544**  
Persons triggering duty, **7:537**  
Policy basis, **7:527**  
Prompt disclosure requirement,  
**7:543**  
Registration provisions and, **7:547**  
Regulatory gap, **7:530**  
Scope of regulation, **7:545**  
Selective disclosure  
Generally, **7:529**  
Avoiding, **7:553**  
Curing violations, **7:554**  
Materiality, **7:535**  
Nonpublic nature of information  
disclosed, **7:536**  
Triggering full disclosure  
obligation, **7:532**  
Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**  
Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**  
Triggering events  
Generally, **7:531 et seq.**  
Information, triggering, **7:534**  
Intentional and nonintentional  
partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**  
Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**  
Non-intentional disclosures,  
**7:540**  
Nonpublic nature of information  
disclosed, **7:536**  
Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**  
Persons triggering duty, **7:537**  
Selective disclosures, **7:532**  
Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
Validity, **7:550**  
Violations, curing, **7:554**  
Rifle rules and shotgun rules, **3:36**  
Rule 3a51-1, **14:144**  
Rule 3b-6, **7:21**  
Rule 10b-1 through 17, **3:34**



**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

Rule 10b-5  
 Generally, **1:18 et seq.**  
 Absolute liability, **8:243**  
 Absorption principle, **3:173**  
 Access to investment rewards,  
   equalization of, **4:5**  
 Actions in concert, **8:294**  
 Administrative intent, **3:19**  
 Adoption, validity of, **3:3**  
 Antiwaivers, **12:11**  
 Arbitration of claimed violations,  
   **12:11**  
 Attitudes and unintentional viola-  
   tions, **12:14**  
 Avoiding liability, **12:10**  
 Backdating stock options, **18:3,**  
   **18:10**  
 Bargaining positions, equalization  
   of, **4:4**  
 Breadth of fraud proscriptions,  
   **3:52**  
 Broker-dealer transactions,  
   application to, **3:27**  
 Caption changes, **3:22**  
 Causation  
   Generally, **3:48**  
   Proxies and proxy solicitations,  
     **6:181**  
 Changes  
   Generally, **3:20 et seq.**  
   Caption changes, **3:22**  
   Legislation, **3:23**  
   Numbering changes, **3:21**  
   Proposals for, **12:9**  
 Clause 3, primacy of, **3:182**  
 Comparative language, **3:1**  
 Congressional intent  
   Generally, **3:14 et seq.**  
   Deceptive devices, **3:17**  
   Manipulative devices, **3:17**  
   Merger regulation, **6:157**  
   Private enforcement rights, **3:16**  
   SA, **3:10**  
   Scope of coverage, **3:15**  
   Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd  
 Connection requirement, mergers,  
   **6:185**  
 Construction, **1:18 et seq.**  
 Contraction era, **3:31**  
 Criminal enforcement, **10:4**  
 Curing violations, **12:15**  
**Direct-Impersonal Dealing** (this  
   index)  
**Direct-Personal Dealing** (this  
   index)  
 Disclosure corrections, **6:314 et**  
   **seq.**  
 Disclosure requirements, **6:218**  
 Disclosure rule, treatment as, **12:3**  
 Displacements within 10b-5, **3:181**  
 Economic background, **3:24**  
 Elements of private cause of  
   action, **3:50**  
 Enactment, **3:18**  
 Equalization of access to invest-  
   ment rewards, **4:5**  
 Equalization of bargaining posi-  
   tions, **4:4**  
 Equalization of information, **4:5**  
 Equalization rule, treatment as,  
   **12:2**  
 Ethical standards, **3:60, 3:80**  
 Evolution of, **12:1**  
 Expanding scope of, **12:8**  
 Expansion era  
   Generally, **3:30**  
   New expansion era, **3:32**  
 Expenses, security for, **3:175**  
 Fairness rule, treatment as, **12:5,**  
   **12:13**  
 Federal vs state private actions,  
   relative advantages, **3:200**  
 Fragmented text, **1:19**  
 Front running, **7:139 et seq.**  
 Gap-filling purpose, **3:19**  
 Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**  
 Growth of, **12:1**  
 History  
   Generally, **3:6 et seq.**  
   Economic background, **3:24**

## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

##### Rule 10b-5—Cont'd

Implied civil recovery, Rule 10b-5 without, **3:180**

Implied liability, **3:175**

Generally, **8:242 et seq.**

Absolute liability, **8:243**

Burden of proof, **8:255**

Clause 3, primacy of, **3:182**

Constructive fraud, **8:242**

Contraction era

Generally, **3:74 et seq.**

Administrative enforcement, supplement to, **3:81**

Administrative interpretation, **3:82**

Congressional intent, **3:76**

Cort v Ash, **3:95**

Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose, **3:88**

Judicial restraint, **3:85**

Legislative history, uses of, **3:90 et seq.**

Modes of interpretation, **3:86 et seq.**

Negative implication, **3:87**

Policies, **3:75**

Policy effectuation, **3:80**

Practicality, **3:83**

Reasons, **3:75**

Statutory jurisdictional grant, **3:79**

Statutory literalism, **3:89**

Statutory tort, **3:77**

Vexatiousness, **3:84, 3:85**

Voidability, statutory, **3:78**

Contributory negligence, **8:253**

Displacements within 10b-5, **3:181**

Equitable fraud, **8:242**

Expenses, security for, **3:175**

Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**

Implied civil recovery, Rule 10b-5 without, **3:180**

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

Limitations of actions, **3:174**

Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

##### Rule 10b-5—Cont'd

Implied liability, **3:175**—Cont'd

Overlaps within 10b-5, **3:181**

Plaintiff's knowledge

Generally, **8:244 et seq.**

Actual knowledge, **8:244**

Comparative knowledge, **8:249**

Constructive knowledge, **8:250**

Limitation of actions, **8:251**

Misrepresentation, **8:246**

Nondisclosure, **8:245**

Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**

Pleading, **8:257**

Prevalence of rule, **3:179**

Privity requirements, **3:176**

Proof, **8:256**

Proof requirements, **3:177**

Remedies, **3:178**

Security for expenses, **3:175**

Silent conduct, **3:182**

Strict liability, **8:243**

Indirect-impersonal dealing

Generally, **3:28**

Insiders, **7:163**

Information, equalization of, **4:5**

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

Insider rule, treatment as, **4:1, 12:4**

Insider trading charges

Connection with requirement, **7:370**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:163**

Private actions, **7:497 et seq.**

Scienter, **7:374 et seq.**

Integration proposals, **3:52**

Intentional and unintentional violations, **12:14**

Interpretation, **1:18 et seq.**

Interrelations of fraud rules

Generally, **3:37 et seq.**

Birnbaum rule, **3:50**

Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**

Causation, **3:48**

Defenses to private actions, **3:51**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd  
 Interrelations of fraud rules  
     —Cont'd  
         Displacing provisions, **3:53**  
         Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**  
         Exempt offerings, **3:46**  
         Implied and express private actions, **3:50**  
         **Implied Liability** (this index)  
         Integration proposals, **3:52**  
         Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**  
         Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**  
         Parties subject to rule, **3:49**  
         Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**  
         Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**  
         Public offerings, **3:40**  
         Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**  
         Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**  
         Transactions covered, **3:38**  
         Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**  
         Unregistered offerings, **3:46**  
 Investor protection considerations, **3:60, 3:80**  
 Joint and several liability, **9:37 et seq.**  
 Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**  
 Jurisdictional means  
     Generally, **11:2 et seq.**  
     Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:190**  
 Key clauses, **1:18 et seq.**  
 Key phrases, **1:20**  
 Landmarks, **3:29 et seq.**  
 Language, **3:1**  
 Limitations of actions, **3:174**  
 Manipulation, **7:130 et seq.**  
 Market-informing rule, treatment as, **12:6**  
 Materiality of violations, **12:2**  
 Materiality standard, **6:168**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd  
 Merger regulation  
     Congressional intent, **6:157**  
     Private action challenges, **6:162**  
 Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:585 et seq.**  
 Misrepresentations  
     Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**  
     Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**  
     Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**  
     Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:246**  
     Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**  
 Net effect of rule, **1:21**  
 New expansion era, **3:146**  
 Nondisclosure  
     Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**  
     Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**  
     Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**  
     Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**  
 Numbering changes, **3:21**  
 Other § 10(b) rules  
     Generally, **3:33 et seq.**  
     Proposed rules, **3:35**  
 Overlaps within 10b-5, **3:181**  
 Parking, **7:143 et seq.**  
 Parties subject to rule, **3:49**  
 Plaintiff's knowledge  
     Generally, **8:244 et seq.**  
     Actual knowledge, **8:244**  
     Comparative knowledge, **8:249**  
     Constructive knowledge, **8:250**  
     Limitation of actions, **8:251**  
     Nondisclosure, **8:245**  
     Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**  
 Pleading, particularity  
     Generally, **11:115 et seq.**  
     Analysts' statements, **11:127**  
     Fact statements, **11:120 et seq., 11:122**  
     Failure to anticipate, **11:131**  
     Falsity, **11:116, 11:117**

## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

##### Rule 10b-5—Cont'd

##### Pleading, particularity—Cont'd

Forward looking statements,

**11:132**

Group statements, **11:123,**

**11:124**

Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**

Information and belief, **11:128,**

**11:129**

Misleading character, **11:118,**

**11:119**

Nondisclosure, **11:131**

Predictions, **11:132**

Scienter, **11:133 et seq.**

Third party statements, **11:127**

Unattributed statements, **11:125,**

**11:126**

##### Possession of inside information

Generally, **7:318 et seq.**

Access, proof of, **7:323**

Awareness and possession  
distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321**

Contact, proof of, **7:324**

Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:326**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

Trading, proof of, **7:325**

Use inferred from possession,  
**7:328**

##### Prevalence of rule, **3:179**

##### Private fraud actions

##### Privity

Generally, **8:288 et seq.**

Accountants, liability of,  
**8:404**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Agreement, **8:314**

Aider-abettors, **8:327 et seq.**

Aiding and abetting generally,  
**8:292**

Attorneys, **8:409**

Benefit, **8:317**

Combination, **8:314**

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

##### Rule 10b-5—Cont'd

##### Private fraud actions—Cont'd

##### Privity—Cont'd

Conspiracy generally, **8:292**

Conspirators, **8:304 et seq.**

Corporate officers, **8:413**

Directors, **8:413**

Extent of liability, **8:318**

Intent, **8:316**

Knowledge, **8:315**

Limits, **8:291**

Participants in violations gen-  
erally, **8:294**

Participation generally, **8:292**

Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**

Policies, **8:289**

Reasons, **8:289**

Rescission, availability of,  
**8:290**

Suability, meaning of gener-  
ally, **8:293**

Theory of action, **8:290**

##### Scienter

Generally, **8:154 et seq.**

##### Actual knowledge

Generally, **8:165 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:178**

Criminal prosecutions,  
**8:176**

Direct-impersonal transac-  
tions, **8:171**

Direct-personal transac-  
tions, **8:170**

Indirect-impersonal  
transactions, **8:172**

Injunctions, **8:174**

Insufficiency of, **8:177**

Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**

Proof, **8:179**

SEC decisions, **8:175**

Sufficiency of, **8:169 et  
seq.**

##### Bad faith

Generally, **8:210 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:219**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd  
 Private fraud actions—Cont'd  
     Scienter—Cont'd  
         Bad faith—Cont'd  
             Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**  
             Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**  
             Insufficiency, **8:215**  
             Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**  
             Proof, **8:220**  
             Sufficiency, **8:214**  
         Belief of defendant, **8:240**  
         Breadth of rule, **8:160**  
         Congressional intent, **8:158**  
         Constructive knowledge  
             Generally, **8:180 et seq.**  
             Burden of proof, **8:189**  
             Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**  
             Injunctions, **8:185**  
             Insufficiency, **8:188**  
             Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**  
             Proof, **8:190**  
             SEC decisions, **8:186**  
             Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**  
         Defendant standards, **8:164**  
         Definitions, **8:155 et seq.**  
         Diligence, lack of  
             Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
             Injunctions, **8:234**  
         Flexibility, need for, **8:162**  
         Formulations, **8:155**  
         Intent  
             Generally, **8:191 et seq.**  
             Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**  
             Burden of proof, **8:201**  
             Criminal cases, **8:197**  
             Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**  
             Injunctions, **8:195**  
             Insufficiency, **8:199**  
             Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd  
 Private fraud actions—Cont'd  
     Scienter—Cont'd  
         Intent—Cont'd  
             Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**  
             Proof, **8:202**  
             SEC decisions, **8:196**  
             Sufficiency, **8:198**  
         Motive  
             Generally, **8:203 et seq.**  
             Absence, effect of, **8:207**  
             Burden of proof, **8:208**  
             Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**  
             Presence, effect of, **8:207**  
             Proof, **8:209**  
         Negligence  
             Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
             Injunctions, **8:234**  
         Other elements, relation of scienter to, **8:163**  
         Plaintiff standards, **8:164**  
         Policy, **8:161**  
         Reasons, **8:161**  
         Recklessness, **8:221 et seq.**  
         Reputation, **8:218**  
         Scope of rule, **8:160**  
         Semantic confusion, **8:156, 8:157**  
         Unreasonable conduct  
             Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
             Injunctions, **8:234**  
         Versions of scienter, relations among  
             Actual knowledge, **8:166**  
             Bad faith, **8:211**  
             Constructive knowledge, **8:181**  
             Diligence, lack of, **8:230**  
             Intent, **8:192**  
             Motive, **8:204**  
             Negligence, **8:230**  
             Purpose, **8:204**  
             Recklessness, **8:222**  
             Unreasonable conduct, **8:230**

## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Private fraud actions—Cont'd
    - Scienter—Cont'd
      - Willfulness, **8:241**
  - Private transactions, application to
    - Generally, **3:26**
    - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
  - Privity
    - Actions in concert, **8:294**
    - Implied liability, **3:176**
  - Proliferation of rule, **12:1**
  - Promulgation, **3:18**
  - Proof requirements, **3:177**
  - Proposals for change, **12:9**
  - Proposed companion rules, **3:35**
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations
    - Causation, **6:181**
    - Jurisdictional means, **6:190**
    - Materiality standard, **6:168**
    - Privity, **6:175**
    - Reliance, **6:178**
    - Scienter standard, **6:171**
  - Proxy rules, relation to, **6:159 et seq.**
  - PSLRA and, **3:1**
  - Purpose of rule, **3:19**
  - Rationales for protection afforded by, **4:2 et seq.**
  - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
  - Releases of liability, **12:11**
  - Reliance
    - Generally, **8:493 et seq.**
    - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:178**
  - Remedies, implied liability, **3:178**
  - Rescission offers to cure violations, **12:15**
  - Retrenchment era, **3:31**
  - Rule 15c1-2 compared, **3:27**
  - SA § 17(a) compared
    - Generally, **3:27**
    - Early version, **3:8**
    - Final version, **3:9**
  - Sanctions, **3:4**

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - SA provisions and history of, **3:7 et seq.**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act implied liabilities, **3:172**
  - Scienter
    - Insider trading charges, **7:374 et seq.**
    - Intent, proof of in private actions, **8:194**
    - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:171**
  - Scope of operation
    - Generally, **3:25 et seq.**
    - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **3:28**
    - Direct-personal transactions
      - Generally, **3:26**
      - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
    - Expansion of, **12:8**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **3:28**
    - Private transactions, **3:26**
- SEA 10(b) and
  - Early version, **3:12**
  - Final version, **3:13**
  - Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- SEA and, **3:11 et seq.**
- Seller protection, **4:3**
- Shot gun use of SEA § 10(b), **3:36**
- Silent conduct, **3:182**
- Special facts and common law fraud, **3:19**
- State and federal laws, relationships between, **3:184 et seq.**
- Status of rule, **3:2 et seq.**
- Statutory limits on rules, **3:5**
- Strict liability, **8:243**
- Suitability claims, **14:197 et seq.**
- Supreme Court, **3:148**
- Text of rule, **App A**
- Transaction Planning** (this index)
- Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**

## SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Unintentional violations, **12:14**
  - Use of inside information
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Validity, **3:3**
  - Violations, preventive law responses, **12:15**
  - Waivers of, **12:11**
- Rule 13a-1, **18:3**
- Rule 13a-13, **18:3**
- Rule 13a-14, **18:3**
- Rule 14a, **18:3, 18:10**
- Rule 14a-9
  - Causation, proxy fraud, **6:179**
  - Disclosures of corrections, **6:303 et seq.**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:188, 6:189**
  - Materiality standard, **6:166**
  - Mergers
    - Connection requirement, **6:183**
    - Private action challenges, **6:160**
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations
    - Causation, **6:179**
    - Jurisdictional means, **6:188, 6:189**
    - Materiality standard, **6:166**
    - Privity, **6:173**
    - Reliance, **6:176**
    - Scienter standard, **6:169**
    - Reliance, **6:176**
- Rule 14c-6
  - Connection requirement mergers, **6:184**

## SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

### —Cont'd

- Rule 14c-6—Cont'd
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:307 et seq.**
  - Materiality standard, **6:167**
  - Mergers, private action challenges, **6:161**
  - Privity, **6:174**
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations
    - Causation, **6:180**
    - Materiality standard, **6:167**
    - Privity, **6:174**
    - Reliance, **6:177**
    - Scienter standard, **6:170**
    - Reliance, **6:177**
    - Scienter, **6:170**
- Rule 14e-3
  - Generally, **7:632 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealer supervisory liabilities, **14:169**
  - Duty imposed, **7:633**
  - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:166**
  - Insider trading charges
    - Connection with requirement, **7:371**
    - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:166**
    - Private actions, **7:500**
    - Scienter, **7:412**
  - Possession of inside information
    - Generally, **7:340 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:341**
    - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
    - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
    - Standard of proof, **7:341**
    - Scienter, **7:412**
    - Supreme Court validation, **7:636, 7:637**
    - Use of inside information, **7:347**
    - Validity, **7:634 et seq.**
- Rule 15c1-2
  - 10b-5 compared, **3:27**
  - Causation, **3:48**



## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

Rule 15c1-2—Cont'd

Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:165**

Insiders, **7:165**

Integration proposals, **3:52**

Interrelations of fraud rules

Generally, **3:37 et seq.**

Birnbaum rule, **3:50**

Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**

Causation, **3:48**

Defenses to private actions, **3:51**

Displacing provisions, **3:53**

Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**

Exempt offerings, **3:46**

Implied and express private actions, **3:50**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

Integration proposals, **3:52**

Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**

Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**

Parties subject to rule, **3:49**

Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**

Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**

Public offerings, **3:40**

Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**

Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**

Transactions covered, **3:38**

Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**

Unregistered offerings, **3:46**

Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**

Parties subject to rule, **3:49**

Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**

Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**

Rule 15c2-11, **14:147**

Rule 15g-1, **14:144**

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

Rule 15g-8, **14:145**

Rule 15g-9, **14:142**

Rule 16a-3, **18:3**

Rule 144, indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:167**

Rule 144A, crowdfunding, **14:216**

Rule 174, **14:145**

Rule 175, **7:21**

Rule 176, **14:7**

Rule 412, **14:7, 14:10**

Rule 419, **14:145**

Rule 506, crowdfunding, **14:216**

SA § 17(a) and 10b-5 compared, **3:27**

Sanctions

Generally, **3:4**

Rule 10b-5, **3:4**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:164 et seq.**

Special facts and common law fraud, **3:19**

Status of rules generally, **3:2 et seq.**

Statutory limits on rules, **3:5**

Suitability rules, **14:195**

Triggering events, **7:540**

Validity

Antifraud rules generally, **3:3**

Regulation FD, **7:550**

Rule 10b-5, **3:3**

**What is a Security** (this index)

### SECURITIES ACT (SA)

Backdating of stock options, violations of federal securities laws, **18:3**

Congressional intent, Rule 10b-5 history, **3:10**

Cybersecurity, class actions, **26:7**

Disclosure requirements in filings, **6:279**

Enactment, **3:7**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

Insiders and inside trading, Mail and wire fraud, **7:172**

Interrelations of fraud rules

Generally, **3:37 et seq.**

Birnbaum rule, **3:50**

Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**

Causation, **3:48**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

Interrelations of fraud rules—Cont'd  
 Defenses to private actions, **3:51**  
 Displacing provisions, **3:53**  
 Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**  
 Exempt offerings, **3:46**  
 Implied and express private actions, **3:50**  
**Implied Liability** (this index)  
 Integration proposals, **3:52**  
 Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**  
 Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**  
 Parties subject to rule, **3:49**  
 Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**  
 Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**  
 Public offerings, **3:40**  
 Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**  
 Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**  
 Transactions covered, **3:38**  
 Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**  
 Unregistered offerings, **3:46**  
**Materiality**  
 Generally, **8:49 et seq.**  
 Registration fraud, **8:51**  
 Sales fraud, **8:50, 8:52**  
 Section 11, **8:51**  
 Section 12(a)(2), **8:50**  
 Section 17(a), **8:52**  
 Tests of, **8:10**  
 Mergers, registration requirements, **6:152**  
 Proxy solicitation antifraud provisions, **6:187**  
 Public offerings, interrelations of fraud rules, **3:40**  
 Risk disclosures requirements in filings, **6:279**  
 Rules. See **SEC Rules and Regulations** (this index)  
 Section 2(1)(a), what is a security  
 Generally, **5:10**  
 Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
 Guarantees, **5:15**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

Section 2(1)(a), what is a security—Cont'd  
 Interest, **5:14**  
 9 month notes, **5:17**  
 Oil and gas interests, **5:16**  
 SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12 et seq.**  
 SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**  
 Section 5  
 Generally, **6:217**  
 Crowdfunding, application of law, **14:215**  
 Exemptions, **14:24**  
 Violations, **14:26**  
 Section 11  
 Broker-dealer liability, **14:2 et seq.**  
**Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)  
 Class actions, **14:18**  
 Contraction era, implied private actions in  
 Generally, **3:109 et seq.**  
 Defendants excluded, **3:112**  
 Documents excluded, **3:113**  
 Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**  
 Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**  
 Securities excluded, **3:110**  
 Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**  
 Transactions excluded, **3:110**  
 Court cases, **14:6**  
 Damages, **14:15**  
 Disclosure corrections, **6:294 et seq.**  
 Due diligence defense  
 Generally, **14:5**  
 SEC view, **14:9**  
 Expansion era, implied private actions in, **3:70**  
**Implied Liability** (this index)  
 Implied private actions in contraction era  
 Generally, **3:109 et seq.**  
 Defendants excluded, **3:112**  
 Documents excluded, **3:113**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd

#### Section 11—Cont'd

Implied private actions in contraction era—Cont'd

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**

Securities excluded, **3:110**

Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**

Transactions excluded, **3:110**

Implied private actions in expansion era, **3:70**

Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**

Interrelations of fraud rules

Generally, **3:37 et seq.**

Birnbaum rule, **3:50**

Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**

Causation, **3:48**

Defenses to private actions, **3:51**

Displacing provisions, **3:53**

Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**

Exempt offerings, **3:46**

Implied and express private actions, **3:50**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

Integration proposals, **3:52**

Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**

Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**

Parties subject to rule, **3:49**

Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**

Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**

Public offerings, **3:40**

Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**

Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**

Transactions covered, **3:38**

Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**

Unregistered offerings, **3:46**

Joint and several liability, **9:24**

Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**

Later filings, effect of, **14:10**

Limitation of actions, **11:57 et seq.**

### SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd

#### Section 11—Cont'd

Materiality, **8:51**

Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**

Participating underwriters, **14:13**

Parties, **8:273**

Pleading particularity, **11:112**

Policy considerations, **14:12**

Reasonable investigation defense

Generally, **14:5**

Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**

SEC Rule 176, **14:8**

Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**

Registered offerings, fraud rules applicable to, **3:39, 3:45**

Reliance, **8:491**

SEA § 10(b) compared, **14:16**

SEC Rule 176, **14:7**

SEC Rule 412, **14:7**

SEC view of due diligence techniques, **14:9**

Underwriters

Generally, **14:4**

Due diligence, **14:14**

#### Section 11(f)

Contribution, **9:67**

Proportionate liability, **9:48**

#### Section 12(1), **11:47 et seq.**

#### Section 12(2)

Contraction era, implied private actions in

Generally, **3:116 et seq.**

Commercial paper, **3:119**

Defendants excluded, **3:121**

Documents excluded, **3:122**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**

Government securities, **3:118**

Municipal securities, **3:117**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**

Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**

Substantive elements, **3:124**

Disclosure corrections, **6:293**

Exempt offerings, application of fraud rules to, **3:46**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

Section 12(2)—Cont'd

Expansion era, implied private actions in, **3:71**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

Implied private actions (IPA)

Contraction era

Generally, **3:116 et seq.**

Commercial paper, **3:119**

Defendants excluded, **3:121**

Documents excluded, **3:122**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**

Government securities, **3:118**

Municipal securities, **3:117**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**

Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**

Substantive elements, **3:124**

Expansion era, **3:71**

Interrelations of fraud rules

Generally, **3:37 et seq.**

Birnbaum rule, **3:50**

Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**

Causation, **3:48**

Defenses to private actions, **3:51**

Displacing provisions, **3:53**

Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**

Exempt offerings, **3:46**

Implied and express private actions, **3:50**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

Integration proposals, **3:52**

Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**

Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**

Parties subject to rule, **3:49**

Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**

Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**

Public offerings, **3:40**

Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**

Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**

Transactions covered, **3:38**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

Section 12(2)—Cont'd

Interrelations of fraud rules  
—Cont'd

Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**

Unregistered offerings, **3:46**

Joint and several liability, **9:23**

Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**

Limitation of actions, **11:54 et seq.**

Parties, **8:263 et seq.**

Pleading particularity, **11:111**

Public offerings and interrelations of fraud rules, **3:40**

Unregistered offerings, fraud rules applicable to, **3:46**

Section 12(a)(1)

Generally, **14:19 et seq.**

**Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)

Section 12(a)(2)

Generally, **14:27 et seq.**

**Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)

Materiality, **8:50**

Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**

Privity, **14:34**

Punitive damages, **14:54**

Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**

Reliance, **8:490**

Relief available, **14:45**

SEA § 10(b) and, overlap between, **14:55**

Section 12 class actions, **14:57**

Section 15

Control person liability, **8:393 et seq.**

Good faith defense, **8:393 et seq.**

Joint and several liability, **9:25**

Section 17(a)

Breadth of fraud proscriptions, **3:52**

Disclosure corrections, **6:299**

Drafting, **3:8**

Final version, **3:9**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

## INDEX

### SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd

#### Section 17(a)—Cont'd

Implied private actions (IPA),  
**3:155**

Insiders, **7:164**

Interrelations of fraud rules

Generally, **3:37 et seq.**

Birnbaum rule, **3:50**

Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**

Causation, **3:48**

Defenses to private actions, **3:51**

Displacing provisions, **3:53**

Elements of private cause of  
action, **3:50**

Exempt offerings, **3:46**

Implied and express private  
actions, **3:50**

**Implied Liability** (this index)

Integration proposals, **3:52**

Joint use of multiple provisions,  
**3:53**

Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et  
seq.**

Parties subject to rule, **3:49**

Place of transaction as factor,  
**3:38**

Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**

Public offerings, **3:40**

Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**

Relationship of conduct to trans-  
action, **3:48**

Transactions covered, **3:38**

Types of violations proscribed,  
**3:47**

Unregistered offerings, **3:46**

Joint use of multiple fraud provi-  
sions, **3:53**

Materiality, **8:52**

Parties, **8:274 et seq.**

Reliance, **8:492**

Rule 10b-5 compared, **3:27**

Text, **App C**

USCA cross reference table, **App H**

**What is a Security** (this index)

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)

Generally, **1:4 et seq., 10:1 et seq.**

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

See also **SEC Rules and Regula-  
tions** (this index)

Accessibility of decisions, **1:6**

Accountants, rulemaking authority as  
to, **3:5**

Accounting orders, **13:84**

Actions against attorneys by. See  
**Attorneys** (this index)

Administrative enforcement

See also **Administrative Enforce-  
ment** (this index)

Role in

Generally, **10:1**

In court, **10:3**

Out of court, **10:2**

Administrative intent, Rule 10b-5  
history, **3:19**

Admission of wrongdoing, compro-  
mise and settlement, **13:166 et  
seq.**

Amicus curiae participation in private  
litigation, **13:79**

Ancillary relief, **13:107 et seq.**

Articulation of standards, **1:7**

Asset freezes, **13:100**

**Attorneys** (this index)

Authority, rulemaking, **3:5**

Authority of staff to negotiate,  
**13:162**

Authority to investigate, **13:6**

Backdating of stock options,  
investigations, **18:3, 18:6, 18:8**

Bar orders. Collateral bars against  
individuals, below

Bounties to informants, **7:445**

Briefs, **1:13**

Broker-dealers

Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**

Supervisory authority over, **10:1**

Cady, Roberts & Co case, **App E**

Cease and desist orders

Permanent, **13:85**

Temporary, **13:86**

Collateral bars against individuals

Generally, **13:87**

Corporate office orders, **13:88**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

- Collateral bars against individuals  
—Cont'd
  - Injunctions including, **13:117**
- Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**
- Compliance orders, **13:82**
- Compromise and settlement, admission of wrongdoing, **13:166 et seq.**
- Conferences with staff, **13:26**
- Conflicts of interest in investigations, **13:15**
- Connection with requirement, **10:1**
- Contested cases
  - Generally, **1:5**
  - Initial decisions, **1:8**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
  - A test, **7:453**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - Failure to act, **7:455**
  - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
- Knowledge
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
  - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
  - Reckless disregard
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Requirements, **7:452**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
- Cooperation agreements, **20:15**
- Counsel investigations, **13:27**
- Criminal enforcement references
  - Generally, **13:122 et seq.**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

- Criminal enforcement references
  - Cont'd
  - See also **Criminal Enforcement** (this index)
  - Role in prosecution, **10:1, 10:4**
- Crowdfunding, **14:218**
- Cryptocurrencies** (this index)
- Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**
- Decisions, **1:4 et seq.**
- Director and officer regulation, Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:464**
- Disclosures
  - Correction requirements, **6:313**
  - Filings as, **7:285**
- Discovery
  - Generally, **13:66 et seq.**
  - Document subpoenas, **13:67**
  - FOIA requests, **13:68**
  - Production requests, **13:69**
- Disgorgement orders, **13:84**
- Document production, **13:25**
- Documents, third party access to, **13:66 et seq.**
- Due diligence defense techniques, **14:9**
- Enforcement actions. See **Administrative Enforcement** (this index)
- Enforcement focus, ESG, **29:1**
- ESG-related enforcement actions
  - Climate, **29:2**
  - Task force, **29:2**
- False reports to
  - Generally, **8:146**
- Corrections, **6:313**
- Defendant's knowledge
  - Burden of proof, **8:148**
  - Proof, **8:149**
- Good faith, **8:150**
- Joint and several liability, **9:32**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:151**
- Pleading, **8:152**
- Privity, **8:287**
- Quantitative factors, **8:153**
- SEA § 18, **8:287**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

#### Filings

Disclosures, **7:285**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

Reliance on and implied private  
actions

#### Contraction era

Generally, **3:133 et seq.**

Decisions rejecting IPA,  
**3:137**

Decisions sustaining IPA,  
**3:138**

Defendants excluded, **3:141**

Documents excluded, **3:142,**  
**3:143**

Failure to satisfy substantive  
elements, **3:145**

Filed and unfiled documents,  
**3:142 et seq.**

Fischman rationale, **3:135**

Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**

Reexamination, reasons for,  
**3:134**

Scienter, **3:135**

Securities excluded, **3:139**

Substantive elements, **3:145**

#### Expansion era, **3:73**

Finding decisions, **1:6**

FOIA requests, **13:68**

Foreign government officials, pay-  
ments to. **Foreign Corrupt  
Practices Act (FCPA)** (this  
index)

#### Front running

Generally, **7:140**

Decisions, **7:142**

Implied liabilities, SEC role in  
developing theories of, **10:1**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:58,**  
**7:59, 7:72 to 7:74, 7:77, 7:80,**  
**7:93**

Informal enforcement actions, **13:78**

Informal warnings, **13:72**

Informants, awards to, **7:445**

Initial decisions in contested cases,  
**1:8**

**Injunctions** (this index)

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

Insider trading. **Insider and Insider  
Trading** (this index)

Insurance coverage for settling  
defendants, **13:183**

Interrogations, **13:29**

#### Investigations

Generally, **13:1 et seq.**

See also **Investigations** (this  
index)

Backdating of stock options, **18:6,**  
**18:8**

**Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
(FCPA)** (this index)

**Madoff Ponzi Scheme** (this index)

Reports, **1:10**

#### Jurisdictional means

Generally, **10:1, 11:2 et seq.,**  
**12:10**

See also **Jurisdiction** (this index)

Adviser activities, **11:15**

Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**

Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**

Check clearance as interstate activ-  
ity, **11:11**

Class actions, **11:42**

Defenses, **11:41**

Derivative suits, **11:43**

Foreign cubed cases, **11:37**

Foreign transactions, **11:16**

Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**

International transactions, **11:16**

Interstate commerce, **11:3**

Local telephone use, **11:4**

Mails, use of, **11:6**

Misconduct, relation of  
jurisdictional means to  
Generally, **11:8 et seq.**

Agent's interstate activities,  
**11:13**

Check clearances, **11:11**

Fraud, **11:9**

Plaintiff's interstate activities,  
**11:14**

Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**

Plaintiff's interstate activities,  
**11:14**



**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Jurisdictional means—Cont'd  
 Pleading, **11:38**  
 Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**  
 Process, **11:40**  
 Scope of commerce, **11:3**  
 Securities exchanges and interstate commerce, **11:7**  
 Service of process, **11:40**  
 Telephone use, **11:4**  
 Transaction, interstate, **11:10, 11:12**  
 Venue, **11:39**  
 Justice Department references  
 Generally, **13:122 et seq.**  
 See also **Criminal Enforcement** (this index)  
 Limitation of actions, enforcement actions, **13:184 et seq.**  
 Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:5, 20:6**  
 Markup and markdown practices, SEC basis criteria, **14:150 et seq.**  
 Negotiations with  
 Generally, **13:161 et seq., 13:266**  
 Advantages and disadvantages, **13:163**  
 Authority of staff, **13:162**  
 Considerations, **13:165**  
 Objectives, **13:164**  
 No-action letters, **1:12**  
 NSMIA preemption of state registration laws, **3:187 et seq.**  
 Observations on private litigation, **13:182**  
 Orders  
 Accountings, **13:84**  
 Bar orders. Collateral bars against individuals, below  
 Cease and desist orders  
 Permanent, **13:85**  
 Temporary, **13:86**  
 Collateral bars against individuals  
 Generally, **13:87**  
 Corporate office orders, **13:88**  
 Injunctions including, **13:117**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Orders—Cont'd  
 Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**  
 Compliance orders, **13:82**  
 Disgorgement, **13:84**  
 Duration of orders, **13:94**  
 Formal orders of investigation, **13:16 et seq.**  
 Validity challenges, **13:20**  
 Outcomes of investigations, **13:70 et seq.**  
 Penalty actions  
 Generally, **7:438**  
 See also **Civil Penalties** (this index)  
 Aider-abettors, **7:449**  
 Amount of penalty  
 Control persons, **7:459**  
 Court-imposed, **7:439**  
 Bounties, **7:445**  
 Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**  
 Court imposed penalties, **7:439**  
 Disposition of penalties, **7:445**  
 Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**  
 Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**  
 Informants, awards to, **7:445**  
 Insider trading law enforcement, **7:438 et seq.**  
 Judge or jury, **7:446**  
 Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**  
 Persons liable  
 Generally, **7:447**  
 Aider-abettors, **7:449**  
 Control person liability, above  
 Employers, **7:450**  
 Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**  
 Tippers, **7:448**  
 Traders, **7:448**  
 Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**  
 Settled penalties, **7:444**  
 Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

Penalty actions—Cont'd  
Traders, penalties imposed on,  
**7:439**

Private relief, role in  
In court, **10:3**  
Out of court, **10:2**

Pronouncements, **1:4 et seq.**

Proposed ESG regulations, **29:4**

Public reports of investigations,  
**13:74 et seq.**

Quasi-judicial jurisdiction, **10:1**

Regulation G and Sarbanes-Oxley  
Act liabilities, **3:170**

Releases  
Generally, **1:11**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act rules and  
releases, **3:164 et seq.**

Reports of investigations, **1:10, 13:74  
et seq.**

Requests for information, **13:11**

Respondeat superior liability, penalty  
actions, **7:450**

Restitution to defrauded investors,  
role in  
In court, **10:3**  
Out of court, **10:2**

Right to counsel in investigations,  
**13:14**

Rulemaking authority, **3:5**

Rules. See **SEC Rules and Regula-  
tions** (this index)

Safeguards rule, violations of, **26:4,  
26:5**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act  
**Attorneys** (this index)  
Director and officer regulation,  
**8:464**  
Implementation, **8:473**  
Reporting obligations, **8:432 et  
seq.**  
Rules and releases, **3:164 et seq.**

SEA § 21(a) reports of investigations,  
**13:74 et seq.**

SEA Release No. 3230, **App B**

Settled cases, **1:9**

Settlement of penalty actions, **7:444**

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

Settlements, admission of wrongdo-  
ing, **13:166 et seq.**

Staff conferences, **13:26**

Standards, articulation, **1:7**

Subpoenas  
Generally, **13:21 et seq.**  
Content, **13:22**  
Document production, **13:25**  
Document subpoenas, **13:67**  
Evaluation, **13:23**  
Responses, **13:25**  
Validity challenges, **13:24**

Suitability rules, **14:195**

Tender offer challenges, **6:138**

Tender offer disclosure filings  
Generally, **6:50 et seq.**  
Changes, effects of, **6:52**  
Date of information, **6:52**  
Other disseminations, **6:54**  
Processing, **6:53**  
Scope of disclosure, **6:51**  
Time of filing, **6:50**

Testimony before  
Generally, **13:28 et seq.**  
Interrogations, **13:29**  
Preparing witnesses, **13:28**  
Transcripts, **13:30**

Transcripts  
Generally, **13:30**  
Third party access to, **13:66 et seq.**

Unreasonable search and seizure,  
**13:34**

Ward La France Truck Corp case,  
**App D**

Warnings, **13:72**

Wells submissions  
Generally, **13:158**  
Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:160**  
Character, **13:159**

**What is a Security** (this index)

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)

Congressional intent  
Generally, **3:11**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT  
(SEA)—Cont'd**

Congressional intent—Cont'd  
     Rule 10b-5 history  
         Generally, **3:14 et seq.**  
         Deceptive devices, **3:17**  
         Manipulative devices, **3:17**  
         Private enforcement rights, **3:16**  
         Scope of coverage, **3:15**  
         Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**  
 Cybersecurity, class actions, **26:6**  
 Disclosure requirements in filings, **6:280**  
**Implied Liability** (this index)  
 Interrelations of fraud rules  
     Generally, **3:37 et seq.**  
     Birnbaum rule, **3:50**  
     Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**  
     Causation, **3:48**  
     Defenses to private actions, **3:51**  
     Displacing provisions, **3:53**  
     Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**  
     Exempt offerings, **3:46**  
     Implied and express private actions, **3:50**  
**Implied Liability** (this index)  
 Integration proposals, **3:52**  
 Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**  
 Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**  
 Parties subject to rule, **3:49**  
 Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**  
 Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**  
 Public offerings, **3:40**  
 Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**  
 Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**  
 Transactions covered, **3:38**  
 Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**  
 Unregistered offerings, **3:46**  
 Materiality  
     Generally, **8:53 et seq.**  
     Market manipulation, **8:54**  
     Proxy fraud, **8:56**  
     Section 9(a), **8:54**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT  
(SEA)—Cont'd**

Materiality—Cont'd  
     Section 10, **8:55**  
     Section 14, **8:57**  
     Tender offer fraud, **8:57**  
     Tests of, **8:11**  
 Release No. 3230, **App B**  
 Risk disclosure requirements in filings, **6:280**  
 Rule 10b-5 history  
     Generally, **3:11 et seq.**  
     Congressional intent, **3:14 et seq.**  
     Deceptive devices, **3:17**  
     Enactment, **3:18**  
     Manipulative devices, **3:17**  
     Private enforcement rights, **3:16**  
     Promulgation, **3:18**  
     Scope of coverage, **3:15**  
     Section 10(b) and  
         Early version, **3:12**  
         Final version, **3:13**  
     Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**  
 Rules. See **SEC Rules and Regulations** (this index)  
 Section 3(A)(10), what is a security  
     Generally, **5:10**  
     Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
     Guarantees, **5:15**  
     Interest, **5:14**  
     9 month notes, **5:17**  
     Oil and gas interests, **5:16**  
     SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et seq.**  
     SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**  
 Section 7, **14:59**  
 Section 9  
     Contraction era, implied private actions in  
         Generally, **3:125 et seq.**  
         Defendants excluded, **3:129**  
         Documents excluded, **3:130**  
         Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**  
         Government securities, **3:127**  
         Municipal securities, **3:127**  
         OTC securities, **3:126**  
         Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)—Cont'd

#### Section 9—Cont'd

Contraction era, implied private  
actions in—Cont'd

Securities excluded, **3:126 et  
seq.**

Substantive elements, **3:132**

Expansion era, implied private  
actions in, **3:72**

Implied private actions (IPA)

Contraction era

Generally, **3:125 et seq.**

Defendants excluded, **3:129**

Documents excluded, **3:130**

Failure to satisfy substantive  
elements, **3:132**

Government securities, **3:127**

Municipal securities, **3:127**

OTC securities, **3:126**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**

Securities excluded, **3:126 et  
seq.**

Substantive elements, **3:132**

Expansion era, **3:72**

Privity, **8:282**

#### Section 9(a)

Disclosure corrections, **6:300**

False and misleading, **3:1**

Joint and several liability, **9:28**

Manipulation of market, **8:102 et  
seq.**

Materiality, **8:54**

Scienter, **8:102 et seq.**

#### Section 9(a)(1), **7:121**

#### Section 9(a)(2), manipulation

Generally, **7:122 et seq.**

Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**

Depressing prices, **7:124**

Purpose, **7:125**

Raising prices, **7:124**

Series of transactions, **7:123**

#### Section 9(a)(3), **7:126**

#### Section 9(a)(4), **7:126**

#### Section 9(a)(5), **7:126**

#### Section 9(a)(6), **7:127**

#### Section 9(b), **7:128**

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)—Cont'd

#### Section 9(e)

Contribution, **9:67**

Manipulation, **7:129**

#### Section 10

Disclosure corrections, **6:301**

Implied liability, **8:55**

Materiality, **8:55**

Privity, **8:283**

Scienter, **8:124**

#### Section 10(b)

Foreign cubed cases. **Foreign and  
International Transactions**  
(this index)

Front running, **7:139 et seq.**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

Manipulation, **7:130 et seq.**

Parking, **7:143 et seq.**

Proposed rules, **3:35**

Rule 10b-5 history and

Early version, **3:12**

Final version, **3:13**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

#### Rules

Generally, **3:33 et seq.**

See also **SEC Rules** (this index)

Rules 1 through 17, **3:34**

SA § 11 compared, **14:16**

SEA § 12(a)(2) and, overlap  
between, **14:55**

Shotgun use, **3:36**

Suitability claims, **14:197 et seq.**

Underwriters' due diligence, **14:14**

#### Section 14

Disclosure corrections, **6:302**

Implied liability, **8:132 et seq.**

Joint and several liability

Proxy fraud, **9:29**

Tender offer fraud, **9:30**

Manipulation of market, **8:132 et  
seq.**

Materiality, **8:57**

Privity

Proxy fraud, **8:284**

Tender offer fraud, **8:285**

Proxy fraud, joint and several  
liability, **9:29**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT  
(SEA)—Cont'd**

- Section 14—Cont'd
  - Scienter, **8:125, 8:132 et seq.**
  - Tender offer fraud, joint and several liability, **9:30**
- Section 14(a)
  - Congressional intent, **6:155**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:215**
  - Merger regulation, **6:155**
- Section 14(c)
  - Congressional intent, **6:156**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:216**
  - Merger regulation, **6:156**
- Section 14(e)
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:186**
  - Proxy rules, relation to, **6:24**
  - Scope of provision, **6:25**
- Section 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**
- Section 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
- Section 15(b)(6), **14:165**
- Section 15(c)(1)
  - Joint and several liability, **9:31**
  - Manipulation of market, **8:139 et seq.**
  - Privity, **8:286**
  - Scienter, **8:139 et seq.**
- Section 16(b)
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:159**
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:10**
  - Blackouts, director and officer trading during, **7:161**
  - Civil penalties, **7:159**
  - Private actions, **7:160**
  - Short sales, **7:157**
  - Short swing trading, **7:156**
  - Tipping, **7:158**
- Section 18
  - Generally, **8:146 et seq.**
  - Contraction era, implied private actions in
    - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
    - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
    - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
    - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT  
(SEA)—Cont'd**

- Section 18—Cont'd
  - Contraction era, implied private actions in—Cont'd
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
    - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
    - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
    - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
    - Scienter, **3:135**
    - Securities excluded, **3:139**
    - Substantive elements, **3:145**
  - Expansion era, implied private actions in, **3:73**
  - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
  - Implied private actions (IPA)
    - Contraction era
      - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
      - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
      - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
      - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
      - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
      - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
      - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
      - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
      - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
      - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
      - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
      - Scienter, **3:135**
      - Securities excluded, **3:139**
      - Substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Expansion era, **3:73**
    - Narrow focus, **3:136**
    - Privity, **8:287**
    - Scienter, **3:135**
  - Section 18(b), **9:67**
  - Section 19, broker-dealer supervisory liabilities, **14:170**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)—Cont'd

- Section 20(a)
  - Broker-dealer supervisory liabilities, **14:167**
  - Control person liability, **8:393 et seq.**
  - Good faith defense, **8:393 et seq.**
- Section 20A(c), **9:36**
- Section 20(f), **8:348**
- Section 21(a), **13:74 et seq.**
- Section 21D(b), pleading particularity
  - Conflicting concerns, **11:110**
  - Fact statements, **11:122**
  - Falsity, **11:117**
  - Group statements, **11:124**
  - Information and belief, **11:129**
  - Misleading character, **11:119**
  - Purposes, **11:108**
  - Scienter, **11:134**
  - Tactical importance, **11:106**
  - Unattributed statements, **11:126**
- Section 21D(e), **9:11**
- Section 21D(g)
  - Contribution, **9:69**
  - Proportionate liability, **9:48**
- Text, **App C**
- USCA cross reference table, **App H**
- What is a Security** (this index)
- Whistleblowers, protection, **22:16**
- Williams Bill, **6:13**

### SECURITIES INVESTOR PROTECTION ACT (SIPA) AND CORPORATION (SIPC)

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, definition of customer, **20:3, 20:24**

### SECURITIES LITIGATION UNIFORM STANDARDS ACT (SLUSA)

- Generally, **3:201 et seq.**
- Abolition of state claims, **3:202**
- Administrative actions by states, **3:210**
- Administrative enforcement, **3:216**
- Bonds, actions on, **3:211**

### SECURITIES LITIGATION UNIFORM STANDARDS ACT (SLUSA)—Cont'd

- Chadbourn & Parke LLP v. Troice, **3:217 et seq.**
- Congressional intent, **3:201, 3:214**
- Consolidation restrictions, **3:206**
- Criminal enforcement, **3:216**
- Derivative suits, **3:212**
- Discovery limitations, **3:203**
- Effective date, **3:213**
- Enactment, **3:32**
- Government enforcement, **3:216**
- Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
- Joinder restrictions, **3:206**
- Mass-type actions, **3:206**
- NMSIA scope compared, **3:207**
- Post-Chadbourn cases, **3:220 to 3:222**
- Private rights, effect on, **3:215**
- PSLRA, **3:214**
- Recklessness, **3:214**
- Related class-type actions, **3:205**
- Retroactivity, **3:213**
- Scienter, **3:214**
- Securities covered, **3:207**
- State class action limitations
  - Generally, **3:201 et seq.**
  - Administrative actions by states, **3:210**
  - Administrative enforcement, **3:216**
  - Bonds, actions on, **3:211**
  - Covered class actions, **3:204**
  - Criminal enforcement, **3:216**
  - Derivative suits, **3:212**
  - Discovery limitations, **3:203**
  - Government enforcement, **3:216**
  - Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
  - Indenture contract actions, **3:211**
  - Individual fraud claims, **3:215**
  - Mass-type actions, **3:206**
  - Permitted class actions, **3:208 et seq.**
  - Private rights, effect on, **3:215**
  - Recklessness, **3:214**
  - Related class-type actions, **3:205**

**SECURITIES LITIGATION  
UNIFORM STANDARDS ACT  
(SLUSA)—Cont'd**

State class action limitations—Cont'd  
 Scienter, **3:214**  
 Scope, **3:204 et seq.**  
 Securities covered by SLUSA,  
**3:207**  
 State governments, actions by,  
**3:210**

**SELECTIVE DISCLOSURE**

See **Disclosure** (this index)

**SELF-DEALING**

Coordinated investigations following  
 subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:338**

**SELF REGULATORY  
ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)**

Amicus curiae participation in private  
 litigation, **13:293**  
 Arbitration procedures, **15:8**  
 Auction Rate Securities (ARS) litigation,  
 coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations,  
**13:322 et seq.**  
 Authority  
   Injunctions, **13:303**  
   Investigations, **13:268**  
   Orders, **13:278**  
   Subpoenas, **13:279**  
 Broker-dealer supervision liabilities  
   Generally, **14:171 et seq.**  
   Amex requirements, **14:174**  
   Branch office managers, **14:178**  
   Chief executive officers, **14:180**  
   Compliance officers, **14:181**  
   Court cases, **14:176**  
   Deficiencies, **14:175**  
   General counsel, **14:182**  
   Heads of functional areas, **14:179**  
   Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**  
   NASD requirements, **14:172**  
   NYSE requirements, **14:173**  
   Safe harbor programs, **14:175**  
   Sanctions, **14:175**

**SELF REGULATORY  
ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)  
—Cont'd**

CFTC references of investigations to,  
**13:231**  
 Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**  
 Conferences with staff, **13:280**  
 Conflicts of interest in investigations,  
**13:277**  
 Counsel investigations, **13:281**  
 Criminal enforcement references,  
**13:304**  
 Disciplinary authority  
   Joint and several liability, **9:45**  
   References by arbitrators, **15:62**  
   Relationship to arbitration, **15:61**  
 Discovery, **13:286**  
 Documents, third party access to,  
**13:286**  
 Front running  
   Generally, **7:140**  
   Criticisms of SRO interpretations,  
**7:141**  
   Decisions, **7:142**  
   Insider trading, **7:168**  
 Implied liabilities under SRO rules  
   Generally, **14:62 et seq.**  
   Arbitration, **14:72**  
   Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**  
   Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**  
   Contraction era, **14:71**  
   Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**  
   Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**  
 Informal enforcement actions, **13:292**  
 Informal warnings, **13:289**  
 Information requests, **13:273**  
 Injunctions, **13:303**  
 Insider trading, front running, **7:168**  
 Interrogations, **13:283**  
 Investigations  
   Generally, **13:1 et seq.**  
   See also **Investigations** (this index)  
 Negotiations with  
   Generally, **13:308 et seq.**  
   Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:310**  
   Considerations, **13:312**



## INDEX

### SELF REGULATORY

#### ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)

##### —Cont'd

Negotiations with—Cont'd

Objectives, **13:311**

Orders

Generally, **13:278**

Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**

Duration of orders, **13:300**

Outcomes of investigations, **13:287 et seq.**

Public reports of investigations, **13:291**

Reports of investigations, **13:291**

Requests for information, **13:273**

Right to counsel in investigations, **13:276**

SEC investigations, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**

Staff conferences, **13:280**

Subpoena power, **13:270, 13:279**

Suitability rules

Generally, **14:183 et seq.**

See also **Suitability** (this index)

Chicago Board Options Exchange (CBOE), **14:192**

Disciplinary actions, **14:194**

FINRA Rule 2090, know your customer, **14:191**

FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**

FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187, 14:188**

FINRA rules generally, **14:185**

Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**

Institutional investors, **14:190**

Investment strategy, **14:188**

Know your customer, **14:191**

Municipal securities, **14:193**

NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**

NASD rules generally, **14:185**

Options, **14:192**

Recommendations to customers, **14:187**

Testimony

Generally, **13:282 et seq.**

Interrogations, **13:283**

Preparing witnesses, **13:282**

### SELF REGULATORY

#### ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)

##### —Cont'd

Testimony—Cont'd

Transcripts, **13:284**

Transcripts

Generally, **13:284**

Third party access to, **13:286**

Warnings, **13:289**

Wells submission equivalents

Generally, **13:306**

Character, **13:307**

### SENIOR INVESTOR FINANCIAL

#### ABUSE

Generally, **23:1**

Compliance practices, **23:3**

Enforcement actions by regulators, **23:2**

Protection against, **23:3**

### SENIOR MANAGEMENT

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

Mutual fund violations, **17:19**

### SENTENCING

Insiders and inside trading, Raj

Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:28 to 21:49**

### SERVICE OF PROCESS

See **Process** (this index)

### SETTLEMENT

See **Compromise and Settlement** (this index)

### 703 SLUSH FUND

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### SHAREHOLDERS

Insider trading liability, **7:651**

Unfair terms, effect of shareholder votes as to

Generally, **5:146**

Reasons and policies, **5:151**

### SHIFTING COUNTERPARTIES

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### SHORT SALES

Insider short sales, **7:157**

Manipulation, **7:137**

**SHORT SALES—Cont'd**

NASD risk disclosure requirements,  
**6:287**

**SHORT SWING TRADING**

SEA § 16(b), **7:156**

**SHOULD HAVE KNOWN**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**SONJA KOHN**

Madoff feeder funds, globalization,  
**20:21**

**SPECIAL PURPOSE**

**ACQUISITION COMPANIES  
(SPACS)**

Overview, **28:1**

Private damage actions, **28:3**

**SEC**

Disclosure guidance, **28:1**

Enforcement actions, **28:2**

Proposed rule changes, **28:4**

Senator Elizabeth Warren report,  
**28:4**

**SPECIFICITY**

Investigations, **13:104**

Materiality factors, **8:35**

**SPLIT-STRIKE CONVERSION**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**STANDARD AND POOR'S  
RATINGS**

Coordinated investigations following  
subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:338**

**STANDING**

Generally, **8:258 et seq.**

See also **Parties; Private Actions**  
(this index)

State law, **6:196**

Suability, meaning of generally,  
**8:293**

Tender offers, standing to challenge

Generally, **6:124**

Implied rights, **6:124**

Issuer offers, **6:143**

Offerees

Nontendering, **6:126**

**STANDING—Cont'd**

Tender offers, standing to challenge

—Cont'd

Offerees—Cont'd

Tendering, **6:125**

Offerors, **6:129**

Target companies, **6:128**

Tenderees

Generally, **6:125**

Nontendering, **6:126**

Undecided, **6:127**

Third parties, **6:130**

**STATE AGENCIES**

**Investigations** (this index)

**STATE LAW**

Generally, **3:184 et seq.**

Administrative actions by states,  
**3:210**

Administrative enforcement

Generally, **13:318**

Effect of SLUSA, **3:216**

Auction Rate Security (ARS) litigation. Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, below

Authority of state agencies, **13:314**

Blue sky laws

Generally, **3:186**

Corrections of disclosures, **6:292**

Crowdfunding, **14:222**

Defendant's intent, **8:61**

Insider trading, **7:154**

Joint and several liability, **9:21**

Joint liabilities, **8:262**

Materiality, **8:7**

Parties to fraud actions, **8:262**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**

Privity, **8:262**

Reliance, **8:488**

Bonds, actions on, **3:211**

California statutes, insider trading,

**App G**

CFTC references of investigations to,  
**13:231**

Chadbourn & Parke LLP v. Troice,  
**3:217 et seq.**

Churning actions, **14:137 et seq.**

## INDEX

### STATE LAW—Cont'd

- Class action limitations under SLUSA
  - Generally, **3:201 et seq.**
  - Abolition of state claims, **3:202**
  - Administrative actions by states, **3:210**
  - Administrative enforcement, **3:216**
  - Bonds, actions on, **3:211**
  - Congressional intent, **3:201**
  - Covered class actions, **3:204**
  - Criminal enforcement, **3:216**
  - Derivative suits, **3:212**
  - Discovery limitations, **3:203**
  - Government enforcement, **3:216**
  - Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
  - Indenture contract actions, **3:211**
  - Individual fraud claims, **3:215**
  - Mass-type actions, **3:206**
  - Permitted class actions, **3:208 et seq.**
  - Private rights, effect on, **3:215**
  - Recklessness, **3:214**
  - Related class-type actions, **3:205**
  - Scienter, **3:214**
  - Scope, **3:204 et seq.**
  - Securities covered by SLUSA, **3:207**
  - State governments, actions by, **3:210**
- Commodities fraud, investigations, **13:197**
- Common law, **3:185**
- Consolidation, SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**
- Contraction era, **3:184**
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations
  - Generally, **13:322 et seq.**
  - ARS securities and market, **13:325**
  - ARS seller management liability, **13:330**
  - ARS violations, **13:326**
  - Auction Rate Security (ARS) litigation, generally, **13:323**
  - Criminal aspects, **13:331**

### STATE LAW—Cont'd

- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations—Cont'd
  - Government regulatory suits, **13:329**
  - Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**
  - Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
  - State law, private litigation, **13:328**
- Court v Ash, **3:99**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Generally, **13:320**
  - Effect of SLUSA, **3:216**
- Defendant's intent, **8:61**
- Expansion era, **3:184**
- Federal vs state private actions, relative advantages, **3:200**
- Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
- Injunctions, **13:319**
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:153**
  - Blue sky law, **7:154**
  - California statutes, **App G**
- Insurance companies
  - McCarran Act, **6:203**
  - Proxy rules, applicability of, **6:202, 6:203**
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:313 et seq.**
  - Administrative enforcement, **13:318**
  - Authority of state agencies, **13:314**
  - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, above
  - Criminal prosecutions, **13:320**
  - Injunctions, **13:319**
  - Outcomes, **13:317**
  - References of to state authorities
    - CFTC references, **13:231**
    - SEC references, **13:73**
    - SRO references, **13:290**
  - Settlements, **13:321**
  - Subpoenas, **13:315**
- Joinder, SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**
- Joint and several liability, **9:20**
- Joint liabilities, **8:262**
- Materiality, **8:7**

**STATE LAW—Cont'd**

**Mergers**

Generally, **6:153, 6:191 et seq.**  
 Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**  
 Delaware law, **6:196**  
 Effect of merger or dissolution,  
**6:194**

Equitable approach, **6:197**  
 Standing approach, **6:196**

Parties to fraud actions, **8:262**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**

Post-Chadbourn cases, **3:220 to 3:222**

Privity, **8:262**

Proxies and proxy solicitations

Generally, **6:191 et seq.**  
 Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**  
 Delaware law, **6:196**  
 Effect of merger or dissolution,  
**6:194**

Equitable approach, **6:197**  
 Standing approach, **6:196**

Punitive damages, **14:107 et seq.**

References of investigation to state authorities

CFTC references, **13:231**  
 SEC references, **13:73**  
 SRO references, **13:290**

Reliance, **8:488**

SEC references of investigations to,  
**13:73**

Settlements of investigations, **13:321**

SRO references of investigations to,  
**13:290**

Standing, **6:196**

Subpoenas, state agency investigations,  
**13:315**

Suitability claims

Generally, **14:200 et seq.**  
 Consumer fraud, **14:204**  
 Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**  
 Negligence, **14:203**  
 Statutory violations, **14:201**

Traditional areas, **3:99**

What is a security, **5:19**

**STATE OF MIND**

**Intent** (this index)

**Knowledge** (this index)

**STATE OF MIND—Cont'd**

**Purpose** (this index)

**Scienter** (this index)

**STATURE IN SECURITIES INDUSTRY**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**STATUTES OF LIMITATION**

See **Limitation of Actions** (this index)

**STEIN DECISION**

SEC investigation, attorney-client privileges, **13:39 et seq.**

**STRICT LIABILITY**

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

**SUBJECT MATTER JURISDICTION**

Jurisdiction, foreign cubed case,  
**11:21**

**SUBPOENAS**

See also **Securities and Exchange Commission** (this index)

CFTC, **13:200**

Investigations

See also **Investigations** (this index)

CFTC, **13:200**

SROs, **13:270**

State agencies, **13:315**

SROs, **13:270**

State agency investigations, **13:315**

**SUBSTANTIAL ASSISTANCE**

Generally, **8:359 et seq.**

See also **Aider-Abettors** (this index)

**SUBSTANTIAL PARTICIPATION**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:89**

**SUITABILITY**

Generally, **14:183 et seq.**

Arbitration, **14:205**

Consumer fraud claims, **14:204**

Damage claims, **14:196 et seq.**

Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**

Fiduciary duties, **14:206**

Fraud claims, **14:199**

Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**

## INDEX

### SUITABILITY—Cont'd

- Institutional investors, **14:190**
- Misrepresentation, claims based on, **14:198**
- Negligence claims, **14:203**
- Option trading, **14:192**
- Private damage claims, **14:196 et seq.**
- Recommendations to customers, **14:186**
- Retirement accounts, **14:206**
- Rule 10b-5 claims, **14:197 et seq.**
- SEA § 10(b) claims, **14:197 et seq.**
- SEC rules, **14:195**
- SRO rules
  - Chicago Board Options Exchange (CBOE), **14:192**
  - Disciplinary actions, **14:194**
  - FINRA Rule 2090, know your customer, **14:191**
  - FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**
  - FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187, 14:188**
  - FINRA rules generally, **14:185**
  - Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**
  - Institutional investors, **14:190**
  - Investment strategy, **14:188**
  - Know your customer, **14:191**
  - Municipal securities, **14:193**
  - NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**
  - NASD rules generally, **14:185**
  - Options, **14:192**
  - Recommendations to customers, **14:187**
- State law claims
  - Generally, **14:200 et seq.**
  - Consumer fraud, **14:204**
  - Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**
  - Negligence, **14:203**
  - Statutory violations, **14:201**

### SUPERVISORS OF STOCK TRADING DESKS

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

### SUPPLEMENTARY COMMUNICATIONS

- Generally, **6:239**
- See also **Disclosure** (this index)

### SUPREME COURT

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, scheme to defraud, Zandford case, **7:117**
- Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**
- Private actions, loss causation, **8:556 to 8:570**
- Whistleblowers** (this index)

### TASK FORCE

- SEC's ESG-related enforcement actions, **29:2**

### TAX FRAUD

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6, 20:9**

### TECHNICAL SUPPORT

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5, 20:7**

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD

- See also **Proxy Fraud** (this index)
- Antifraud provisions, applicability to
  - Generally, **6:22 et seq.**
  - Connection, **6:26**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:27**
  - Opposition, applicability to, **6:23**
  - Proxy rules, **6:24**
  - SEA § 14(e), **6:24**
- Banks, regulation of, **6:29**
- Challenging
  - Balance of equities, **6:134**
  - Clean hands, **6:136**
  - Final relief, **6:140**
  - Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**
  - Irreparable injuries, **6:133**
  - Preliminary, **6:131 et seq.**
  - Probability of success, **6:132**
  - Proof elements, **6:132**
  - Relief available generally, **6:131 et seq.**
- SEC actions, **6:138**
- Standing to challenge, below
- Time for relief, **6:139**
- Types of relief, **6:135**
- Congressional intent
  - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
  - Disclosure, **6:17**
  - Fairness, **6:19**
  - Investor protection, **6:17**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Congressional intent—Cont'd
  - Target management protection, **6:18**
- Connection with requirement, **7:371**
- Definitional exclusions, **6:40**
- Definitions, **6:31**
- Direct-impersonal dealing
  - Generally, **6:33**
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:311**
  - Issuer offer disclosure requirements, **6:144**
- Disclosure requirements
  - Regulated offers
    - Generally, **6:41**
    - Arrangements, **6:47**
    - Changes, effects of
      - Generally, **6:49**
      - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Control change information, **6:61**
  - Control purposes, **6:64**
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
  - Funds, source of, **6:44**
  - Fund source data, **6:44**
  - Groups, data on, **6:48**
  - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
  - Issuer offers, **6:144**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Offeror data, **6:42**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:45, 6:66 et seq.**
  - Publicity
    - Offeror, **6:94**
    - Target company, **6:98**
    - Third persons, **6:108**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
    - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
  - SEC filings
    - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
    - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
    - Date of information, **6:52**
    - Other disseminations, **6:54**
    - Processing, **6:53**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
    - Time of filing, **6:50**
  - Securities, data on, **6:46**
  - Ten percent threshold
    - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
    - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
    - Date of information, **6:57**
    - Exemptions, **6:60**
    - Other disseminations, **6:59**
    - Ownership, **6:55**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
    - SEC processing, **6:58**
  - Understandings, **6:47**
- Unregulated offers
  - Generally, **6:113**
- Insiders, **6:114**
- Outsiders
  - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
  - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
  - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
  - Other information, **6:118**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
  - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Target company, **6:121**
  - Third persons, **6:122**
- Disclosures in offers, **7:288**
- Exchange offers, **6:36**
- Excluded offers, **6:38 et seq.**
- Express exclusions, **6:39**
- Fairness, Congressional intent, **6:19**
- Five percent offers
  - Generally, **6:32**
  - Base for percentages, **6:34**
- Foreign laws, **6:15**

## INDEX

### **TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing
  - Disclosures in, **7:288**
- Inside information re
  - Generally, **7:267**
- Acquisitions
  - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
- Agreements
  - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
  - Disclosure required, **7:260**
- Company, trading by, **7:256**
- Definitions, **7:250**
- Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
- Leaks, **7:255**
- Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
- Preliminary negotiations
  - Misleading statements, **7:253**
  - No statement made, **7:252**
  - Other situations, **7:254**
- Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
- Rumors, **7:255**
- Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
- Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
- When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
- When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
- Connection with requirement, **7:371**
- Materiality, **7:270**
- Pending offers, **7:214**
- Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
- Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
- When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Target response to tender offers, disclosure of, **7:258**
- Inside information re
  - Generally, **7:267**
  - Materiality, **7:270**

### **TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Inside information re—Cont'd
  - Pending offers, **7:214**
  - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
  - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Insiders, offers by
  - Generally, **6:111**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
- Insurance company offers, **6:30**
- Investment Bankers** (this index)
- Issuer offers
  - Generally, **6:141**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
  - Price, **6:142**
  - Redemptions, **6:145**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
- Joint and several liability, **9:30**
- Managers, protection, **6:18**
- Market activities
- Offeror
  - Before offer, **6:97**
  - During offer, **6:96**
- Target company
  - Generally, **6:106 et seq.**
  - Filing, **6:107**
  - Information to be disclosed, **6:107**
  - Scope of regulation, **6:106**
- Third persons, **6:109**
- Materiality, **8:57**
- Medium of payment, **6:36**
- Opposition, applicability of antifraud provisions to, **6:23**
- Outsiders, offers by
  - Generally, **6:112**
- Disclosures
  - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
  - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
  - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
  - Other information, **6:118**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
  - Policy factors, **6:120**
- Price
  - Increases, effect of, **6:90 et seq.**
- Issuer offers, **6:142**
- Third-party offers, **6:123**
- Privity, **8:285**



**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Proxy rule antifraud provisions, applicability to, **6:24**
- Proxy solicitations
  - Generally, **6:13 et seq.**
  - See also **Proxy Fraud** (this index)
- Publicity
  - Offeror
    - Before offer, **6:95**
    - During offer, **6:94**
  - Target company
    - Generally, **6:98, 6:101**
    - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
    - Date of information, **6:101**
    - Exemptions, **6:103**
    - Other disseminations, **6:102**
    - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
    - Time of filing, **6:99**
  - Third persons, **6:108**
- Recommendations
  - Offeror
    - Before offer, **6:95**
    - During offer, **6:94**
  - Third persons, **6:108**
- Scienter in fraud actions
  - Defendant's intent, **8:136**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
  - Intent, **8:136**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
  - Pleading, **8:138**
- SEA § 14(e) antifraud provisions, applicability to, **6:24**
- Special bids, **6:37**
- Standing to challenge transaction
  - Generally, **6:124**
  - Implied rights, **6:124**
  - Issuer offers, **6:143**
  - Offerees
    - Nontendering, **6:126**
    - Tendering, **6:125**
  - Offerors, **6:129**
  - Target companies, **6:128**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Standing to challenge transaction
  - Cont'd
  - Tenderees
    - Generally, **6:125**
    - Nontendering, **6:126**
    - Undecided, **6:127**
  - Third parties, **6:130**
- State laws, **6:14**
- Target company disclosures, **6:121**
- Ten day pro rata takeup
  - Exemptions, **6:88**
  - Procedures, **6:87**
  - Purpose, **6:86**
- Terms
  - Generally, **6:75 et seq.**
  - Duration of offer, **6:89**
  - Freedom of offerer, degrees of, **6:75**
  - Ten day pro rata takeup, above
  - Withdrawal rights
    - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
    - Procedure, **6:82**
    - Purpose, **6:81**
    - Voluntary, **6:84**
- Third-party offers
  - Antifraud provisions, applicability to
    - Generally, **6:22 et seq.**
    - Connection, **6:26**
    - Jurisdictional means, **6:27**
    - Opposition, applicability to, **6:23**
    - Proxy rules, **6:24**
    - SEA § 14(e), **6:24**
  - Banks, regulation of, **6:29**
- Challenging
  - Balance of equities, **6:134**
  - Clean hands, **6:136**
  - Final relief, **6:140**
  - Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**
  - Irreparable injuries, **6:133**
  - Preliminary, **6:131 et seq.**
  - Probability of success, **6:132**
  - Proof elements, **6:132**
  - Relief available, **6:131 et seq.**
  - SEC actions, **6:138**

## INDEX

### **TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Challenging—Cont'd
    - Standing to challenge, below
    - Time for relief, **6:139**
    - Types of relief, **6:135**
  - Congressional intent
    - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
    - Disclosure, **6:17**
    - Fairness, **6:19**
    - Investor protection, **6:17**
    - Target management protection, **6:18**
  - Coverage of regulations, **6:28 et seq.**
  - Definitional exclusions, **6:40**
  - Direct-impersonal dealings, **6:33**
  - Disclosure requirements
    - Generally, **6:41**
    - Arrangements, **6:47**
    - Changes, effects of
      - Generally, **6:49**
      - SEC filings, **6:52**
      - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Control change information, **6:61**
  - Control purposes, **6:64**
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
  - Funds, source of, **6:44**
  - Fund source data, **6:44**
  - Groups, data on, **6:48**
  - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:45, 6:66 et seq.**
  - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**

### **TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
    - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
  - SEC filings
    - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
    - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
    - Date of information, **6:52**
    - Other disseminations, **6:54**
    - Processing, **6:53**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
    - Time of filing, **6:50**
  - Securities, data on, **6:46**
  - Ten percent threshold
    - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
    - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
    - Date of information, **6:57**
    - Exemptions, **6:60**
    - Other disseminations, **6:59**
    - Ownership, **6:55**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
    - SEC processing, **6:58**
  - Understandings, **6:47**
  - Unregulated offers
    - Generally, **6:113**
    - Insiders, **6:114**
    - Outsiders
      - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
      - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
      - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
      - Other information, **6:118**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
      - Policy factors, **6:120**
      - Target company, **6:121**
      - Third persons, **6:122**
  - Excluded offers, **6:38 et seq.**
  - Express exclusions, **6:39**
  - Foreign laws, **6:15**
  - Insiders, offers by
    - Generally, **6:111**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
  - Insurance companies, **6:30**
  - Market activities
    - Offeror
      - Before offer, **6:97**
      - During offer, **6:96**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Market activities—Cont'd
    - Target company
      - Generally, **6:106 et seq.**
      - Filing, **6:107**
      - Information to be disclosed, **6:107**
      - Scope of regulation, **6:106**
    - Third persons, **6:109**
  - Outsiders, offers by
    - Generally, **6:112**
  - Disclosures
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Price, **6:123**
  - Price increases, effect of, **6:90 et seq.**
  - Publicity
    - Offeror
      - Before offer, **6:95**
      - During offer, **6:94**
    - Target company
      - Generally, **6:98**
      - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
      - Change, effect of, **6:101**
      - Date of information, **6:101**
      - Exemptions, **6:103**
      - Other disseminations, **6:102**
      - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
      - Time of filing, **6:99**
    - Third persons, **6:108**
  - Recommendations
    - Offeror
      - Before offer, **6:95**
      - During offer, **6:94**
    - Third persons, **6:108**
  - Regulated offers
    - Generally, **6:13 et seq.**
    - Williams Bill, **6:13**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Scope of regulation
    - Generally, **6:28 et seq., 6:31 et seq.**
    - Definitions, **6:31**
    - Direct-impersonal dealings, **6:33**
    - Exchange offers, **6:36**
    - Five percent offers
      - Generally, **6:32**
      - Base for percentages, **6:34**
    - Jurisdictional means, **6:35**
    - Medium of payment, **6:36**
    - Special bids, **6:37**
    - Two percent offers
      - Generally, **6:32**
      - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Standing to challenge transaction
    - Generally, **6:124**
    - Implied rights, **6:124**
    - Nontendering offerees, **6:126**
    - Offerees, tendering, **6:125**
    - Offerors, **6:129**
    - Target companies, **6:128**
  - Tenderees
    - Nontendering, **6:126**
    - Undecided, **6:127**
  - Tendering offerees, **6:125**
  - Third parties, **6:130**
  - State laws, **6:14**
  - Target company disclosures, **6:121**
  - Ten day pro rata takeover
    - Generally, **6:85 et seq.**
    - Exemptions, **6:88**
    - Procedures, **6:87**
    - Purpose, **6:86**
  - Terms
    - Generally, **6:75 et seq.**
    - Duration of offer, **6:89**
    - Freedom of offerer, degrees of, **6:75**
    - Ten day pro rata takeover, above
  - Withdrawal rights
    - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
    - Exemptions, **6:83**
    - Procedure, **6:82**
    - Purpose, **6:81**
    - Voluntary, **6:84**

## INDEX

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Third person disclosures, **6:122**
  - Unregulated offers
    - Generally, **6:110**
  - Insiders
    - Generally, **6:111**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:112**
  - Disclosures
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Target company disclosures, **6:121**
  - Third party disclosures, **6:122**
  - Williams Bill, **6:13**
- Third person disclosures, **6:122**
- Two percent offers
  - Generally, **6:32**
  - Base for percentages, **6:34**
- Types of direct-impersonal dealings, **6:1**
- Unregulated tender offers
  - Generally, **6:110**
- Insiders
  - Generally, **6:111**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
- Outsiders
  - Generally, **6:112**
- Disclosures
  - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
  - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
  - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
  - Other information, **6:118**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
  - Policy factors, **6:120**
- Target company disclosures, **6:121**
- Third person disclosures, **6:122**
- Williams Bill, **6:13**

### TIPPERS AND TIPPEES

- Generally, **7:623 et seq.**
- See also **Insiders and Insider Trading** (this index)

### TORTS

- Common Law Fraud** (this index)
- Joint and Several Liability** (this index)

### TRADES AND TRADING

- Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)
- Definition, **1:2**
- Direct-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
- Direct-Personal Dealing** (this index)
- Illegal, cybersecurity, **26:2, 26:3**
- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing** (this index)
- Mutual Fund Violations** (this index)
- Private transaction liabilities, **5:8**

### TRANSACTION PLANNING

- Generally, **12:10 et seq.**
- Antiwaiver provision of Rule 10b-5, **12:11**
- Arbitration provisions, **12:11**
- Attorneys' fees allocations, **9:75**
- Contribution provisions, **9:75**
- Costs allocations, **9:75**
- Disclaimers, **8:514, 12:11**
- Disclosures of risk factors, **12:11**
- Fairness, techniques promoting, **12:13**
- Indemnification provisions, **12:11**
- Integration clauses, **8:513**
- No-action clauses, **12:11**
- Procedures, **12:12**
- Releases of liability, **12:11**
- Reliance, anti-reliance devices, **8:511 et seq.**
- Representation, **12:11**
- Risk factors, disclosures of, **12:11**
- Waivers of Rule 10b-5, **12:11**
- Warranties, **12:11**

### TRANSCRIPTS

- CFTC investigations, **13:222**
- SEC investigations, **13:30**
- SRO investigations, **13:284**

**TRAVEL EXPENSES**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), affirmative defense, **19:4**

**TREMONT-RYE**

Madoff feeder funds, **20:20**

**TRUSTEES**

Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:9**

**UNDERWRITERS**

See also **Broker-Dealer Liability** (this index)

Court cases, **14:6**

Definition, **14:4**

Due diligence defense

Generally, **14:5, 14:14**

SEC view, **14:9**

Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**

Participating underwriters, **14:13**

Reasonable investigation defense

Generally, **14:5**

Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**

SEC Rule 176, **14:8**

SA § 11 liabilities, **14:4**

Subprime mortgage crisis, coordinated investigations, **13:335**

**UNFAIR TERMS**

Generally, **5:142 et seq.**

Actual control, **5:156**

Arms length transactions

Generally, **5:144**

Reasons and policies, **5:149**

Book value, **5:162**

Burden of proof, **5:153**

Business decisions as value determiners, **5:171**

Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**

Conflict transactions

Generally, **5:145**

Reasons and policies, **5:150**

Control, proof of, **5:155**

Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**

Control sales, **5:191**

**UNFAIR TERMS—Cont'd**

Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**

Definition, **5:143**

Disclosure

Generally, **5:187 et seq.**

Information disclosed, **5:189**

Method of disclosure, **5:188**

Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**

Discounts, control, **5:166**

Earnings tests of value, **5:161**

Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**

Full disclosure, effect of

Generally, **5:146**

Reasons and policies, **5:151**

Influence, proof of, **5:155**

Investment bankers

Generally, **5:172 et seq.**

Controlled company bankers, **5:175**

Controlling company bankers, **5:177**

Dual representation bankers, **5:176**

No banker transactions, **5:178**

Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**

Prior relations of, **5:182**

Qualities of bankers, **5:173**

Roles of bankers, **5:174**

Successive bankers, **5:179**

Trials, bankers for, **5:180**

Legal decisions as value determiners, **5:170**

Liquidation value, **5:163**

Market prices as value indicators, **5:160**

No banker transactions, **5:178**

Pleading, **5:152**

Policies, **5:148 et seq.**

Potential control, **5:156**

Premiums, control, **5:166**

Proof of elements, **5:154**

Range of fairness, **5:143**

Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**

Shareholder votes, effect of

Generally, **5:146**

Reasons and policies, **5:151**

Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**

## INDEX

### UNFAIR TERMS—Cont'd

- Time factors in value determination, **5:165**
- Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
- Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**

### UNINSURED PRODUCTS

- NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:288**

### UN IRAQI OIL-FOR-FOOD PROGRAM

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:7**

### UNITEDHEALTH GROUP INC.

- Backdating of stock options, **18:1, 18:5, 18:8, 18:10**

### UNREASONABLE CONDUCT

- Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
- Burden of proof, **8:238**
- Criminal cases, **8:236**
- Injunctions, **8:234**
- Insufficiency, **8:237**
- Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
- Proof, **8:239**
- Scienter, **8:234**
- SEC decisions, **8:235**
- Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:230**

### UTE INDIANS

- Private actions, **8:484, 8:559**

### VAGUENESS

- Materiality factors, **8:35**

### VALUE

- Asset valuation
  - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - See also **Assets** (this index)
- Backdating of Stock Options** (this index)
- Business decisions as determiners, **5:171**
- Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**
- Determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
- Discounts, control, **5:166**

### VALUE—Cont'd

- Indicators
  - Generally, **5:158 et seq.**
  - Book value, **5:162**
  - Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**
  - Earnings capitalization, **5:161**
  - Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
  - Liquidation value, **5:163**
  - Market prices as, **5:160**
- Legal decisions as determiners, **5:170**
- Premiums, control, **5:166**
- Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**
- Time factors in value determination, **5:165**

### VARIABLE ANNUITIES

- What is a security, **5:23**

### VENUE

- Generally, **11:39**

### VERIFICATION OF RETURNS

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

### VICARIOUS LIABILITY

- See also **Control Person Liability; Parties** (this index)
- Broker-dealer supervisory duties
  - Generally, **14:164 et seq.**
  - Amex requirements, **14:174**
  - Branch office managers, **14:178**
  - Chief executive officers, **14:180**
  - Compliance officers, **14:181**
  - Court cases, **14:176**
  - Deficiencies, **14:175**
  - General counsel, **14:182**
  - Heads of functional areas, **14:179**
  - Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**
- Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
- NASD requirements, **14:172**
- NYSE requirements, **14:173**
- Rule 14c-3(b), **14:169**
- Safe harbor programs, **14:175**
- Sanctions, **14:175**
- SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**

**VICARIOUS LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer supervisory duties  
—Cont'd
- SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
- SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**
- SEA § 19, **14:170**
- SEA § 20(a), **14:167**
- SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**
- Contribution** (this index)
- Disgorgement sanctions, **7:431**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Joint and Several Liability** (this index)
- Proportionate Liability** (this index)

**VIRGINIA BANKSHARES**

- Private actions, loss causation in  
Supreme Court decision, **8:566**

**VITESSE SEMICONDUCTOR  
CORP.**

- Backdating of stock options, **18:1**

**VOLUNTARY ACT**

- Whistleblower bounty program, voluntary submission of original information, **22:6**

**WASH SALES**

- Manipulation, **7:121**

**WEISS DECISION**

- SEC action against bond counsel  
issuing improper legal opinion, **8:442**

**WELLS SUBMISSIONS**

- Generally, **13:158**
- Advantages and disadvantages, **13:160**
- Character, **13:159**
- Timeframe, **20:13**

**WHAT IS A SECURITY**

- Generally, **5:9 et seq.**
- Alternative government regulation, **5:35**
- Certificates of deposit, **5:28**
- Characteristics of instrument in commerce, **5:39**

**WHAT IS A SECURITY—Cont'd**

- Common elements in defining a security, **5:32 et seq.**
- Context clause, **5:18**
- Cooperative apartment corporation shares, **5:26**
- Court cases, **5:20 et seq.**
- Employee benefit plans
- Generally, **5:42 et seq.**
- Contributory plans
- Involuntary, **5:46**
- Voluntary, **5:48**
- Defined plans, **5:49**
- Distinguishing contributory from noncontributory, **5:52**
- Distinguishing voluntary from involuntary plans, **5:51**
- ERISA, preemptive effect of, **5:43**
- ESOPs, **5:48**
- Involuntary contributory plans, **5:46**
- Involuntary noncontributory plans, **5:45**
- Noncontributory plans
- Involuntary, **5:45**
- Voluntary, **5:47**
- Pension plans, **5:49**
- Relative importance of elements, **5:41**
- Sales, **5:44**
- Voluntary contributory plans, **5:48**
- Voluntary noncontributory plans, **5:47**
- Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
- Expectations of public, **5:40**
- Flexible fund annuities, **5:24, 5:25**
- Fractional interests in mineral rights, **5:21**
- Guarantees, **5:15**
- Howey test, **5:22**
- Interest, **5:14**
- International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**
- Investment risk as factor, **5:34**
- Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**
- Judicial decisions, **5:20 et seq.**
- Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**
- Marine Bank case, **5:28**



## INDEX

### WHAT IS A SECURITY—Cont'd

- Marketing as factor, **5:33**
- Motivations of purchasers, **5:37**
- Motivations of sellers, **5:38**
- 9 month notes, **5:17**
- Notes, **5:30**
- NSMIA, **3:189, 3:207**
- Oil and gas interests
  - Generally, **5:16**
  - Fractional interests, **5:21**
- Passive or active purchasers, **5:36**
- Perceptions of public, **5:40**
- Proxy rules, applicability of
  - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
  - Insurance companies
    - Generally, **6:201**
    - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
    - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
    - McCarran Act, **6:203**
    - Investment companies, **6:205**
    - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
- Reeves v. Ernst & Young case, **5:30**
- SEA § 2(1)(a) definition
  - Generally, **5:10**
  - Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
  - Guarantees, **5:15**
  - Interest, **5:14**
  - 9 month notes, **5:17**
  - Oil and gas interests, **5:16**
  - SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12 et seq.**
  - SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**
- SEA § 3(A)(10) definition
  - Generally, **5:10**
  - Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
  - Guarantees, **5:15**
  - Interest, **5:14**
  - 9 month notes, **5:17**
  - Oil and gas interests, **5:16**
  - SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et seq.**
  - SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**
- SEC v. Edwards case, **5:31**
- SLUSA definition, **3:207**
- State law definitions, **5:19**
- Statutory definitions, **5:10 et seq.**

### WHAT IS A SECURITY—Cont'd

- United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**
- United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**
- Variable annuities, **5:23**

### WHISTLEBLOWERS

- Accountants, original information, **22:10**
- Administrative action covered, Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:3**
- Administrative enforcement action success, information leading to, **22:14**
- Amicus curiae, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:21**
- Anonymity, **22:16**
- Anti-retaliation actions and proceedings, **22:32**
- Attorney-client privilege as to original information, **22:8**
- Bounty programs
  - Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:1 et seq.**
  - Duties and responsibilities, **22:35 et seq.**
  - Case law, **22:41**
  - Dodd-Frank, **22:38**
  - NY Ethics Committee opinion 746, **22:40**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, SEC Series 205, **22:37**
  - SEC v. National Student Marketing Corp., **22:36**
  - State rules of professional conduct, **22:39**
  - 1988 Program under SEA § 21A(e), **22:2**
  - SEC investigations, bounties to whistleblowers, **20:15**
  - Case law, **22:25 to 22:28**
- Case law, bounty program, duties and responsibilities, **22:41**
- Claims, decisions, **22:15**
- Compliance personnel, original information, **22:9**
- Criminal enforcement, retaliation, **22:16**

**WHISTLEBLOWERS—Cont'd**

- Definition of whistleblower, **22:5, 22:23 et seq.**
- Definitions, **22:23 et seq.**
- Digital Realty Trust, Inc. v. Somers
  - Generally, **22:23, 22:28**
  - Decisions reversed by, **22:26**
  - Decisions vindicated by, **22:27**
- Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program
  - Administrative action covered, **22:3**
  - Definition, **22:5, 22:23, 22:28**
  - Duties and responsibilities, **22:38**
  - Judicial action covered, **22:3**
  - Original information, voluntary submission, **22:6**
  - Protection, **22:16 et seq.**
  - Related action, **22:4**
- Employees of public accounting firms, original information, **22:10**
- Employees of public and private companies, **22:17**
- Employer-employee relationship, whistleblower protection outside, **22:34**
- Exceptions to limitations, original information, **22:11**
- Excluded persons, information from, **22:13**
- Extraterritoriality, protection, application of law, **22:31**
- First Circuit decision, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:19, 22:20**
- Foreign countries, protection, application of law, **22:31**
- Judicial action covered, Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:3**
- Judicial enforcement action success, information leading to, **22:14**
- Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:18 et seq.**
- Limitations in original information, **22:8, 22:12**
- 1988 bounty program under SEA § 21A(e), **22:2**
- NY Ethics Committee opinion 746, bounty program, duties and

**WHISTLEBLOWERS—Cont'd**

- responsibilities, **22:40**
- Officer or director, original information, **22:9**
- Original information
  - Generally, **22:7**
  - Accountants, **22:10**
  - Attorney-client privilege, **22:8**
  - Compliance personnel, **22:9**
  - Employees of public accounting firms, **22:10**
  - Exceptions to limitations, **22:11**
  - Limitations, **22:8, 22:12**
  - Officer or director, information obtained by, **22:9**
  - Public accounting firm employees, **22:10**
  - Trustee, information obtained by, **22:9**
  - Unlawfully obtained information, **22:12**
  - Voluntary submission, **22:6**
- Private actions, employers, **22:16**
- Private anti-retaliation actions by, **22:29**
- Proof of retaliatory intent, Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **22:24**
- Protection
  - Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:16 et seq.**
  - Employer-employee relationship, whistleblower protection outside, **22:34**
  - Proceedings, **22:32**
- Public and private company employees, **22:17**
- Reasonable belief standard, **22:16**
- Related actions covered, Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:4**
- Reporting rights preservation, **22:33**
- Reports, SEC, definition of whistleblower, **22:25 et seq.**
- Retaliation, protection, Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:16 et seq.**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Generally, **22:16 et seq.**

## INDEX

### **WHISTLEBLOWERS—Cont'd**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act—Cont'd
  - Amicus curiae, *Lawson v. FMR LLC*, **22:21**
  - Bounty program, duties and responsibilities, SEC Series 205, **22:37**
  - Extraterritoriality, **22:31**
  - First Circuit decision, *Lawson v. FMR LLC*, **22:19, 22:20**
  - Lawson v. FMR LLC*, **22:18 et seq.**
  - Proof of retaliatory intent, **22:24**
  - Public and private company employees, **22:17**
  - Supreme Court decision, *Lawson v. FMR LLC*, **22:22**
- SEC decisions regarding bounty claims under SEA § 21F, **20:15**
- SEC investigations, **20:14, 20:15**
- SEC rules, definition, **22:23**
- Securities Exchange Act, protection, **22:16**
- SEC v. National Student Marketing Corp., bounty program, duties and responsibilities, **22:36**
- State rules of professional conduct, bounty program, duties and responsibilities, **22:39**
- Successful enforcement action, information leading to, **22:14**
- Supreme Court decisions
  - Digital Realty Trust, Inc. v. Somers, **22:23, 22:26 to 28**
  - Lawson v. FMR LLC*, **22:22**
- Trustee, information obtained by, **22:9**
- UBS Securities decision, proof of retaliatory intent under Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **22:24**
- Unlawfully obtained information, **22:12**

### **WHISTLEBLOWERS—Cont'd**

- Voluntary submission of original information, **22:6**

### **WILLFULNESS**

- Criminal enforcement, SEC references, **13:127**
- Intent** (this index)
- Knowledge** (this index)
- Manipulation, defendant's willfulness, **8:121**
- Scienter** (this index)

### **WILLIAMS BILL**

- Generally, **6:13**

### **WIRE FRAUD**

- See **Mail and Wire Fraud** (this index)

### **WIRETAP IN ENFORCEMENT**

- Authority, **13:145**
- Control of wiretap results, **13:148**
- Galleon cases, **13:146, 13:153**
- Insider trading, **13:146, 13:153**
- Judicial approval, **13:151**
- Privacy interests, **13:149, 13:150**
- Public access, **13:149**
- Rajaratnam case issues yet to be resolved, **13:153**
- Relevancy of wiretap, **13:152**
- Review, **13:147**
- SEC access, **13:150**
- SEC investigation, **13:144 et seq.**

### **WORLD.COM**

- Injunctions and ancillary relief, **13:109**

### **ZANDFORD CASE**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:117**

### **ZONE**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing
  - Curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:78**